OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 28

The Life of Saint Louis

Jean de Joinville

Histoire de saint Louis

The Life of Saint Louis

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

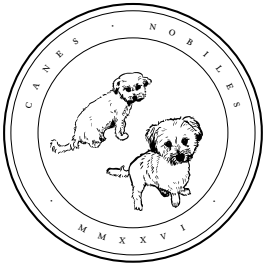


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 28 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Natalis de Wailly's text, Histoire
de saint Louis, second edition (Paris, 1874), paragraphs 1–769

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps de Wailly's spelling, which he regularized to the language of Joinville's own charters, and his accents. The margin gives his paragraph numbers; his chapters are grouped into the reading sections, whose English heads are this press's. The speeches he leaves without an opening or a closing mark are left so. The Credo and the Letter to Louis X, which his edition prints after the History, are not printed.

CONTENTS

I · The Dedication, and the King's Four Perils 9
II · The King's Virtues 17
III · Of Dress, and God's Warnings 26
IV · Of Faith 31
V · The King's Justice 39
VI · The Bishops, and the King's Loyalty 43
VII · The Second Book: His Birth, and the Barons' League 47
VIII · The Queen of Cyprus and the Count of Champagne 52
IX · The Defense of Troyes 57
X · The Court at Saumur and the English War 63
XI · The King Takes the Cross 71
XII · Joinville Leaves His Castle 75
XIII · The Embarkation, and Winter in Cyprus 80
XIV · The Empress and the Sultans 87
XV · Sailing for Egypt 92
XVI · The Landing, and Damietta Taken 99
XVII · Disorder in the Host 104
XVIII · The March, and the Nile 111

XIX · The Causeway 120
XX · The Greek Fire 126
XXI · The Ford, and the Count of Artois 133
XXII · The King's Battle 142
XXIII · The Little Bridge 149
XXIV · The Bedouins, and the Night Attack 156
XXV · The Battle of the First Friday in Lent 163
XXVI · The Sultan's Guard 169
XXVII · Sickness in the Host 178
XXVIII · Joinville Falls Ill 182
XXIX · The Retreat, and the King Taken 188
XXX · Joinville Taken 193
XXXI · The Prisoners at Mansourah 201
XXXII · The King Threatened 209
XXXIII · The Sultan Murdered 214
XXXIV · The Emirs' Oath, and Damietta Surrendered 221
XXXV · The Prisoners Freed 228
XXXVI · The Ransom 234
XXXVII · The Queen at Damietta 241
XXXVIII · The Crossing to Acre 248
XXXIX · The Council at Acre 256
XL · Joinville Speaks for Staying 260
XLI · The King Stays Overseas 268
XLII · John the Armenian, and the Old Man of the Mountain . . . 275
XLIII · Brother Yves, and the Captives Freed 282
XLIV · How the Tartars Chose a Chief 288
XLV · The Tartars 296

XLVI · The Knights from Norway, and the Cumans 304
XLVII · Judgments at Caesarea 312
XLVIII · Jaffa Fortified 319
XLIX · Walter of Brienne 325
L · Skirmishes Near Jaffa and Acre 333
LI · Sidon Sacked 338
LII · The King Will Not Go to Jerusalem 343
LIII · The Expedition to Banyas 348
LIV · Joinville in Danger, and the Dead of Sidon 355
LV · Baghdad Taken, and a Clerk Taken for an Assassin 361
LVI · The Queen at Sidon 366
LVII · Joinville's Pilgrimage, and the Death of Queen Blanche 369
LVIII · The King Resolves to Return 376
LIX · The Ship Runs Aground 381
LX · The Storm Off Cyprus 388
LXI · Lampedusa and Pantelleria 393
LXII · The Fire in the Queen's Cabin 398
LXIII · The Landing at Hyères, and Brother Hugh 402
LXIV · Joinville Takes His Leave 409
LXV · The King's Ways 413
LXVI · The King's Peace and His Charity 421
LXVII · The Reform of the Realm 429
LXVIII · The Provostship of Paris, and the King's Alms 439
LXIX · The Second Crusade 448
LXX · The Teachings to His Son 452
LXXI · Death, Canonization, and Joinville's Dream 460

The Dedication, and the King's Four Perils

I

Joinville greets Louis, king of Navarre, son of the king of France: his mother the queen asked for this book of Saint Louis's holy words and good deeds, set in two parts. The king, he holds, should be counted among the martyrs. Four times he risked death: leaping ashore at Damietta, refusing the galleys when sick at Mansourah, staying four years in the Holy Land after his brothers left, and refusing to leave his ship and its eight hundred souls when it struck off Cyprus.

A son bon signour Looys, fil dou roy de France, par la grace 1
To his good lord Louis son of-the king of France by the grace
de Dieu roy de Navarre, de Champaigne et de Brie conte
of God king of Navarre of Champagne and of Brie count
palazin, Jehans, sires de Joinville, ses seneschaus de Champaigne,
palatine John lord of Joinville his seneschal of Champagne
salut et amour et honnour, et son servise appareillié.
greeting and love and honor and his service ready
Chiers sire, je vous faiz à savoir que madame la royne vostre 2
Dear lord I you make to know that my-lady the queen your
mere, qui mout m'amoit (à cui Diex bone merci face!), me pria
mother who much me-loved to whom God good mercy may-do me asked
si à certes comme elle pot, que je li feisse faire un livre
so in earnest as she could that I to-her should-have made a book
des saintes paroles et des bons faiz nostre roy saint Looys; et
of-the holy words and of-the good deeds (of-)our king saint Louis and
je le li oi en couvenant, et à l'aide de Dieu li livres est
I it to-her had in covenant and with the-help of God the book is
assouvis en dous parties. La premiere partie si devise comment
completed in two parts The first part so tells how
il se gouverna tout son tens selonc Dieu et selonc
he himself governed all his time according-to God and according-to

l'Eglise, et au profit de son regne. La seconde partie dou livre
the-Church and to-the profit of his reign The second part of-the book
si parle de ses granz chevaleries et de ses granz faiz d'armes.
so speaks of his great chivalries and of his great deeds of-arms
3 Sires, pour ce qu'il est escrit: «Fai premier ce qui affiert à
Lord for this that-it is written Do first that which pertains to
Dieu, et il te adrescera toutes tes autres besoignes,» ai-je
God and he thee will-direct all thy other affairs have-I
tout premier fait escrire ce qui afiert aus trois choses desus
all first had written that which pertains to-the three things above
dites; c'est à savoir ce qui afiert au profit des ames et
said this-is to know that which pertains to-the profit of-the souls and
des cors, et ce qui affiert au gouvernement dou peuple.
of-the bodies and that which pertains to-the government of-the people
4 Et ces autres choses ai-je fait escrire aussi à l'onnour dou
And these other things have-I had written also to the-honor of-the
vrai cors saint, pour ce que par ces choses desus dites
true body saint for this that by these things above said
on pourra veoir tout cler que onques hom lays de nostre
one will-be-able see all clear that ever man lay of our
temps ne vesqui si saintement de tout son temps, dès le
time not lived so holily of all his time from the
commencement de son regne jusques à la fin de sa vie. A la
beginning of his reign until to the end of his life At the
fin de sa vie ne fu-je mie; mais li cuens Pierres d'Alançon,
end of his life not was-I at-all but the count Peter of-Alençon
ses fiz, y fu (qui mout m'ama), qui me recorda la belle fin
his son there was who much me-loved who to-me recounted the fair end
que il fist, que vous trouverez escripte en la fin de cest livre.
that he made that you will-find written in the end of this book

Et de ce me semble-il que on ne li fist mie assez, quant on 5
And of this to-me seems-it that one not to-him did at-all enough when one
ne le mist ou nombre des martirs, pour les grans peinnes que
not him put in-the number of-the martyrs for the great pains that
il souffri ou pelerinaige de la croiz, par l'espace de six anz que
he suffered in-the pilgrimage of the cross for the-space of six years that
je fu en sa compaignie, et pour ce meismement que il ensui
I was in his company and for this especially that he followed
Nostre-Signour ou fait de la croiz. Car se Diex morut en la
Our-Lord in-the deed of the cross For if God died on the
croiz, aussi fist-il; car croisiez estoit-il quant il morut à Thunes.
cross so did-he for crossed was-he when he died at Tunis
Li secons livres vous parlera de ses granz chevaleries et de 6
The second book to-you will-speak of his great chivalries and of
ses granz hardemens, liquel sont tel que je li vi quatre
his great hardihoods which are such that I him saw four
foiz mettre son cors en avanture de mort, aussi comme vous
times put his body in hazard of death just as you
orrez ci-après, pour espargnier le doumaige de son peuple.
will-hear here-after for to-spare the harm of his people
Li premiers faiz là où il mist son cors en avanture de 7
The first deed there where he put his body in hazard of
mort, ce fu à l'ariver que nous feimes devant Damiete,
death this was at the-landing that we made before Damietta
là où touz ses consaus li loa, ainsi comme je l'entendi,
there where all his council him advised so as I it-understood
que il demourast en sa neif, tant que il veist que sa
that he should-remain in his ship until that he might-see what his
chevalerie feroit, qui aloit à terre.
knighthood would-do which went to land

8 La raisons pour quoy on li loa ces choses si estoit teix que,
The reason for which one him advised these things so was such that
se il arivoit avec aus, et sa gent estoient occis et il avec, la
if he landed with them and his people were killed and he with the
besoigne seroit perdue; et se il demouroit en sa neif, par son
business would-be lost and if he remained in his ship by his
cors peust-il recouvrer à reconquerre la terre de Egypte. Et il
body could-he succeed to reconquer the land of Egypt And he
ne vout nullui croire, ains sailli en la mer, touz armez, l'escu
not wished anyone to-believe rather leapt into the sea all armed the-shield
au col, le glaive ou poing, et fu des premiers à terre.
at-the neck the lance in-the fist and was of-the first on land

9 La seconde foiz qu'il mist son cors en avanture de mort,
The second time that-he put his body in hazard of death
si fu teix, que au partir qu'il fist de la Massourre
so was such that at-the departing that-he made from the Mansourah
pour venir à Damiete, ses consaus li loa, si comme l'on
for to-come to Damietta his council him advised so as one
me donna à entendre, que il s'en venist à Damiete
me gave to understand that he himself-thence should-come to Damietta
en galies. Et cis consaus li fu donnez, si comme l'on
in galleys And this counsel to-him was given so as one
dit, pour ce que, se il li meschéoit de sa gent, par son
says for this that if it him mischanced of his people by his
cors les peust delivrer de prison.
body them could deliver from prison

10 Et especialment cis consaus li fu donnez pour le
And especially this counsel to-him was given for the
meschief de son cors où il estoit par plusours maladies
hardship of his body where he was by several sicknesses
qui estoient teix, car il avoit double tierceinne et menoison
which were such for he had double tertian and dysentery

mout fort, et la maladie de l'ost en la bouche et es
very strong and the sickness of the-host in the mouth and in-the
jambes. Il ne vout onques nullui croire; ainçois dist que
legs He not wished ever anyone to-believe rather said that
son peuple ne lairoit-il jà, mais feroit tel fin comme
his people not would-leave-he ever but would-make such end as
il feroient. Si li en avint ainsi, que par la menoison
they would-make So to-him thence happened so that by the dysentery
qu'il avoit, que il li couvint le soir couper le font de ses
that-he had that it him behooved the evening to-cut the bottom of his
braies, et par la force de la maladie de l'ost se pasma-il
breeches and by the force of the sickness of the-host himself swooned-he
le soir par plusours foiz, aussi comme vous orrez ci-après.
the evening by several times just as you will-hear here-after
La tierce foiz qu'il mist son cors en avanture de mort, ce 11
The third time that-he put his body in hazard of death this
fu quant il demoura quatre ans en la sainte Terre, après
was when he remained four years in the holy Land after
ce que sui frere en furent venu. En grant avanture de
this that his brothers thence were come In great hazard of
mort fumes lors; car quant li roys fu demourez en Acre,
death we-were then for when the king was remained in Acre
pour un home à armes que il avoit en sa compaignie,
for one man at arms that he had in his company
cil d'Acre en avoient bien trente, quant la ville fu prise.
those of-Acre thereof had fully thirty when the town was taken
Car je ne sai autre raison pour quoy li Turc ne nous 12
For I not know other reason for which the Turks not us
vindrent penre en la ville, fors que pour l'amour que Diex
came to-take in the town except that for the-love that God
avoit au roy, qui la poour metoit ou cuer à nos ennemis,
had to-the king who the fear put in-the heart to our enemies

pour quoy il ne nous osassent venir courre sus. Et de
for which they not us dared come to-run upon And of
ce est escrit: «Se tu creins Dieu, si te creindront toutes
this is written If thou fearest God so thee will-fear all
les riens qui te verront.» Et ceste demourée fist-il tout
the things which thee will-see And this stay made-he all
contre son consoil, si comme vous orrez ci-après. Son cors
against his counsel so as you will-hear here-after His body
mist-il en avanture pour le peuple de la terre garantir, qui
put-he in hazard for the people of the land to-protect which
eust estei perdus dès lors se il ne se fust lors remez.
would-have been lost from then if he not himself were then remained

13 Li quarz faiz là où il mist son cors en avanture de
The fourth deed there where he put his body in hazard of
mort, ce fu quant nous revenismes d'outremer et venismes
death this was when we came-back from-overseas and came
devant l'ille de Cypre, là où nostre neiz hurta si
before the-isle of Cyprus there where our ship struck so
malement que la terre là où elle hurta, enporta trois
badly that the ground there where it struck carried-off three
toises dou tyson sur quoy nostre neiz estoit fondée.
fathoms of-the keel on which our ship was founded

14 Après ce, li roys envoia querre quatorze maistres nothonniers,
After this the king sent to-seek fourteen master mariners
que de celle neif que d'autres qui estoient en sa compagnie,
both of that ship and of-others who were in his company
pour li conseillier que il feroit. Et tuit li loerent, si
for him to-counsel what he would-do And all him advised so
comme vous orrez ci-après, que il entrast en une autre
as you will-hear here-after that he should-enter into a other
neif; car il ne véoient pas comment la neiz peust soufrir les
ship for they not saw at-all how the ship could suffer the

cos des ondes, pour ce que li clou de quoy les planches de
blows of-the waves for this that the nails of which the planks of
la neif estoient atachies estoient tuit eloschié. Et moustrerent
the ship were attached were all loosened And they-showed
au roy l'exemplaire dou peril de la neif, pour ce que à
to-the king the-example of-the peril of the ship for this that at
l'aler que nous feismes outre mer, une neiz en semblable fait
the-going that we made over sea a ship in like case
avoit estei perie; et je vi la femme et l'enfant chiez
had been perished and I saw the woman and the-child at-the-house-of
le conte de Joyngny, qui seul de ceste nef eschaperent.
the count of Joigny who alone of this ship escaped
A ce respondi li roys: «Signour, je voi que se je descent de 15
To this answered the king Lords I see that if I descend from
ceste nef, que elle sera de refus; et voy que il a céans huit
this ship that it will-be of refuse and see that it has in-here eight
cens persones et plus; et pour ce que chascuns aime autretant
hundred persons and more and for this that each loves as-much
sa vie comme je faiz la moie, n'oseroit nulz demourer en
his life as I do the mine not-would-dare anyone to-remain in
ceste nef, ainçois demourroient en Cypre. Par quoy, se Dieu
this ship rather would-remain in Cyprus By which if God
plait, je ne metterai jà tant de gens comme il a céans en
pleases I not will-put ever so-many of people as it has in-here in
peril de mort; ainçois demourrai céans pour mon peuple sauver.»
peril of death rather I-will-remain in-here for my people to-save
Et demoura; et Diex, à cui il s'atendoit, nous sauva en 16
And he-remained and God to whom he himself-trusted us saved in
peril de mer bien dix semainnes; et venimes à bon port, si
peril of sea fully ten weeks and we-came to good port so
comme vous orrez ci-après. Or avint ainsi que Oliviers de
as you will-hear here-after Now happened so that Oliver of

Termes, qui bien et viguerousement s'estoit maintenus outre
Termes who well and vigorously himself-was maintained over
mer, lessa le roy et demoura en Cypre, lequel nous ne
sea left the king and remained in Cyprus whom we not
veismes puis d'an et demi après. Ainsi destourna li roys
saw after of-a-year and half after Thus turned-aside the king
le doumaige de huit cens personnes qui estoient en la nef.
the harm of eight hundred persons who were in the ship

17 En la dareniere partie de cest livre parlerons de sa fin,
In the last part of this book we-will-speak of his end
comment il trespassa saintement.
how he passed-away holily

18 Or di-je à vous, mon signour le roy de Navarre, que je
Now say-I to you my lord the king of Navarre that I
promis à ma dame la royne vostre mere (à cui Diex bone
promised to my lady the queen your mother to whom God good
merci face!), que je feroie cest livre; et pour moy aquitier
mercy may-do that I would-make this book and for me to-acquit
de ma promesse, l'ai-je fait. Et pour ce que je ne voi nullui
of my promise it-have-I made And for this that I not see anyone
qui si bien le doie avoir comme vous qui estes ses hoirs, le
who so well it ought have as you who are his heir it
vous envoi-je, pour ce que vous et vostre frere, et li autre
to-you send-I for this that you and your brothers and the others
qui l'orront, y puissent penre bon exemple, et les exemples
who it-will-hear there may take good example and the examples
mettre à œvre, par quoy Diex lour en sache grei.
to-put to work by which God them thereof may-know gratitude

The King's Virtues

II

He loved God, and told his eldest son he would rather a Scot governed the kingdom well than his son badly. Asked whether he would rather be a leper or have done a mortal sin, Joinville answers thirty sins, and the king rebukes him; nor will Joinville wash the poor's feet on Maundy Thursday. Robert of Sorbon and Joinville dispute whether the worthy man is worth more than the beghard. Restoring goods is hard, the king says: the r's of rendre are the devil's rakes.

En nom de Dieu le tout puissant, je Jehans sires de Joinville, 19
In name of God the all mighty I John lord of Joinville
seneschaus de Champaigne, faiz escrire la vie notre saint roy
seneschal of Champagne make be-written the life (of-)our holy king
Looys, ce que je vi et oy par l'espace de sis anz, que je fu
Louis that which I saw and heard for the-space of six years that I was
en sa compaignie ou pelerinaige d'outre mer, et puis que nous
in his company in-the pilgrimage of-over sea and since that we
revenimes. Et avant que je vous conte de ses grans faiz et de sa
came-back And before that I to-you tell of his great deeds and of his
chevalerie, vous conterai-je ce que je vi et oy de ses saintes
chivalry to-you will-tell-I that which I saw and heard of his holy
paroles et de ses bons enseignemens, pour ce qu'il soient
words and of his good teachings for this that-they may-be
trouvei li uns après l'autre pour edefier ceuz qui les orront.
found the one after the-other for to-edify those who them will-hear
Cis sainz hom ama Dieu de tout son cuer et ensuivi 20
This holy man loved God with all his heart and followed
ses œuvres; et y apparut en ce que, aussi comme Diex
his works and there appeared in this that just as God
morut pour l'amour que il avoit en son peuple, mist-il
died for the-love that he had in his people put-he

son cors en avanture par plusours foiz pour l'amour que
his body in hazard by several times for the-love that
il avoit à son peuple; et s'en fust bien soufers, se
he had to his people and himself-thence were well spared if
il vousist, si comme vous orrez ci-après.
he had-wished so as you will-hear here-after

21 La grans amours qu'il avoit à son peuple parut à ce qu'il
The great love that-he had to his people appeared in this that-he
dist à mon signour Loys, son ainsnei fil, en une mout grant
said to my lord Louis his eldest son in a very great
maladie que il ot à Fonteinne-Bliaut: «Biaus fiz, fist-il, je te
sickness that he had at Fontainebleau Fair son said-he I thee
pri que tu te faces amer au peuple de ton royaume; car
pray that thou thyself make be-loved by-the people of thy realm for
vraiement je ameroie miex que uns Escoz venist d'Escosse et
truly I would-love better that a Scot should-come from-Scotland and
gouvernast le peuple dou royaume bien et loialment, que que
should-govern the people of-the realm well and loyally than that
tu le gouvernasses mal apertement.» Li sainz roys ama tant
thou it shouldst-govern ill openly The holy king loved so-much
veritei que neis aus Sarrazins ne vout-il pas mentir de ce
truth that even to-the Saracens not wished-he at-all to-lie of that
que il lour avoit en convenant, si comme vous orrez ci-après.
which he to-them had in covenant so as you will-hear here-after

22 De la bouche fu-il si sobres que onques jour de ma vie
Of the mouth was-he so sober that ever day of my life
je ne li oy devisier nulles viandes, aussi comme maint
I not him heard order any foods just as many
riche home font; ainçois manjoit pacientment ce que ses
rich men do rather he-ate patiently that which his
queus li appareilloit et mettoit on devant li. En ses
cook for-him prepared and put one before him In his

paroles fu-il attrempez; car onques jour de ma vie je ne
words was-he temperate for ever day of my life I not
li oy mal dire de nullui, ne onques ne li oy nommer
him heard evil speak of anyone nor ever not him heard name
le dyable, liquex nons est bien espandus par le royaume:
the devil which name is well spread through the realm
ce que je croy qui ne plait mie à Dieu.
this which I believe which not pleases at-all to God
Son vin trempoit par mesure, selonc ce qu'il véoit que li 23
His wine be-tempered by measure according-to this that-he saw that the
vins le pooit soufrir. Il me demanda en Cypre pourquoy je
wine it could suffer He me asked in Cyprus why I
ne metoie de l'yaue en mon vin; et je li diz que ce me
not put of the-water in my wine and I to-him said that this me
fesoient li phisicien, qui me disoient que j'avoie une grosse
made the physicians who me said that I-had a great
teste et une froide fourcelle, et que je nen avoie pooir
head and a cold stomach and that I not-thereof had power
de enyvrer. Et il me dist que il me decevoient; car se je ne
to get-drunk And he me said that they me deceived for if I not
l'apprenoie en ma joenesce et je le vouloie tremper en ma
it-learned in my youth and I it wished to-temper in my
vieillesce, les gouttes et les maladies de fourcelle me penroient,
old-age the gouts and the sicknesses of stomach me would-take
que jamais n'auroie santei; et se je bevoie le vin tout pur
that ever not-would-I-have health and if I drank the wine all pure
en ma vieillesce, je m'enyvreroie touz les soirs; et ce
in my old-age I myself-would-make-drunk all the evenings and this
estoit trop laide chose de vaillant home de soy enyvrer.
was very ugly thing of valiant man of himself to-make-drunk

24 Il me demanda si je vouloie estre honorez en ce siecle et avoir
He me asked if I wished to-be honored in this world and to-have
paradis à la mort; et je li diz, oyl. Et il me dist: «Donques
paradise at the death and I to-him said yes And he me said Then
vous gardez que vous ne faites ne ne dites à votre escient nulle
yourself guard that you not do nor not say to your knowledge any
riens que, se touz li mondes le savoit, que vous ne peussiez
thing that if all the world it knew that you not could
congnoistre: Je ai ce fait, je ai ce dit.» Il me dist que je
acknowledge I have this done I have this said He me said that I
me gardasse que je ne dementisse ne ne desdeisse nullui
myself should-guard that I not should-give-the-lie nor not should-contradict anyone
de ce que il diroit devant moy, puis que je n'i auroie
of that which he would-say before me since that I not-there would-have
ne pechié ne doumaige ou souffrir, pour ce que des dures
neither sin nor harm in suffering for this that from-the hard
paroles meuvent les mellées dont mil home sont mort.
words arise the brawls of-which thousand men are dead

25 Il disoit que l'on devoit son cors vestir et armer en tel
He said that one ought his body clothe and arm in such
maniere que li preudome de cest siecle ne deissent que il
manner that the worthy-men of this world not should-say that he
en feist trop, ne que li joene home ne deissent que il
thereof did too-much nor that the young men not should-say that he
feist pou. Et ceste chose ramenti-je le pere le roy qui
did little And this thing reminded-I the father (of-)the king who
orendroit est, pour les cotes brodées à armer que on fait
now is for the coats embroidered for arming that one makes
hui et le jour; et li disoie que onques en la voie d'outre
today and the day and to-him I-said that ever in the voyage of-over
mer là où je fu, je n'i vi cottes brodées, ne les roy
sea there where I was I not-there saw coats embroidered neither the king's

ne les autrui. Et il me dist qu'il avoit tiex atours brodez
nor the others' And he me said that-he had such attire embroidered
de ses armes qui li avoient coustei huit cenz livres de
with his arms which to-him had cost eight hundred pounds of
parisis. Et je li diz que il les eust miex emploiés se il
Paris And I to-him said that he them had better employed if he
les eust donnez pour Dieu, et eust fait ses atours de bon
them had given for God and had made his attire of good
cendal enforcié de ses armes, si comme ses peres faisoit.
sendal strengthened with his arms so as his father did
Il m'apela une foiz et me dist: «Je n'os parler à vous pour le 26
He me-called one time and me said I not-dare speak to you for the
soutil senz dont vous estes, de chose qui touche à Dieu; et
subtle sense of-which you are of thing which touches to God and
pour ce ai-je appelei ces dous freres qui ci sont, que je vous
for this have-I called these two friars who here are that I to-you
vueil faire une demande.» La demande fu teix: «Seneschaus,
wish to-make a question The question was such Seneschal
fist-il, quex chose est Diex?» Et je li diz: «Sire, ce est
said-he what thing is God And I to-him said Lord this is
si bone chose que mieudre ne puet estre. — Vraiement,
so good thing that better not can be Truly
fist-il, c'est bien respondu; que ceste response que vous avez
said-he this-is well answered for this answer that you have
faite, est escripte en cest livre que je tieing en ma main.
made is written in this book that I hold in my hand
«Or vous demant-je, fist-il, lequel vous ameriés miex, ou que 27
Now you ask-I said-he which you would-love better either that
vous fussiés mesiaus, ou que vous eussiés fait un pechié mortel?»
you were leprous or that you had done a sin mortal
Et je, qui onques ne li menti, li respondi que je en
And I who ever not him lied to-him answered that I thereof

ameroie miex avoir fait trente que estre mesiaus. Et quant li
would-love better to-have done thirty than to-be leprous And when the
frere s'en furent parti, il m'appela tout seul, et me fist
friars themselves-thence were departed he me-called all alone and me had
seoir à ses piez et me dist: «Comment me deistes-vous hier
sit at his feet and me said How me said-you yesterday
ce?» Et je li diz que encore li disoie-je. Et il me dist:
this And I to-him said that still to-him said-I And he me said
«Vous deistes comme hastis musarz; car vous devez savoir que
You spoke as hasty fool for you ought know that
nulle si laide mezelerie n'est comme d'estre en pechié mortel,
any so ugly leprosy not-is as of-being in sin mortal
pour ce que l'ame qui est en pechié mortel est semblable
for this that the-soul which is in sin mortal is like
au dyable: par quoy nulle si laide meselerie ne puet estre.
to-the devil by which any so ugly leprosy not can be
28 «Et bien est voirs que quant li hom meurt, il est gueris de la
And well is true that when the man dies he is healed of the
meselerie dou cors; mais quant li hom qui a fait le pechié
leprosy of-the body but when the man who has done the sin
mortel meurt, il ne sait pas ne n'est certeins que il ait
mortal dies he not knows at-all nor not-is certain that he may-have
eu en sa vie tel repentance que Diex li ait pardonnei:
had in his life such repentance that God him may-have pardoned
par quoy grant poour doit avoir que celle mezelerie li
by which great fear he-ought have that that leprosy to-him
dure tant comme Diex yert en paradis. Si vous pri, fist-il,
may-last so-long as God will-be in paradise So you pray said-he
tant comme je puis, que vous metés votre cuer à ce, pour
as-much as I can that you put your heart to this for
l'amour de Dieu et de moy, que vous amissiez miex que touz
the-love of God and of me that you would-love better that every

meschiez avenist au cors, de mezelerie et de toute maladie,
hardship should-come to-the body of leprosy and of every sickness
que ce que li pechiés mortex venist à l'ame de vous.»
than this that the sin mortal should-come to the-soul of you
Il me demanda se je lavoie les piez aus povres le jour dou 29
He me asked if I washed the feet of-the poor the day of-the
grant jeudi: «Sire, dis-je, en maleur! les piez de ces vilains
great Thursday Lord said-I in ill-hour the feet of these churls
ne laverai-je jà. — Vraiement, fist-il, ce fu mal dit; car vous
not will-wash-I ever Truly said-he this was ill said for you
ne devez mie avoir en desdaing ce que Diex fist pour nostre
not ought at-all have in disdain that which God did for our
enseignement. Si vous pri-je, pour l'amour de Dieu premier,
teaching So you pray-I for the-love of God first
et pour l'amour de moy, que vous les acoustumez à laver.»
and for the-love of me that you them accustom to wash
Il ama tant toutes manieres de gens qui Dieu créoient 30
He loved so-much all manners of people who God believed
et amoient, que il donna la connestablie de France à mon
and loved that he gave the constableship of France to my
signour Gille le Brun (qui n'estoit pas dou royaume de
lord Giles the Brown who not-was at-all of-the realm of
France), pour ce qu'il estoit de grant renommée de croire
France for this that-he was of great renown of believing
Dieu et amer. Et je croy vraiement que teix fu-il.
God and loving And I believe truly that such was-he
Maistre Robert de Sorbon, pour la grant renommée que 31
Master Robert of Sorbon for the great renown that
il avoit d'estre preudome, il le faisoit mangier à sa table.
he had of-being a-worthy-man he him had eat at his table
Un jour avint que il manjoit delez moy, et devisiens li
One day happened that he ate beside me and we-talked the

uns à l'autre. Et nous reprist et dist: «Parlés haut, fist-il,
one to the-other And us he-reproved and said Speak loud said-he
car vostre compaignon cuident que vous mesdisiés d'aus. Se
for your companions think that you speak-ill of-them If
vous parlés, au mangier, de chose qui nous doie plaire,
you speak at-the eating of thing which us ought please
si dites haut; ou se ce non, si vous taisiés.»
so say loud or if this not so yourselves be-silent

32 Quant li roys estoit en joie, si me disoit: «Seneschaus, or me
When the king was in joy so to-me he-said Seneschal now me
dites les raisons pour quoy preudom vaut miex que beguins.»
tell the reasons for which worthy-man is-worth more than beghard
Lors si encommençoit la tençons de moy et de maistre
Then so began the dispute of me and of master
Robert. Quant nous aviens grant piesce desputei, si rendoit
Robert When we had great while disputed so he-rendered
sa sentence et disoit ainsi: «Maistres Roberz, je vourroie bien
his sentence and said thus Master Robert I would-wish well
avoir le non de preudome, mais que je le fusse, et touz li
to-have the name of worthy-man provided that I it were and all the
remenans vous demourast; car preudom est si grans chose et
rest to-you should-remain for worthy-man is so great thing and
si bone chose que, neis au nommer, emplist-il la bouche.»
so good thing that even at-the naming fills-it the mouth

33 Au contraire, disoit-il que male chose estoit de penre
On-the contrary said-he that ill thing it-was to take
de l'autrui; «car li rendres estoit si griez que, neis au
of the-other's for the restoring was so grievous that even at-the
nommer, li rendres escorchoit la gorge par les erres qui
naming the restoring flayed the throat by the r's which
y sont, lesquiex senefient les ratiaus au diable, qui touz
there are which signify the rakes of-the devil who all

jours tire ariere vers li ceus qui l'autrui chatel weulent
days draws back toward himself those who the-other's chattel wish
rendre. Et si soutilment le fait li dyables; car aus grans
to-restore And so subtly it does the devil for to-the great
usuriers et aus granz robeours, les attice-il si que il lour
usurers and to-the great robbers them entices-he so that he them
fait donner pour Dieu ce que il deveroient rendre.»
makes give for God that which they ought restore
Il me dist que je deisse au roi Tibaut de par li, que il 34
He me said that I should-say to-the king Thibaut on behalf-of him that he
se preist garde à la maison des Preescheours de Provins,
himself should-take heed to the house of-the Preachers of Provins
que il faisoit, que il n'encombrast l'ame de li pour les granz
that he made that he not-should-encumber the-soul of him for the great
deniers que il y metoit. «Car li saige home, tandis que
pence that he there put For the wise men while that
il vivent, doivent faire dou lour aussi comme executour en
they live ought do of-the theirs just as executors thereof
deveroient faire; c'est à savoir que li bon executour desfont
ought do this-is to know that the good executors undo
premierement les torfaiz au mort, et rendent l'autrui chatel;
first the wrongs of-the dead-man and render the-other's chattel
et dou remenant de l'avoir au mort font aumosnes.»
and of-the rest of the-wealth of-the dead-man make alms

Of Dress, and God's Warnings

III

At Corbeil Robert of Sorbon blames Joinville for dressing more richly than the king; Joinville answers that he wears what his father and mother left him, while Robert, son of villeins, wears finer cloth than the king. The king defends Robert, then privately owns he was wrong, bidding them dress well for their wives. When the ship struck off Cyprus he taught that God had shown his power through a little wind, and that his threat must be met by amending at once.

35 Li sainz roys fu à Corbeil à une Penthecouste, là où il ot
The holy king was at Corbeil at a Pentecost there where he had
quatre-vins chevaliers. Li roys descendi après mangier ou
fourscore knights The king came-down after eating into-the
prael, desouz la chapelle, et parloit à l'uys de la porte au
meadow below the chapel and spoke at the-door of the gate to-the
conte de Bretaigne, le pere au duc qui ore est, que Diex
count of Brittany the father of-the duke who now is whom God
gart! Là me vint querre maistres Roberz de Sorbon, et me
guard There me came to-seek master Robert of Sorbon and me
prist par le cor de mon mantel, et me mena au roy; et
took by the corner of my mantle and me led to-the king and
tuit li autre chevalier vindrent après nous. Lors demandai-je
all the other knights came after us Then asked-I
à maistre Robert: «Maistres Roberz, que me voulez vous?» Et
to master Robert Master Robert what me wish you And
me dist: «Je vous veil demander se li roys se séoit en cest
me he-said I you wish to-ask if the king himself sat in this
prael, et vous vous aliez seoir sur son banc plus haut que li,
meadow and you yourself went to-sit on his bench more high than he
se on vous en deveroit bien blasmer.» Et je li diz que oil.
if one you thereof ought well blame And I to-him said that yes

Et il me dist: «Dont faites vous bien à blasmer, quant vous 36
And he me said Then are you well to blame when you
estes plus noblement vestus que li roys; car vous vous vestez
are more nobly clothed than the king for you yourself clothe
de vair et de vert, ce que li roys ne fait pas.» Et je li diz:
in vair and in green this which the king not does at-all And I to-him said
«Maistres Roberz, sauve vostre grace, je ne faiz mie à blasmer se
Master Robert saving your grace I not am at-all to blame if
je me vest de vert et de vair; car cest abit me lessa mes peres
I myself clothe in green and in vair for this habit me left my father
et ma mere. Mais vous faites à blamer; car vous estes fiz de
and my mother But you are to blame for you are son of
vilain et de vilainne, et avez lessié l'abit vostre pere et vostre
churl and of churl-woman and have left the-habit (of-)your father and your
mere, et estes vestus de plus riche camelin que li roys n'est.»
mother and are clothed in more rich camlet than the king not-is
Et lors je pris le pan de son seurcot et dou seurcot le roy,
And then I took the skirt of his surcoat and of-the surcoat (of-)the king
et li diz: «Or esgardez se je di voir.» Et lors li roys emprist
and to-him said Now look if I say true And then the king undertook
à deffendre maistre Robert de paroles, de tout son pooir.
to defend master Robert with words with all his power
Après ces choses, mes sires li roys appela mon signour 37
After these things my lord the king called my lord
Phelippe son fil, le pere au roy qui ore est, et le roi Tybaut,
Philip his son the father of-the king who now is and the king Thibaut
et s'asit à l'uys de son oratour, et mist la main à terre, et
and sat at the-door of his oratory and put the hand to ground and
dist: «Séez-vous ci bien près de moy, pour ce que on ne nous
said Sit-you here well near to me for this that one not us
oie. — Ha! sire, firent-il, nous ne nous oseriens asseoir si
may-hear Ah lord said-they we not ourselves would-dare to-sit so

près de vous.» Et il me dist: «Seneschaus, séez-vous ci.» Et
near to you And he me said Seneschal sit-you here And
si fiz-je, si près de li que ma robe touchoit à la seue. Et
so did-I so near to him that my robe touched to the his-own And
il les fist asseoir après moy, et lour dist: «Grant mal apert
he them had sit after me and to-them said Great ill open
avez fait, quant vous estes mi fil, et n'avez fait au premier
have-you done when you are my sons and not-have done at-the first
coup tout ce que je vous ai commandei; et gardés que il
stroke all that which I to-you have commanded and guard that it
ne vous avieingne jamais.» Et il dirent que non feroient-il.
not to-you may-happen ever And they said that not would-do-they
38 Et lors me dist que il nous avoit appelez pour li confesser
And then me he-said that he us had called for himself to-confess
à moy de ce que à tort avoit deffendu maistre Robert encontre
to me of this that at wrong he-had defended master Robert against
moy. «Mais, fist-il, je le vi si esbahi que il avoit bien mestier
me But said-he I him saw so dismayed that he had well need
que je li aidasse. Et toutes voiz ne vous tenez pas à chose
that I him should-aid And all ways not yourselves hold at-all to thing
que je en deisse pour maistre Robert deffendre; car, aussi
that I thereof might-say for master Robert to-defend for just
comme li seneschaus dist, vous vous devez bien vestir et
as the seneschal said you yourselves ought well clothe and
nettement, pour ce que vos femmes vous en ameront miex,
cleanly for this that your wives you thereof will-love better
et vostre gent vous en priseront plus. Car, ce dit li saiges,
and your people you thereof will-prize more For this says the wise-man
on se doit assemer en robes et en armes en tel maniere que
one himself ought adorn in robes and in arms in such manner that

li preudome de cest siecle ne dient que on en face trop, ne
the worthy-men of this world not may-say that one thereof does too-much nor
les joenes gens de cest siecle ne dient que on en face pou.»
the young people of this world not may-say that one thereof does little
Ci-après orrez un enseignement que il me fist en la mer, 39
Here-after you-will-hear a teaching that he me made on the sea
quant nous reveniens d'outre mer. Il avint que nostre neis
when we came-back from-over sea It happened that our ship
hurta devant l'ille de Cypre, par un vent qui a non guerbin,
struck before the-isle of Cyprus by a wind which has name guerbin
qui n'est mie des quatre maistres venz. Et de ce coup
which not-is at-all of-the four master winds And from this blow
que nostre neis prist, furent li notonnier si desperei que il
that our ship took were the mariners so despairing that they
dessiroient lour robes et lour barbes. Li roys sailli de son lit
tore their robes and their beards The king leapt from his bed
touz deschaus (car nuis estoit), une cote, sanz plus, vestue,
all unshod for night it-was a tunic without more clothed
et se alla mettre en croiz devant le cors Nostre-Signour,
and himself went to-put in cross before the body (of-)Our-Lord
comme cil qui n'atendoit que la mort. L'endemain que ce
as he who not-awaited but the death The-next-day that this
nous fu avenu, m'apela li rois tout seul, et me dist:
to-us was happened me-called the king all alone and me said
«Seneschaus, ore nous a moustrei Diex une partie de son 40
Seneschal now us has shown God a part of his
grant pooir; car uns de ces petiz venz, qui est si petiz
great power for one of these little winds which is so little
que à peinne le sait-on nommer, deut avoir le roy de
that with pain it knows-one name ought have the king of
France, ses enfans et sa femme et ses gens noiés. Or dit
France his children and his wife and his people drowned Now says

sainz Anciaumes que ce sont des menaces Nostre Signour,
saint Anselm that these are of-the threats (of-)Our Lord
aussi comme se Diex vousist dire: Or vous eussé-je bien
just as if God wished to-say Now you had-I well
mors, se je vousisse. Sire Diex, fait li sains, pourquoy nous
dead if I had-wished Lord God says the saint why us
menaces-tu? Car es menaces que tu nous faiz, ce n'est
threatenest-thou For in-the threats that thou us makest this not-is
pour ton preu ne pour ton avantaige: car se tu nous avoies
for thy gain nor for thy advantage for if thou us hadst
touz perdus, si ne seroies-tu jà plus povres; ne se tu nous
all lost so not wouldst-be-thou ever more poor nor if thou us
avoies tous gaigniez, tu n'en seroies jà plus riches. Donc
hadst all gained thou not-thereof wouldst-be ever more rich Then
n'est-ce pas pour ton preu la menace que tu nous as faite,
not-is-this at-all for thy gain the threat that thou us hast made
mais pour nostre profit, se nous le savons mettre à œuvre.
but for our profit if we it know put to work
41 «A œuvre devons-nous mettre ceste menace que Diex nous a
To work ought-we put this threat that God us has
faite, en tel maniere que, se nous sentons que nous aiens en
made in such manner that if we feel that we may-have in
nos cuers et en nos cors chose qui desplaise à Dieu, oster le
our hearts and in our bodies thing which displeases to God take-away it
devons hastivement; et quanque nous cuiderons qui li plaise,
we-ought hastily and whatever we will-think which him pleases
nous nous devons esforcier hastivement dou penre. Et se nous
we ourselves ought strive hastily of-the taking And if we
le faisons ainsinc, Nostre-Sires nous donra plus de biens en cest
it do so Our-Lord us will-give more of goods in this
siecle et en l'autre que nous ne sauriens devisier. Et se nous
world and in the-other than we not could devise And if we

ne le faisons ainsi, il fera aussi comme li bons sires doit faire
not it do so he will-do just as the good lord ought do
à son mauvais sergant; car après la menace, quant li mauvais
to his wicked servant for after the threat when the wicked
serjans ne se veut amender, li sires le fiert ou de mort ou
servant not himself wishes to-amend the lord him strikes either with death or
de autres greingnours meschéances, qui piz valent que mort.»
with other greater mischances which worse are-worth than death
Si y preingne garde li roys qui ore est; car il est 42
So there may-take heed the king who now is for he is
eschapez de aussi grant peril ou de plus que nous ne
escaped from as great peril or from more than we not
feimes: si s'amende de ses mesfais en tel maniere que
did so himself-may-amend of his misdeeds in such manner that
Diex ne fiere en li ne en ses choses cruelment.
God not may-strike on him nor on his things cruelly

Of Faith

IV

The king taught Joinville to hold the faith against the devil, believing by hearsay as he believes his father was named Simon. Bishop William of Paris comforts a master troubled about the sacrament: the keeper of La Rochelle, on the border, earns more thanks than the keeper of safe Montlhéry. The count of Montfort will not go to see a host turned to flesh. At Cluny a knight strikes a Jew with his crutch, and the king holds a layman should defend the faith with his sword.

Li sainz roys se esforça de tout son pooir, par ses paroles, 43
The holy king himself strove with all his power by his words
de moy faire croire fermement en la loi crestienne que Diex
of me to-make believe firmly in the law Christian that God

nous a donnée, aussi comme vous orrez ci-après. Il disoit
us has given just as you will-hear here-after He said
que nous deviens croire si fermement les articles de la foy que,
that we ought believe so firmly the articles of the faith that
pour mort ne pour meschief qui avenist au cors, que nous
for death nor for hardship which might-happen to-the body that we
n'aiens nulle volentei d'aler encontre par parole ne par fait.
not-should-have any will of-going against by word nor by deed
Et disoit que li ennemis est si soutilz que, quant les gens
And he-said that the enemy is so subtle that when the people
se meurent, il se travaille tant comme il puet que il les
themselves die he himself labors as-much as he can that he them
puisse faire mourir en aucune doutance des poins de la foy; car
may make die in some doubt of-the points of the faith for
il voit que les bones œuvres que li hom a faites, ne li puet-il
he sees that the good works that the man has done not him can-he
tollir; et voit aussi que il l'a perdu se il meurt en vraie foy.
take-away and sees also that he him-has lost if he dies in true faith
44 Et pour ce, se doit-on garder et en tel maniere deffendre
And for this oneself ought-one guard and in such manner defend
de cest agait que on die à l'ennemi, quant il envoie
from this ambush that one may-say to the-enemy when he sends
tel temptacion: «Va-t'en! doit-on dire à l'ennemi; tu ne me
such temptation Go-thou ought-one say to the-enemy thou not me
tempteras jà à ce que je ne croie fermement touz les
wilt-tempt ever to this that I not may-believe firmly all the
articles de la foy; mais se tu me fesoies touz les membres
articles of the faith but if thou me hadst all the limbs
tranchier, si vueil-je vivre et morir en cesti point.» Et
cut so wish-I to-live and to-die in this point And

qui ainsi le fait, il vaint l'ennemi de son baston et de
who thus it does he conquers the-enemy with his staff and with
s'espée, dont li ennemis le vouloit occirre.
his-sword with-which the enemy him wished to-kill
Il disoit que foys et créance estoit une chose où nous 45
He said that faith and belief was a thing where we
deviens bien croire fermement, encore n'en fussiens-nous
ought well believe firmly even not-thereof were-we
certein mais que par oïr dire. Sus ce point, il me fist une
certain but that by hearing say Upon this point he me made a
demande: comment mes peres avoit non. Et je li diz que
question how my father had name And I to-him said that
il avoit non Symon. Et il me dist comment je le savoie. Et
he had name Simon And he me said how I it knew And
je li diz que je en cuidoie estre certeins et le créoie
I to-him said that I thereof thought to-be certain and it believed
fermement, pour ce que ma mere le m'avoit tesmoingnié.
firmly for this that my mother it to-me-had witnessed
Lors il me dist: «Donc devez-vous croire fermement touz
Then he me said Then ought-you believe firmly all
les articles de la foy, lesquiex li apostre tesmoingnent, aussi
the articles of the faith which the apostles witness just
comme vous oez chanter au dymanche en la Credo.»
as you hear sing on-the Sunday in the Creed
Il me dist que li evesques Guillaumes de Paris li avoit 46
He me said that the bishop William of Paris to-him had
contei que une grans maistres de divinitei estoit venus à
told that a great master of divinity was come to
li, et li avoit dit que il vouloit parler à li. Et il li
him and to-him had said that he wished to-speak to him And he to-him
dist: «Maistres, dites vostre volentei.» Et quant li maistres
said Master say your will And when the master

cuidoit parler à l'evesque, commença à plorer trop fort. Et
thought to-speak to the-bishop he-began to weep very hard And
li evesques li dist: «Maistres, dites, ne vous desconfortés
the bishop to-him said Master speak not yourself discomfort
pas, car nulz ne puet tant pechier que Diex ne puet plus
at-all for anyone not can so-much sin that God not can more
pardonner. — Et je vous di, sire, dist li maistres; je n'en
pardon And I to-you say lord said the master I not-thereof
puis mais se je pleur; car je cuit estre mescréans, pour ce
can more if I weep for I think to-be misbelieving for this
que je ne puis mon cuer ahurter à ce que je croie ou
that I not can my heart bring to this that I may-believe in-the
sacrement de l'autel, ainsi comme sainte Esglise l'enseigne;
sacrament of the-altar so as holy Church it-teaches
et si sai bien que ce est des temptacions l'ennemi.»
and so I-know well that this is of-the temptations (of-)the-enemy
47 — «Maistres, fist li evesques, or me dites, quant li
Master said the bishop now me tell when the
ennemis vous envoie ceste temptacion, se elle vous plait.» —
enemy you sends this temptation if it you pleases
Et li maistres dist: «Sire, mais m'ennuie tant comme il
And the master said Lord but me-it-troubles as-much as it
me puet ennuier. — Or vous demant-je, fist li evesques, se
me can trouble Now you ask-I said the bishop if
vous penriés ne or ne argent par quoy vous regéissiez de
you would-take either gold or silver for which you should-confess with
vostre bouche nulle riens qui fust contre le sacrement de
your mouth any thing which were against the sacrament of
l'autel, ne contre les autres sains sacremens de l'Esglise. —
the-altar nor against the other holy sacraments of the-Church
Je, sire, fist li maistres, sachiez que il n'est nulle riens
I lord said the master know that it not-is any thing

ou monde que j'en preisse; ainçois ameroie miex que on
in-the world that I-thereof would-take rather I-would-love better that one
m'arachast touz les membres dou cors, que je le regéisse.»
me-should-tear all the limbs from-the body than I it should-confess
« — Or vous dirai-je autre chose, fist li evesques. Vous savez 48
Now to-you will-say-I other thing said the bishop You know
que li roys de France guerroie au roy d'Engleterre; et savez
that the king of France makes-war on-the king of-England and know
que li chastiaus qui est plus en la marche de aus dous, c'est
that the castle which is most in the march of them two this-is
la Rochelle en Poitou. Or vous vueil faire une demande:
the Rochelle in Poitou Now you wish to-make a question
que se li roys vous avoit baillié la Rochelle à garder, qui
that if the king you had given the Rochelle to keep which
est en la male marche, et il m'eust baillié le chastel de
is in the ill march and he me-had given the castle of
Montleheri à garder, qui est ou cuer de France et en terre
Montlhéry to keep which is in-the heart of France and in land
de pais, auquel li roys deveroit savoir meillour grei en la
of peace to-which the king ought know better gratitude in the
fin de sa guerre, ou à vous qui averiés gardée la Rochelle
end of his war either to you who would-have kept the Rochelle
sanz perdre, ou à moy qui li averoie gardé le chastiel
without losing or to me who to-him would-have kept the castle
de Montleheri sanz perdre? — En non Dieu, sire, fist li
of Montlhéry without losing In name-of God lord said the
maistres, à moy qui averoie gardée la Rochelle sanz perdre.»
master to me who would-have kept the Rochelle without losing
« — Maistres, dist li evesques, je vous di que mes cuers est 49
Master said the bishop I to-you say that my heart is
semblables au chastel de Montleheri; car nulle temptacion
like to-the castle of Montlhéry for any temptation

ne nulle doute je n'ai dou sacrement de l'autel. Pour laquel
nor any doubt I not-have of-the sacrament of the-altar For which
chose je vou di que pour un grei que Diex me sait
thing I to-you say that for one gratitude that God to-me knows
de ce que je le croy fermement et en pais, vous en sait
of this that I it believe firmly and in peace to-you thereof knows
Diex quatre, pour ce que vous li gardez vostre cuer en
God four for this that you to-him keep your heart in
la guerre de tribulacion, et avez si bone volentei envers li
the war of tribulation and have so good will toward him
que vous pour nulle riens terrienne, ne pour meschief que on
that you for any thing earthly nor for hardship that one
feist dou cors, ne le relenquiriés. Dont je vous di que soiés
might-do to-the body not it would-forsake Whence I to-you say that you-be
touz aaises; que vostre estaz plait miex à Nostre Signour en
all at-ease for your state pleases better to Our Lord in
ce cas, que ne fait li miens.» Quant li maistres oy ce,
this case than not does the mine When the master heard this
il s'agenoilla devant l'evesque, et se tint bien pour paié.
he himself-knelt before the-bishop and himself held well for paid
50 Li sainz roys me conta que plusours gens des Aubigois
The holy king me told that many people of-the Albigensians
vindrent au conte de Montfort, qui lors gardoit la terre des
came to-the count of Montfort who then kept the land of-the
Aubijois pour le roy, et li distrent que il venist veoir le
Albigensians for the king and to-him said that he should-come to-see the
cors Nostre Signour, qui estoit devenuz en sanc et en char
body (of-)Our Lord which was become into blood and into flesh
entre les mains au prestre. Et il lour dist: «Alez le veoir, vous
between the hands of-the priest And he to-them said Go it to-see you
qui ne le créez; car je le croi fermement, aussi comme sainte
who not it believe for I it believe firmly just as holy

Esglise nous raconte le sacrement de l'autel. Et savez-vous que
Church us tells the sacrament of the-altar And know-you what
je y gaignerai, fist li cuens, de ce que je le croy en ceste
I there will-gain said the count from this that I it believe in this
mortel vie aussi comme sainte Esglise le nous enseigne? Je
mortal life just as holy Church it us teaches I
en averai une couronne es ciex plus que les angres, qui
thereof will-have a crown in-the heavens more than the angels who
le voient face à face; par quoi il couvient que il le croient.»
it see face to face by which it behooves that they it believe
Il me conta que il ot une grant desputaison de clers et de 51
He me told that it had a great disputation of clerks and of
Juis ou moustier de Clygni. Là ot un chevalier à qui li
Jews in-the minster of Cluny There had a knight to whom the
abbes avoit donnei le pain léens pour Dieu; et requist à l'abbei
abbot had given the bread in-there for God and he-asked to the-abbot
que il li lessast dire la premiere parole, et on li otria à
that he him should-let say the first word and one him granted with
peinne. Et lors il se leva et s'apuia sur sa croce, et dist
pain And then he himself raised and himself-leaned on his crutch and said
que l'en li feist venir le plus grant clerc et le plus grant
that one to-him should-have come the most great clerk and the most great
maistre des Juis; et si firent-il. Et li fist une demande
master of-the Jews and so did-they And to-him he-made a question
qui fu teix: «Maistres, fist li chevaliers, je vous demant se
which was such Master said the knight I you ask if
vous créez que la Vierge Marie, qui Dieu porta en ses flans et
you believe that the Virgin Mary who God bore in her flanks and
en ses bras, enfantast vierge, et que elle soit mere de Dieu.»
in her arms bore-child virgin and that she is mother of God

52 Et li Juis respondi que de tout ce ne créoit-il riens.
And the Jew answered that of all this not believed-he anything
Et li chevaliers li respondi que mout avoit fait que
And the knight to-him answered that much he-had done like
fous, quant il ne la créoit ne ne l'amoit, et estoit entrez
fool when he not her believed nor not her-loved and was entered
en son moustier et en sa maison. «Et vraiement, fist li
into her minster and into her house And truly said the
chevaliers, vous le comparrez.» Et lors il hauça sa potence
knight you it will-pay-for And then he raised his crutch
et feri le Juif lès l'oye, et le porta par terre. Et li
and struck the Jew beside the-ear and him bore to ground And the
Juif tournerent en fuie, et enporterent lour maistre tout
Jews turned in flight and carried-off their master all
blecié: et ainsi demoura la desputaisons.
wounded and thus remained the disputation

53 Lors vint li abbes au chevalier, et li dist que il avoit
Then came the abbot to-the knight and to-him said that he had
fait grant folie. Et li chevaliers dist que encore avoit-il fait
done great folly And the knight said that yet had-he done
greingnour folie d'assembler tel desputaison; car avant que la
greater folly to-assemble such disputation for before that the
desputaisons fust menée à fin, avoit-il céans grant foison de
disputation were brought to end had-it in-here great plenty of
bons crestiens, qui s'en fussent parti tuit mescréant,
good Christians who themselves-thence would-have departed all misbelieving
par ce que il n'eussent mie bien entendu les Juis. «Aussi
for this that they not-had at-all well understood the Jews So
vous di-je, fist li roys, que nulz, se il n'est très-bons clers,
to-you say-I said the king that anyone if he not-is very-good clerk
ne doit desputer à aus; mais li hom lays, quant il ot
not ought dispute with them but the man lay when he hears

mesdire de la loy crestienne, ne doit pas desfendre la loy
speak-ill of the law Christian not ought at-all defend the law
crestienne, ne mais de l'espée, de quoy il doit donner
Christian not but with the-sword with which he ought give
parmi le ventre dedens, tant comme elle y puet entrer.»
through the belly within as-much as it there can enter

The King's Justice

V

The king hears his hours and masses daily. At Hyères a Cordelier preaches that kingdoms are lost for want of justice, and will not stay more than a day. The king has Nesle, Soissons, and his other men hear the pleas at the gate and asks after any they cannot settle. In summer he sits against an oak at Vincennes, where anyone may speak to him without an usher; he corrects what is said amiss for him or for others, and he judges in his garden in Paris.

Li gouvernemenz de sa terre fu teix que touz les jours 54
The governing of his land was such that all the days
il ooit à note ses heures, et une messe de Requiem
he heard with chant his hours and a mass of Requiem
sanz note, et puis la messe dou jour ou dou saint, se il
without chant and then the mass of-the day or of-the saint if it
y chéoit, à note. Touz les jours il se reposoit, après
there fell with chant All the days he himself rested after
mangier, en son lit; et quant il avoit dormi et reposei,
eating in his bed and when he had slept and rested
si disoit en sa chambre privéement des mors, entre
so he-said in his chamber privately (the-office-)of-the dead between

li et un de ses chapelains, avant que il oyst ses vespres.
himself and one of his chaplains before that he heard his vespers
Le soir, ooit ses complies.
The evening he-heard his compline
55 Uns cordeliers vint à li ou chastel de Yeres, là où
A Cordelier came to him in-the castle of Hyères there where
nous descendimes de mer; et pour enseignier le roy, dist
we came-down from sea and for to-teach the king said
en son sermon que il avoit leu la Bible et les livres qui
in his sermon that he had read the Bible and the books which
parlent des princes mescréans; et disoit que il ne trouvoit,
speak of-the princes misbelieving and said that he not found
ne es créans ne es mescréans, que onques royaumes
neither in-the believing nor in-the misbelieving that ever realm
se perdist ne chanjast de signourie à autre, mais que
itself lost nor changed from lordship to other but that
par defaute de droit. «Or se preingne garde, fist-il, li
by default of justice Now himself may-take heed said-he the
roys qui s'en va en France, que il face bon droit
king who himself-thence goes into France that he may-do good justice
et hastif à son peuple, par quoy Nostre Sires li seuffre
and swift to his people by which Our Lord to-him may-suffer
son royaume à tenir en pais tout le cours de sa vie.»
his realm to hold in peace all the course of his life
56 On dit que cis preudom qui ce enseignoit le roy, gist
One says that this worthy-man who this taught the king lies
à Marseille là où Nostre Sires fait pour li maint bel
at Marseille there where Our Lord does for him many fair
miracle. Et ne vout onques demourer avec le roy, pour
miracle And not he-wished ever to-remain with the king for
priere que il li seust faire, que une seule journée.
prayer that he to-him could make but one single day

Li roys n'oublia pas cest enseignement; ainçois gouverna sa 57
The king not-forgot at-all this teaching rather governed his
terre bien loialment et selonc Dieu, si comme vous orrez
land very loyally and according-to God so as you will-hear
ci-après. Il avoit sa besoigne atirie en tel maniere que mes
here-after He had his business arranged in such manner that my
sires de Neelle et li bons cuens de Soissons, et nous autre
lord of Nesle and the good count of Soissons and we others
qui estiens entour li, qui aviens oïes nos messes, aliens oïr
who were around him who had heard our masses went to-hear
les plaiz de la porte, que on appelle maintenant les requestes.
the pleas of the gate which one calls now the requests
Et quant il revenoit dou moustier, il nous envoioit querre, et 58
And when he came-back from-the minster he us sent to-seek and
s'asséoit au pié de son lit, et nous fesoit touz asseoir entour
himself-sat at-the foot of his bed and us had all sit around
li, et nous demandoit se il y en avoit nulz à delivrer que
him and us asked if it there thereof had any to deliver that
on ne peust delivrer sanz li; et nous les li nommiens, et
one not could deliver without him and we them to-him named and
il les faisoit envoier querre, et il lour demandoit: «Pourquoy
he them had sent to-seek and he them asked Why
ne prenez-vous ce que nos gens vous offrent?» Et il disoient:
not take-you this that our people you offer And they said
«Sire, que il nous offrent pou.» Et il lour disoit en tel
Lord for they us offer little And he to-them said in such
maniere: «Vous deveriez bien ce penre que l'on vous voudroit
manner You ought well this take which one you would-wish
faire.» Et se traveilloit ainsi li sainz hom, à son pooir,
to-do And himself labored thus the holy man to his power
comment il les metteroit en droite voie et en raisonnable.
how he them would-put into right way and into reasonable

59 Maintes foiz avint que en estei il se alloit seoir ou
Many times happened that in summer he himself went to-sit in-the
bois de Vinciennes après sa messe, et se acostoioit à
wood of Vincennes after his mass and himself leaned to
un chesne, et nous fesoit seoir entour li. Et tuit cil
an oak and us had sit around him And all those
qui avoient afaire venoient parler à li, sanz destourbier de
who had business came to-speak to him without hindrance of
huissier ne d'autre. Et lors il lour demandoit de sa bouche:
usher nor of-other And then he them asked with his mouth
«A-il ci nullui qui ait partie?» Et cil se levoient
Has-it here anyone who may-have a-suit And those themselves rose
qui partie avoient. Et lors il disoit: «Taisiés-vous tuit, et on
who suit had And then he said Be-silent-you all and one
vous deliverra l'un après l'autre.» Et lors il appeloit mon
you will-dispatch the-one after the-other And then he called my
signour Perron de Fonteinnes et mon signour Geffroy de
lord Peter of Fontaines and my lord Geoffrey of
Villete, et disoit à l'un d'aus: «Delivrez-moy ceste partie.»
Villette and said to the-one of-them Dispatch-me this suit
60 Et quant il véoit aucune chose à amender en la parole de ceus
And when he saw some thing to amend in the word of those
qui parloient pour li, ou en la parolle de ceus qui parloient
who spoke for him or in the word of those who spoke
pour autrui, il-meismes l'amendoit de sa bouche. Je le vi
for others he-himself it-amended with his mouth I him saw
aucune foiz, en estei, que pour delivrer sa gent il venoit ou
some time in summer that for to-dispatch his people he came into-the
jardin de Paris, une cote de chamelot vestue, un seurcot de
garden of Paris a coat of camlet clothed a surcoat of
tyreteinne sanz manches, un mantel de cendal noir entour son
linsey without sleeves a mantle of sendal black around his

col, mout bien pigniez et sans coife, et un chapel de paon
neck very well combed and without coif and a hat of peacock
blanc sus sa teste. Et fesoit estendre tapis pour nous seoir
white upon his head And he-had spread carpets for us to-sit
entour li; et touz li peuples qui avoit afaire par devant li,
around him and all the people who had business by before him
estoit entour li en estant. Et lors il les faisoit delivrer, en
was around him in standing And then he them had dispatched in
la maniere que je vous ai dit devant dou bois de Vinciennes.
the manner that I to-you have said before of-the wood of Vincennes

The Bishops, and the King's Loyalty

VI

The prelates, through Guy of Auxerre, ask the king to force excommunicates to seek absolution; he will do so only where he may judge their cause, citing the count of Brittany, who pleaded seven years and won before the pope. When Reginald of Trie brings a letter with a broken seal granting Dammartin away, his council says he is not bound by it, but he matches its broken seal to his old one and gives up the county.

Je le revi une autre foiz à Paris, là où tuit li prelat 61
I him saw-again an other time at Paris there where all the prelates
de France le manderent que il vouloient parler à li; et li
of France him sent-word that they wished to-speak to him and the
roys ala ou palaiz pour aus oïr. Et là estoit li evesques
king went to-the palace for them to-hear And there was the bishop
Guis d'Ausserre, qui fu fiz mon signour Guillaume de Mello;
Guy of-Auxerre who was son (of-)my lord William of Mello
et dist au roy pour touz les prelaz en tel maniere: «Sire,
and said to-the king for all the prelates in such manner Lord
cist signour qui ci sont, arcevesque, evesque, m'ont dit que
these lords who here are archbishops bishops me-have told that

je vous deisse que la crestientés, qui deust estre gardée par
I to-you should-say that the Christendom which ought be kept by
vous, se perit entre vos mains.» Li roys se seigna quant
you itself perishes between your hands The king himself crossed when
il oï la parole, et dist: «Or me dites comment ce est.»
he heard the word and said Now me tell how this is
62 « — Sire, fist-il, c'est pour ce que on prise si pou les
Lord said-he this-is for this that one prizes so little the
excommeniemens hui et le jour, que avant se laissent les
excommunications today and the day that sooner themselves let the
gens morir excommeniés que il se facent absodre, et ne
people die excommunicate than they themselves may-make be-absolved and not
veulent faire satisfaction à l'Esglise. Si vous requierent, sire,
wish to-make satisfaction to the-Church So you require lord
pour Dieu et pour ce que faire le devez, que vous commandez
for God and for this that to-do it you-ought that you command
à vos prevoz et à vos baillis que touz ceux qui se
to your provosts and to your bailiffs that all those who themselves
soufferront escommeniez an et jour, que on les contreingne
will-suffer excommunicate year and day that one them may-constrain
par la prise de lour biens à ce que il se facent absoudre.»
by the taking of their goods to this that they themselves may-make be-absolved
63 A ce respondi li roys que il lour commanderoit volentiers
To this answered the king that he them would-command willingly
de touz ceus dont on le feroit certein que il eussent
of all those of-whom one him would-make certain that they had
tort. Et li evesques dist que il ne le feroient à nul
wrong And the bishop said that they not it would-do at any
fuer, que il li devéissient la court de lour cause. Et
price that they to-him should-owe the court of their cause And
li roys li dist que il ne le feroit autrement; car ce
the king to-him said that he not it would-do otherwise for this

seroit contre Dieu et contre raison, se il contreignoit la
would-be against God and against reason if he constrained the
gent à aus absoudre quant li clerc lour feroient tort.
people to themselves absolve when the clerks to-them would-do wrong
«Et de ce, fist li roys, vous en doing-je un exemple dou 64
And of this said the king to-you thereof give-I an example of-the
conte de Bretaigne, qui a plaidié sept ans aus prelaz de
count of Brittany who has pleaded seven years with-the prelates of
Bretaingne touz excommeniez, et tant a esploitié que li
Brittany all excommunicate and so-much has achieved that the
apostoles les a condempnez touz. Dont se je eusse contraint
pope them has condemned all Whence if I had constrained
le conte de Bretaingne, la premiere année, de li faire
the count of Brittany the first year of himself to-make
absoudre, je me fusse meffaiz envers Dieu et vers li.»
absolve I myself were misdone toward God and toward him
Et lors se soufrirent li prelat; ne onques puis nen
And then themselves forbore the prelates nor ever since not-thereof
oy parler que demande fust faite des choses desus dites.
I-heard speak that demand were made of-the things above said
La pais qu'il fist au roy d'Angleterre fist-il contre la 65
The peace that-he made with-the king of-England made-he against the
volontei de son consoil, liquex li disoit: Sire, il nous semble
will of his council which to-him said Lord it us seems
que vous perdés la terre que vous donnez au roy d'Angleterre,
that you lose the land that you give to-the king of-England
pour ce que il n'i a droit; car ses peres la perdi par
for this that he not-there has right for his father it lost by
jugement.» Et à ce respondi li roys que il savoit bien que
judgment And to this answered the king that he knew well that
li roys d'Angleterre n'i avoit droit; mais il y avoit raison
the king of-England not-there had right but it there had reason

par quoy il li devoit bien donner. «Car nous avons dous
by which he to-him ought well give For we have two
serours à femmes, et sont nostre enfant cousin germain; par
sisters to wives and are our children cousins german by
quoy il affiert bien que paiz y soit. Il m'est mout grans
which it befits well that peace there may-be It to-me-is very great
honnours en la paiz que je faiz au roy d'Angleterre, pour
honor in the peace that I make with-the king of-England for
ce que il est mes hom, ce que il n'estoit pas devant.»
this that he is my man this which he not-was at-all before

66 La léaultei dou roy peut l'on veoir ou fait de mon signour
The loyalty of-the king can one see in-the deed of my lord
Renaut de Trie, qui apporta au saint unes lettres, lesquiex
Reginald of Trie who brought to-the saint a letter which
disoient que li roys avoit donnei aus hoirs la contesce
said that the king had given to-the heirs (of-)the countess
de Bouloingne, qui morte estoit novellement, la contée de
of Boulogne who dead was newly the county of
Danmartin en Gouere. Li seaus de la lettre estoit brisiez,
Dammartin in Goële The seal of the letter was broken
si que il n'i avoit de remenant fors que la moitié des
so that it not-there had of remnant except that the half of-the
jambes de l'ymaige dou seel le roy, et l'eschamel sur quoy
legs of the-image of-the seal (of-)the king and the-footstool on which
li roys tenoit ses piez. Et il le nous moustra à tous qui
the king held his feet And he it us showed to all who
estiens de son consoil, et que nous li aidissiens à conseillier.
were of his council and that we him should-help to counsel

67 Nous deismes trestuit, sanz nul descort, que il n'estoit de riens
We said all without any discord that he not-was in anything
tenus à la lettre mettre à execution. Et lors il dist à Jehan
held to the letter to-put to execution And then he said to John

Sarrazin, son chamberlain, que il li baillast la lettre que il
Sarrazin his chamberlain that he to-him should-give the letter that he
li avoit commandée. Quant il tint la lettre, il nous dist:
to-him had entrusted When he held the letter he us said
«Signour, véez ci le seel de quoy je usoie avant que je alasse
Lords see here the seal of which I used before that I went
outre mer, et voit-on cler par ce seel que l'empreinte dou seel
over sea and sees-one clear by this seal that the-imprint of-the seal
brisié est semblable au seel entier; par quoy je n'oseroie en
broken is like to-the seal whole by which I not-would-dare in
bone conscience ladite contée retenir.» Et lors il appela mon
good conscience the-said county retain And then he called my
signour Renaut de Trie, et li dist: «Je vous rent la contée.»
lord Reginald of Trie and to-him said I to-you render the county

The Second Book: His Birth, and the Barons' League

VII

Louis is born on Saint Mark's day, and crowned on the first Sunday of Advent; his mother would rather he were dead than commit a mortal sin. The barons, scorning a child king and a foreign mother, make the count of Boulogne their chief and gather at Corbeil; the king and his mother dare not leave Montlhéry until the Parisians come for them in arms. Peter of Brittany rebels, and Thibaut of Champagne's three hundred knights bring him to the king's mercy.

En non de Dieu le tout-puissant, avons ci-ariere escriptes partie 68
In name of God the all-mighty we-have here-behind written part
de bones paroles et de bons enseignemens nostre saint roy
of good words and of good teachings (of-)our holy king
Looys, pour ce que cil qui les orront les truissent les unes
Louis for this that those who them will-hear them may-find the ones

après les autres, par quoi il en puissent miex faire lour profit
after the others by which they thereof may better make their profit
que ce que elles fussent escriptes entre ses faiz. Et ci après
than this that they were written between his deeds And here after
commencerons de ses faiz, en non de Dieu et en non de li.
we-will-begin of his deeds in name of God and in name of him
69 Aussi comme je li oy dire, il fu nez le jour saint Marc
Just as I him heard say he was born the day (of-)saint Mark
euvangeliste après Pasques. Celi jour porte l'on croix en
evangelist after Easter That day carries one crosses in
processions en mout de lieus, et en France les appelle l'on
processions in many of places and in France them calls one
les croiz noires: dont ce fu aussi comme une prophecie de la
the crosses black whereof this was just as a prophecy of the
grant foison de gens qui moururent en ces dous croisemens,
great plenty of people who died in these two crusades
c'est à savoir en celi de Egypte, et en l'autre là où il
this-is to know in that of Egypt and in the-other there where he
mourut en Carthage; que maint grant duel en furent en
died in Carthage for many great grief thereof were in
cest monde, et maintes grans joies en sont en paradis,
this world and many great joys thereof are in paradise
de ceus qui en ces dous pelerinaiges moururent vrai croisié.
of those who in these two pilgrimages died true crusaders
70 Il fu coronez le premier dymanche des Advens. Li
He was crowned the first Sunday of-the Advent The
commencemens de celi dymanche de la messe si est, Ad
beginning of that Sunday of the mass so is To
te levavi animam meam, et ce qui s'en suit après; et
thee I-lifted soul my and that which itself-thence follows after and
dit ainsi: «Biaus Sire Diex, je leveray m'amme à toy, je me
says thus Fair Lord God I will-lift my-soul to thee I myself

fi en toy.» En Dieu ot mout grant fiance dès s'enfance
trust in thee In God he-had very great trust from his-childhood
jusques à la mort; car là où il mouroit, en ses darrenieres
until to the death for there where he died in his last
paroles reclamoit-il Dieu et ses sains, et especialement mon
words called-upon-he God and his saints and especially my
signour saint Jaque et ma dame sainte Genevieve.
lord saint James and my lady saint Genevieve
Diex, en qui il mist sa fiance, le gardoit touz jours dès 71
God in whom he put his trust him kept all days from
s'enfance jusques à la fin; et especialment en s'enfance le
his-childhood until to the end and especially in his-childhood him
garda-il là où il li fu bien mestier, si comme vous
kept-he there where it to-him was well need so as you
orrez ci-après. Comme à l'ame de li, le garda Diex par les
will-hear here-after As to the-soul of him him kept God by the
bons enseignemens de sa mere, qui l'enseigna à Dieu croire
good teachings of his mother who him-taught to God to-believe
et à amer, et li atraist entour li toutes gens de religion.
and to love and to-him drew around him all people of religion
Et li faisoit, si enfes comme il estoit, toutes ses heures et
And him she-had so child as he was all his hours and
les sermons faire et oïr aus festes. Il recordoit que sa mere
the sermons do and hear at-the feasts He recalled that his mother
li avoit fait aucune foiz à entendre que elle ameroit miex
to-him had made some time to understand that she would-love better
que il fust mors, que ce que il feist un pechié mortel.
that he were dead than this that he should-do a sin mortal
Bien li fu mestier que il eust en sa joenesce l'aide de 72
Well to-him was need that he had in his youth the-help of
Dieu; car sa mere, qui estoit venue de Espaigne, n'avoit
God for his mother who was come from Spain not-had

ne parens ne amis en tout le royaume de France. Et pour
neither kin nor friends in all the realm of France And for
ce que li baron de France virent le roy enfant et la royne,
this that the barons of France saw the king child and the queen
sa mere, femme estrange, firent-il dou conte de Bouloingne,
his mother woman foreign made-they of-the count of Boulogne
qui estoit oncles le roy, lour chievetain, et le tenoient
who was uncle (of-)the king their chieftain and him held
aussi comme pour signour. Après ce que li roys fu coronez,
just as for lord After this that the king was crowned
il en y ot des barons qui requistrent à la royne granz
it thereof there had of-the barons who demanded to the queen great
terres que elle lour donnast; et pour ce que elle n'en
lands that she them should-give and for this that she not-thereof
vout riens faire, si s'assemblerent tuit li baron à Corbeil.
wished anything to-do so themselves-assembled all the barons at Corbeil
73 Et me conta li sainz roys que il ne sa mere, qui estoient à
And me told the holy king that he nor his mother who were at
Montleheri, ne oserent revenir à Paris jusques à tant que cil
Montlhéry not dared come-back to Paris until to so-much that those
de Paris les vindrent querre à armes. Et me conta que dès
of Paris them came to-seek in arms And me told that from
Monlehery, estoit li chemins pleins de gens à armes et sanz
Montlhéry was the road full of people in arms and without
armes jusques à Paris, et que tuit crioient à Nostre Signour que
arms until to Paris and that all cried to Our Lord that
il li donnast bone vie et longue, et le deffendist et gardast
he him should-give good life and long and him should-defend and keep
de ses ennemis. Et Diex si fist, si comme vous orrez ci-après.
from his enemies And God so did so as you will-hear here-after

A ce parlement que li baron firent à Corbeil, si comme l'en 74
At this parliament that the barons made at Corbeil so as one
dist, establirent li baron qui là furent que li bons chevaliers
says established the barons who there were that the good knight
li cuens Pierres de Bretaigne se reveleroit contre le roy;
the count Peter of Brittany himself would-rebel against the king
et acorderent encore que lour cors iroient au mandement
and they-agreed further that their bodies would-go to-the summons
que li roys feroit contre le conte, et chascuns n'averoit
that the king would-make against the count and each not-would-have
avec li que dous chevaliers. Et ce firent-il pour veoir se
with him but two knights And this did-they for to-see if
li cuens de Bretaigne pourroit fouler la royne, qui estrange
the count of Brittany could trample the queen who foreign
femme estoit, si comme vous avez oy; et moult de gens
woman was so as you have heard and many of people
dient que li cuens eust foulei la royne et le roy, se Diex
say that the count would-have trampled the queen and the king if God
n'eust aidié au roy à cel besoing, qui onques ne li failli.
not-had aided to-the king at that need who ever not him failed
L'aide que Diex li fist fu teix que li cuens Tybaus de 75
The-help that God him made was such that the count Thibaut of
Champaigne, qui puis fu roys de Navarre, vint servir le roy
Champagne who after was king of Navarre came to-serve the king
atout trois cens chevaliers; et par l'aide que li cuens fist
with three hundred knights and by the-help that the count made
au roy, couvint venir le conte de Bretaigne à la merci
to-the king it-behooved to-come the count of Brittany to the mercy
le roy: dont il lessa au roy, par pais faisant, la contée
(of-)the king whereof he left to-the king by peace making the county
de Ango, si comme l'en dist, et la contée dou Perche.
of Anjou so as one says and the county of-the Perche

The Queen of Cyprus and the Count of Champagne

VIII

Henry of Champagne goes to Acre, and when Philip goes home Richard gives Henry the queen of Jerusalem, whose daughter becomes queen of Cyprus. The barons, angry at Thibaut of Champagne, plan to bring in the queen of Cyprus to claim his county. Thibaut is to marry Peter of Brittany's daughter, but Geoffrey of the Chapelle forbids it. The barons send for the queen and invade Champagne, the king comes to fight them, and Thibaut burns his own towns before them.

76 Pour ce que il affiert à ramentevoir aucunes choses que vous
For this that it befits to recall some things that you
orrez ci-après, me couvient laissier un pou de ma matiere. Si
will-hear here-after me behooves to-leave a little of my matter So
dirons aussi que li bons cuens Henris li Larges ot de la
we-will-say also that the good count Henry the Liberal had of the
contesce Marie, qui fu suer au roy de France et suer au
countess Mary who was sister to-the king of France and sister to-the
roy Richart d'Angleterre, dous fiz, dont li ainsnez ot non
king Richard of-England two sons of-whom the eldest had name
Henri, et li autres Thybaut. Cis Henris, li ainsnez, en
Henry and the other Thibaut This Henry the eldest thence
ala croisiez en la sainte Terre en pelerinaige, quant li roys
went crossed into the holy Land in pilgrimage when the king
Phelippes et li roys Richars assegierent Acre et la pristrent.
Philip and the king Richard besieged Acre and it took
77 Si tost comme Acre fut prise, li roy Phélippes s'en revint
So soon as Acre was taken the king Philip himself-thence came-back
en France, dont il en fu mout blasmez; et li roys Richard
into France whereof he thereof was much blamed and the king Richard
demoura en la sainte Terre, et fist tant de grans faiz que li
remained in the holy Land and did so-many of great deeds that the

Sarrazin le doutoient trop, si comme il est escrit ou livre
Saracens him dreaded very-much so as it is written in-the book
de la Terre sainte, que quant li enfant aus Sarrazins braioient,
of the Land holy that when the children of-the Saracens cried
les femmes les escrioient et lour disoient: «Taisiez-vous, vez-ci
the women them scolded and to-them said Be-silent see-here
le roy Richart!» pour aus faire taire. Et quant li cheval aus
the king Richard for them to-make be-silent And when the horses of-the
Sarrazins et aus Beduins avoient poour d'un bysson, il disoient
Saracens and of-the Bedouins had fear of-a bush they said
à lour chevaus: «Cuides-tu que ce soit li roys Richars?»
to their horses Thinkest-thou that this may-be the king Richard
Cis roys Richars pourchassa tant que il donna au conte 78
This king Richard pursued so-much that he gave to-the count
Henri de Champaingne, qui estoit demourez avec li, la royne
Henry of Champagne who was remained with him the queen
de Jerusalem, qui estoit droite hoirs dou royaume. De la dite
of Jerusalem who was right heir of-the realm Of the said
royne ot li cuens Henris dous filles, dont la premiere fu
queen had the count Henry two daughters of-whom the first was
royne de Cypre, et l'autre ot messires Herars de Brienne, dont
queen of Cyprus and the-other had my-lord Erard of Brienne whence
grans lignaiges est issus, si comme il appert en France et en
great lineage is issued so as it appears in France and in
Champaingne. De la femme mon signour Erart de Brienne
Champagne Of the wife (of-)my lord Erard of Brienne
ne vous dirai-je ore riens; ainçois vous parlerai de la royne de
not to-you will-say-I now anything rather to-you will-speak of the queen of
Cypre, qui affiert maintenant à ma matiere; et dirons ainsi.
Cyprus who pertains now to my matter and we-will-say thus

79 Après ce que li roys ot foulei le conte Perron de
After this that the king had trampled the count Peter of
Bretaingne, tuit li baron de France furent si troublei envers
Brittany all the barons of France were so troubled toward
le conte Tybaut de Champaingne, que il orent consoil
the count Thibaut of Champagne that they had counsel
de envoier querre la royne de Cypre, qui estoit fille
of sending to-seek the queen of Cyprus who was daughter
de l'ainsnei fil de Champaingne, pour desheritier le conte
of the-eldest son of Champagne for to-disinherit the count
Tybaut, qui estoit fiz dou secont fil de Champaingne.
Thibaut who was son of-the second son of Champagne

80 Aucun d'aus s'entremistrent d'apaisier le conte Perron au dit
Some of-them undertook to-reconcile the count Peter to-the said
conte Tybaut, et fut la chose pourparlée en tel maniere que li
count Thibaut and was the thing negotiated in such manner that the
cuens Tybaus promist que il penroit à femme la fille le
count Thibaut promised that he would-take to wife the daughter (of-)the
conte Perron de Bretaingne. La journée fu prise que li cuens
count Peter of Brittany The day was taken that the count
de Champaingne dut la damoiselle espouser, et li dut-on
of Champagne ought the damsel marry and to-him ought-one
amener, pour espouser, à une abbaïe de Premoustrei, qui
bring for to-marry at an abbey of Prémontré which
est delez Chastel-Thierri, que on appelle Val-Secré, si comme
is beside Château-Thierry which one calls Val-Secret so as
j'entent. Li baron de France, qui estoient auques tuit parent
I-understand The barons of France who were nearly all kin
le conte Perron, se penerent de ce faire, et amenerent
(of-)the count Peter themselves took-pains of this to-do and brought

la damoiselle à Val-Secré pour espouser, et manderent le
the damsel to Val-Secret for to-marry and sent-word-to the
conte de Champaingne, qui estoit à Chastel-Thierri.
count of Champagne who was at Château-Thierry
Et endementieres que li cuens de Champaingne venoit pour 81
And meanwhile that the count of Champagne came for
espouser, mes sires Geffroys de la Chapelle vint à li de par
to-marry my lord Geoffrey of the Chapelle came to him on behalf-of
le roy, atout une lettre de créance, et dist ainsinc: «Sire cuens
the king with a letter of credence and said thus Lord count
de Champaingne, li roys a entendu que vous avez couvenances
of Champagne the king has understood that you have covenants
au conte Perron de Bretaingne que vous penrez sa fille par
with-the count Peter of Brittany that you will-take his daughter by
mariaige. Si vous mande li roys que se vous ne voulez perdre
marriage So you sends-word the king that if you not wish to-lose
quanque vous avez ou royaume de France, que vous ne le
whatever you have in-the realm of France that you not it
faites; car vous savez que li cuens de Bretaingne a pis fait au
do for you know that the count of Brittany has worse done to-the
roy que nus hom qui vive.» Li cuens de Champaingne, par le
king than any man who lives The count of Champagne by the
consoil que il avoit avec li, s'en retourna à Chastel-Thierry.
counsel that he had with him himself-thence returned to Château-Thierry
Quant li cuens Pierres et li baron de France oïrent ce, qui 82
When the count Peter and the barons of France heard this who
l'atendoient à Val-Secré, il furent tuit aussi comme desvei
him-awaited at Val-Secret they were all just as maddened
dou despit de ce que il lour avoir fait, et maintenant
from-the spite of this that he them had done and at-once
envoierent querre la royne de Cypre. Et si tost comme
sent to-seek the queen of Cyprus And so soon as

elle fu venue, il pristrent un commun acort qui fu teix,
she was come they took a common accord which was such
que il manderoient ce que il pourroient avoir de gent
that they would-summon that which they could have of people
à armes, et enterroient en Brie et en Champaingne par
in arms and would-enter into Brie and into Champagne by
devers France; et que li dus de Bourgoingne, qui avoit la
toward France and that the duke of Burgundy who had the
fille au conte Robert de Dreues, ranterroit en la contée
daughter of-the count Robert of Dreux would-re-enter into the county
de Champaingne par devers Bourgoingne. Et prindrent
of Champagne by toward Burgundy And they-took
journée qu'il se assembleroient par devant la citei de
day that-they themselves would-assemble by before the city of
Troyes, pour la citei de Troies penre se il pooient.
Troyes for the city of Troyes to-take if they could

83 Li dus manda quant que il pot avoir de gent; li baron
The duke summoned whatever that he could have of people the barons
manderent aussi ce que il en porent avoir. Li baron
summoned also that which they thereof could have The barons
vindrent ardant et destruiant tout d'une part, li dus de
came burning and destroying all from-one side the duke of
Bourgoigne d'autre; et li roys de France d'autre part, pour
Burgundy from-other and the king of France from-other side for
venir combattre à aus. Li desconfors fu teix au conte
to-come to-fight with them The discomfort was such to-the count
de Champaingne que il-mesmes ardoit ses villes devant la
of Champagne that he-himself burned his towns before the
venue des barons, pour ce que il ne les trouvassent
coming of-the barons for this that they not them should-find

garnies. Avec les autres villes que li cuens de Champaingne
provisioned With the other towns that the count of Champagne
ardoit, ardi-il Espargnay et Vertuz et Sezenne.
burned burned-he Épernay and Vertus and Sézanne

The Defense of Troyes

IX

The burghers of Troyes send for Simon of Joinville, John's father, who rides in by night. The king drives the barons from Isles and makes Thibaut's peace with the queen of Cyprus: about two thousand pounds a year in land and forty thousand pounds, which the king pays, taking four fiefs outright. Joinville tells how the fiefs came to Champagne, and how Henry the Liberal, told by Artaud that nothing was left to give, gave a poor knight Artaud.

Li bourgois de Troies, quant il virent que il avoient perdu 84
The burghers of Troyes when they saw that they had lost
le secours de lour signour, il manderent à Symon signour de
the help of their lord they sent-word to Simon lord of
Joingville, le pere au signour de Joinville qui ore est, qu'i
Joinville the father of-the lord of Joinville who now is that-he
les venist secourre. Et il, qui avait mandei toute sa gent
them should-come to-help And he who had summoned all his people
à armes, mut de Joingville à l'anuitier, si tost comme ces
in arms set-out from Joinville at the-nightfall so soon as these
nouvelles li vindrent, et vint à Troies ainçois que il fust
tidings to-him came and came to Troyes before that it were
jours. Et par ce faillirent li baron à lour esme que il avoient
day And by this failed the barons of their aim that they had
de penre la dite citei; et pour ce, li baron passerent par
of taking the said city and for this the barons passed by

devant Troies sans autre chose faire, et se alerent logier
before Troyes without other thing to-do and themselves went to-lodge
en la praerie d'Isles, là où li dus de Bourgoingne estoit.
in the meadow of-Isles there where the duke of Burgundy was
Li roys de France, qui sot que il estoient là, il s'adreça
The king of France who knew that they were there he himself-directed
tout droit là pour combattre à aus; et li baron li
all straight there for to-fight with them and the barons to-him
manderent et prierent que il ses cors se vousist traire
sent-word and prayed that he his body himself would-wish to-draw
arieres, et il se iroient combattre au conte de
back and they themselves would-go to-fight with-the count of
Champaingne et au duc de Lorreinne, et à tout le
Champagne and with-the duke of Lorraine and with all the
remenant de sa gent, à trois cens chevaliers moins que li
rest of his people with three hundred knights fewer than the
cuens n'averoit ne li dus. Et li roys lour manda que à sa
count not-would-have nor the duke And the king to-them sent-word that with his
gent ne se combateroient-il jà que ses cors ne fust avec.
people not themselves would-fight-they ever that his body not were with
Et il renvoyerent à li et li manderent que il feroient
And they sent-back to him and to-him sent-word that they would-make
volentiers entendre la royne de Cypre à paiz, se il li plaisoit.
willingly incline the queen of Cyprus to peace if it him pleased
Et li roys lour manda que à nulle paiz il n'entenderoit, ne
And the king to-them sent-word that to any peace he not-would-incline nor
ne soufferroit que li cuens de Champaingne y entendist,
not would-suffer that the count of Champagne there should-incline
tant que il eussent vuidie la contée de Champaigne.
until that they had emptied the county of Champagne

Et il la vuidierent en tel maniere que des Isles, là où 86
And they it emptied in such manner that from-the Isles there where
il estoient; il se alerent logier dessous Juylli; et li
they were they themselves went to-lodge below Jully and the
roys se loja à Isles, dont il les avoit chaciés. Et quant
king himself lodged at Isles whence he them had chased And when
il seurent que li roys fu alez là, il s'alerent logier à
they knew that the king was gone there they themselves-went to-lodge at
Chaorse; et n'oserent le roy atendre, et s'alerent logier à
Chaource and not-dared the king to-await and themselves-went to-lodge at
Laingnes, qui estoit au conte de Nevers, qui estoit de lour
Laignes which was to-the count of Nevers who was of their
partie. Et ainsi li roys accorda le conte de Champaingne
party And thus the king reconciled the count of Champagne
à la royne de Chypre, et fu la paiz faite en tel maniere
to the queen of Cyprus and was the peace made in such manner
que li diz cuens de Champaingne donna à la royne de
that the said count of Champagne gave to the queen of
Cypre entour dous mille livrées de terre, et quarante mille
Cyprus about two thousand librates of land and forty thousand
livres que li roys paia pour le conte de Champaigne.
pounds that the king paid for the count of Champagne
Et li cuens de Champaigne vendi au roi, parmi les 87
And the count of Champagne sold to-the king for the
quarante mille livres, les fiez ci-après nommés: c'est à savoir
forty thousand pounds the fiefs here-after named this-is to know
le fié de la contée de Bloiz, le fié de la contée de Chartres,
the fief of the county of Blois the fief of the county of Chartres
le fié de la contée de Sanserre, le fié de la vicontée de
the fief of the county of Sancerre the fief of the viscounty of
Chasteldun. Et aucunes gens si disoient que li roys ne
Châteaudun And some people so said that the king not

tenoit ces devant diz fiez que en gaige; mais ce n'est mie
held these before said fiefs but in pledge but this not-is at-all
voirs, car je le demandai nostre saint roy Looys outre mer.
true for I it asked (to-)our holy king Louis over sea
88 La terre que li cuens Tybaus donna à la royne de Cypre,
The land that the count Thibaut gave to the queen of Cyprus
tiennent li cuens de Brienne qui ore est, et li cuens de Joigny,
hold the count of Brienne who now is and the count of Joigny
pour ce que l'aïole le conte de Brienne fu fille à la
for this that the-grandmother (of-)the count of Brienne was daughter to the
royne de Cypre, et femme le grant conte Gautier de Brienne.
queen of Cyprus and wife (of-)the great count Walter of Brienne
89 Pour ce que vous sachiez dont cist fié que li sires de
For this that you may-know whence these fiefs that the lord of
Champaingne vendi au roy, vindrent, vous faiz-je à savoir
Champagne sold to-the king came to-you make-I to know
que li grans cuens Tybaus, qui gist à Laingny, ot trois fiz: li
that the great count Thibaut who lies at Lagny had three sons the
premiers ot non Henri, li secons ot non Tybaut, li tiers ot
first had name Henry the second had name Thibaut the third had
non Estienne. Cis Henris desus diz fu cuens de Champaingne
name Stephen This Henry above said was count of Champagne
et de Brie, et fu appelez li cuens Henris li Larges; et dut
and of Brie and was called the count Henry the Liberal and ought
bien ainsi estre appelez, car il fu larges à Dieu et au siecle:
well thus to-be called for he was liberal to God and to-the world
larges à Dieu, si comme il appiert à l'esglise Saint-Estienne
liberal to God so as it appears at the-church Saint-Stephen
de Troies et aus autres belles eglises que il fonda en
of Troyes and at-the other fair churches that he founded in
Champaingne; larges au siecle, si comme il apparut ou fait
Champagne liberal to-the world so as it appeared in-the deed

de Ertaut de Nongent, et en mout d'autres lieus que je vous
of Artaud of Nogent and in many of-other places that I to-you
conteroie bien, se je ne doutoie à enpeeschier ma matiere.
would-tell well if I not feared to hinder my matter
Ertaus de Nogent fu li bourgois dou monde que li cuens 90
Artaud of Nogent was the burgher of-the world whom the count
créoit plus; et fu si riches que il fist le chastel de
believed most and was so rich that he made the castle of
Nogent-l'Ertaut de ses deniers. Or avint chose que li
Nogent-l'Artaud with his pence Now happened thing that the
cuens Henris descendi de ses sales de Troies pour aler
count Henry came-down from his halls of Troyes for to-go
oïr messe à Saint-Estienne, le jour d'une Penthecouste.
to-hear mass at Saint-Stephen the day of-a Pentecost
Aus piez des degrez vint au devant de li uns povres
At-the feet of-the steps came to-the front of him a poor
chevaliers, qui s'agenoilla devant li, et li dist ainsi: «Sire,
knight who himself-knelt before him and to-him said thus Lord
je vous pri pour Dieu que vous me donnés dou vostre, par
I you pray for God that you me give of-the yours by
quoy je puisse marier mes dous filles, que vous véez ci.»
which I may marry my two daughters whom you see here
Ertaus, qui aloit dariere li, dist au povre chevalier: «Sire 91
Artaud who went behind him said to-the poor knight Lord
chevaliers, vous ne faites pas que courtois de demander à
knight you not do at-all like courteous-man of asking to
mon signour; car il a tant donnei que il n'a mais que
my lord for he has so-much given that he not-has more what
donner.» Li larges cuens se tourna devers Ertaut, et li
to-give The liberal count himself turned toward Artaud and to-him
dist: «Sire vilains, vous ne dites mie voir, de ce que vous
said Lord churl you not say at-all true of this that you

dites que je n'ai mais que donner; si, ai vous-meismes. —
say that I not-have more what to-give yes I-have you-yourself
Et tenez, sire chevaliers, car je le vous doing, et si le vous
And take lord knight for I him to-you give and so him to-you
garantirai.» Li chevaliers ne fu pas esbahiz, ainçois le prist
will-warrant The knight not was at-all dismayed rather him took
par la chape, et li dist que il ne le lairoit jusques
by the cape and to-him said that he not him would-leave until
à tant que il averoit finei à li. Et avant que il li
to so-much that he would-have made-terms with him And before that he him
eschapast, ot Ertaus finei à li de cinq cens livres.
escaped had Artaud made-terms with him for five hundred pounds
92 Li secons freres le conte Henri ot non Thibaut, et fu
The second brother (of-)the count Henry had name Thibaut and was
cuens de Blois; li tiers freres ot non Estienne, et fu cuens
count of Blois the third brother had name Stephen and was count
de Sancerre. Et cist dui frere tindrent dou conte Henri touz
of Sancerre And these two brothers held from-the count Henry all
lour heritaiges et lour dous contées et lour apartenances;
their heritages and their two counties and their appurtenances
et les tindrent après des hoirs le conte Henri qui
and them held after from-the heirs (of-)the count Henry who
tindrent Champaingne, jusques alors que li roys Tybaus les
held Champagne until then that the king Thibaut them
vendi au roy de France, aussi comme il est devant dit.
sold to-the king of France just as it is before said

The Court at Saumur and the English War

X

The king holds court at Saumur; Joinville names who sat and who served, among them a German youth said to be Saint Elizabeth's son. At Poitiers the count of the March gathers armed men, and the king waits until they are reconciled. The king of England comes to make war; at Taillebourg the French cross under great hardship and the English flee to Saintes. The count yields, Geoffrey of Rancon has his hair cut, and the king asks no aid for the war.

Or revenons à nostre matiere, et disons ainsi que après ces 93
Now let-us-return to our matter and let-us-say thus that after these
choses tint li roys une grant court à Saumur en Anjo; et là
things held the king a great court at Saumur in Anjou and there
fu-je, et vous tesmoing que ce fu la miex arée que je veisse
was-I and to-you I-witness that this was the best arrayed that I saw
onques. Car à la table le roy manjoit, emprès li, li cuens de
ever For at the table (of-)the king ate beside him the count of
Poitiers, que il avoit fait chevalier nouvel à une saint-Jehan; et
Poitiers whom he had made knight new at a Saint-John and
après le conte de Poitiers, mangoit li cuens Jehans de Dreues,
after the count of Poitiers ate the count John of Dreux
que il avoit fait chevalier nouvel aussi; après le conte de Dreues,
whom he had made knight new also after the count of Dreux
mangoit li cuens de la Marche; après le conte de la Marche,
ate the count of the March after the count of the March
li bons cuens Pierres de Bretaigne. Et devant la table le
the good count Peter of Brittany And before the table (of-)the
roy, endroit le conte de Dreues, mangoit mes sires li roys de
king opposite the count of Dreux ate my lord the king of

Navarre, en cote et en mantel de samit, bien parez de courroie,
Navarre in tunic and in mantle of samite well adorned with belt
de fermail et de chapel d'or; et je tranchoie devant li.
with clasp and with circlet of-gold and I carved before him
94 Devant le roy, servoit dou mangier li cuens d'Artoiz ses freres;
Before the king served of-the food the count of-Artois his brother
devant le roy, tranchoit dou coutel li bons cuens Jehans de
before the king carved with-the knife the good count John of
Soissons. Pour la table dou roi garder, estoit mes sires Ymbers
Soissons For the table of-the king to-guard was my lord Imbert
de Biaugeu, qui puis fu connestables de France, et mes sires
of Beaujeu who after was constable of France and my lord
Engerrans de Coucy et mes sires Herchanbaus de Bourbon.
Enguerrand of Coucy and my lord Archambaud of Bourbon
Dariere ces trois barons, avoit bien trente de lour chevaliers,
Behind these three barons there-had fully thirty of their knights
en cottes de drap de soie, pour aus garder; et darieres ces
in tunics of cloth of silk for them to-guard and behind these
chevaliers, avoit grant plentei de sergans, vestus des armes
knights there-had great plenty of sergeants clothed in-the arms
au conte de Poitiers, batues sur cendal. Li roys avoit vestu
of-the count of Poitiers beaten on sendal The king had donned
une cotte de samit ynde, et seurcot et mantel de samit
a tunic of samite blue and surcoat and mantle of samite
vermeil fourrei d'hermines, et un chapel de coton en sa teste,
red furred with-ermines and a hat of cotton on his head
qui moult mal li séoit pour ce que il estoit lors joennes hom.
which very ill him became for this that he was then young man
95 Li roys tint cele feste es hales de Saumur; et disoit l'on que
The king held that feast in-the halls of Saumur and said one that
li grans roys Henris d'Angleterre les avoit faites pour ses grans
the great king Henry of-England them had made for his great

festes tenir. Et les hales sont faites à la guise des cloistres de
feasts to-hold And the halls are made in the fashion of-the cloisters of
ces moinnes blans; mais je croi que de trop loing il n'en
these monks white but I believe that by very-much far it not-thereof
soit nuls si grans. Et vous dirai pourquoy il le me semble;
may-be any so great And to-you I-will-say why it it to-me seems
car à la paroy dou cloistre où li roys mangoit, qui estoit
for at the wall of-the cloister where the king ate which was
environnez de chevaliers et de serjans qui tenoient grant
surrounded with knights and with sergeants who held great
espace, mangoient encore à une table vingt que evesque que
space ate further at a table twenty both bishops and
archevesque; et encore après les evesques et les arcevesques,
archbishops and further after the bishops and the archbishops
mangoit encoste cele table la royne Blanche, sa mere, ou chief
ate beside that table the queen Blanche his mother in-the head
dou cloistre, de celle part là où li roys ne mangoit pas.
of-the cloister of that side there where the king not ate at-all
Et si servoit à la royne li cuens de Bouloingne, qui puis fu 96
And so served to the queen the count of Boulogne who after was
roys de Portingal, et li bons cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, et uns
king of Portugal and the good count Hugh of Saint-Pol and a
Alemans de l'aage de dix-huit ans, que on disoit que il avoit
German of the-age of eighteen years whom one said that he had
estei fiz sainte Helisabeth de Thuringe; dont l'on disoit que
been son (of-)saint Elizabeth of Thuringia whereof one said that
la royne Blanche le besoit ou front par devocion, pour ce
the queen Blanche him kissed on-the forehead by devotion for this
que elle entendoit que sa mere l'i avoit maintes foiz besié.
that she understood that his mother him-there had many times kissed

97 Ou chief dou cloistre, d'autre part, estoient les cuisines,
In-the head of-the cloister on-other side were the kitchens
les bouteilleries, les paneteries et les despenses; de celi
the butteries the pantries and the larders from that
chief servoit l'on devant le roy et devant la royne de char,
head served one before the king and before the queen of meat
de vin et de pain. Et en toutes les autres éles et eu
of wine and of bread And in all the other aisles and in-the
prael d'en milieu, mangoient de chevaliers si grans foisons
meadow of-in middle ate of knights so great plenty
que je ne soy les nombrer. Et distrent mout de gens
that I not knew them number And said many of people
que il n'avoient onques veu autant de seurcoz ne d'autres
that they not-had ever seen as-many of surcoats nor of-other
garnemens de drap d'or et de soie à une feste, comme il
garments of cloth of-gold and of silk at a feast as it
ot là; et dist on que il y ot bien trois mille chevaliers.
had there and said one that it there had fully three thousand knights
98 Après celle feste, mena li roys le conte de Poytiers à Poitiers
After that feast led the king the count of Poitiers to Poitiers
pour repenre ses fiez. Et quant li roys vint à Poytiers, il
for to-take-up his fiefs And when the king came to Poitiers he
vousist bien estre arieres à Paris; car il trouva que li
would-have-wished well to-be back at Paris for he found that the
cuens de la Marche, qui ot mangié à sa table le jour de la
count of the March who had eaten at his table the day of the
saint-Jehan, ot assemblei tant de gent à armes à Lusignan
Saint-John had assembled as-many of people in arms at Lusignan
delez Poitiers comme il pot avoir. A Poitiers fu li roys près
beside Poitiers as he could have At Poitiers was the king near

de quinzeinne, que onques ne s'osa partir tant que il
of a-fortnight for ever not himself-dared depart until that he
fu acordez au conte de la Marche, ne je ne sai comment.
was reconciled to-the count of the March nor I not know how
Plusours foiz, vi venir le conte de la Marche parler au roy à 99
Several times I-saw come the count of the March to-speak to-the king at
Poitiers de Lusignan; et touz jours amenoit avec li la royne
Poitiers from Lusignan and all days he-brought with him the queen
d'Angleterre sa femme, qui estoit mere au roy d'Angleterre.
of-England his wife who was mother to-the king of-England
Et disoient mout de gens que li roys et li cuens de
And said many of people that the king and the count of
Poitiers avoient fait mauvaise paiz au conte de la Marche.
Poitiers had made bad peace with-the count of the March
Après ce que li roys fu revenus de Poitiers, ne tarja pas 100
After this that the king was come-back from Poitiers not delayed at-all
grantment après ce que li roys d'Angleterre vint en Gascoingne
greatly after this that the king of-England came into Gascony
pour guerroier le roy de France. Nostre sainz roys, à
for to-make-war-on the king of France Our holy king with
quanque il pot avoir de gent, chevaucha pour combattre à
whatever he could have of people rode for to-fight with
li. Là vint li roys d'Angleterre et li cuens de la Marche,
him There came the king of-England and the count of the March
pour combatre devant un chastel que on appelle Taillebourc,
for to-fight before a castle which one calls Taillebourg
qui siet sus une male riviere que l'on appelle Carente, là
which sits upon an evil river which one calls Charente there
où on ne puet passer que à un pont de pierre mout estroit.
where one not can pass but at a bridge of stone very narrow

101 Si tost comme li roys vint à Taillebourc, et li host virent li
So soon as the king came to Taillebourg and the hosts saw the
uns l'autre, nostre gent, qui avoient le chastel devers aus, se
one the-other our people who had the castle toward them themselves
esforcierent à grant meschief et passerent perillousement par
strove with great hardship and passed perilously by
neis et par pons, et coururent sur les Anglois; et conmença
ships and by bridges and ran upon the English and began
li poingnayz forz et grans. Quand li roys vit ce, il se
the skirmish strong and great When the king saw this he himself
mist ou peril avec les autres; car pour un home que li roys
put into-the peril with the others for for one man that the king
avoit quant il fu passez devers les Anglois, li Anglois en
had when he was passed toward the English the English thereof
avoient bien vingt. Toutevoiz avint-il, si comme Diex vout, que
had fully twenty All-the-same happened-it so as God willed that
quant li Anglois virent le roy passer, il se desconfirent
when the English saw the king pass they themselves discomfited
et mistrent dedens la citei de Saintes; et plusour de nos
and put inside the city of Saintes and several of our
gens entrerent en la citei mellei avec aus, et furent pris.
people entered into the city mingled with them and were taken
102 Cil de nostre gent qui furent pris à Saintes recorderent que
Those of our people who were taken at Saintes recounted that
il oïrent un grant descort naistre entre le roy d'Angleterre
they heard a great discord arise between the king of-England
et le conte de la Marche; et disoit li roys que li cuens
and the count of the March and said the king that the count
de la Marche l'avoit envoié querre, car il disoit que il
of the March him-had sent to-seek for he said that he

trouveroit grant aide en France. Celi soir meismes, li roys
would-find great help in France That evening same the king
d'Angleterre mut de Saintes et s'en ala en Gascoingne.
of-England set-out from Saintes and himself-thence went into Gascony
Li cuens de la Marche, comme cil qui ne le pot amender, 103
The count of the March as he who not it could amend
s'en vint en la prison le roy, et li amena en sa
himself-thence came into the prison (of-)the king and to-him brought into his
prison sa femme et ses enfans: dont li roys ot, par la paiz
prison his wife and his children whereof the king had by the peace
fesant, grant coup de la terre le conte; mais je ne sai pas
making great deal of the land (of-)the count but I not know at-all
combien, car je ne fu pas à celi fait, car je n'avoie onques lors
how-much for I not was at-all at that deed for I not-had ever then
hauberc vestu. Mais j'oy dire que, avec la terre que li roys
hauberk donned But I-heard say that with the land that the king
emporta, li quita li cuens de la Marche dix mille livres
carried-off to-him remitted the count of the March ten thousand pounds
de parisis que il avoit en ses cofres, et chascun an autant.
of Paris that he had in his coffers and each year as-much
Quant nous fumes à Poitiers, je vi un chevalier qui avoit non 104
When we were at Poitiers I saw a knight who had name
mon signour Gieffroy de Rancon, qui pour un grant outraige
my lord Geoffrey of Rancon who for a great outrage
que li cuens de la Marche li avoit fait, si comme l'on
that the count of the March to-him had done so as one
disoit, avoit jurei sur sains que il ne seroit jamais roingniez
said had sworn on relics that he not would-be ever shorn
en guise de chevalier, mais porteroit greve, aussi comme les
in guise of knight but would-wear parting just as the
femmes fesoient, jusques à tant que il se verroit vengiez
women did until to so-much that he himself would-see avenged

dou conte de la Marche, ou par lui ou par autrui. Et
of-the count of the March either by himself or by others And
quant mes sires Geffroys vit le conte de la Marche, sa
when my lord Geoffrey saw the count of the March his
femme et ses enfants, agenoilliez devant le roy, qui li
wife and his children kneeling before the king who to-him
crioient merci, il fist aporter un tretel, et fist oster sa
cried mercy he had brought a trestle and had removed his
greve, et se fist roingnier tout à coup en la presence dou
parting and himself had shorn all at stroke in the presence of-the
roy, dou conte de la Marche et de ceus qui là estoient.
king of-the count of the March and of those who there were
105 Et en cel ost contre le roy d'Angleterre et contre les barons,
And in that host against the king of-England and against the barons
li roys donna de grans dons, si comme je l'oy dire à ceus
the king gave of great gifts so as I it-heard say to those
qui en vindrent. Ne pour dons, ne pour despens que l'on
who thence came Nor for gifts nor for expenses that one
feist en cel host, ne autres de çà mer ne de là, li roys
made in that host nor others of here sea nor of there the king
ne requist ne ne prist onques aide des siens barons, n'à
not asked nor not took ever aid of-the his barons nor-of
ses chevaliers, n'à ses homes, ne à ses bones villes, dont
his knights nor-of his men nor of his good towns whereof
on se plainsist. Et ce n'estoit pas de merveille; car ce
one himself might-complain And this not-was at-all of marvel for this
fesoit-il par le consoil de la bone mere qui estoit avec li, de
did-he by the counsel of the good mother who was with him by
cui consoil il ouvroit, et des preudhomes qui li estoient
whose counsel he worked and of-the worthy-men who to-him were
demourei dou tens son pere et dou temps son ayoul.
remained from-the time (of-)his father and from-the time (of-)his grandfather

The King Takes the Cross

XI

Sick at Paris, the king is thought dead by one of his ladies; he recovers and takes the cross at once, to his mother's grief, and his brothers and many barons follow. At Easter 1248 Joinville summons his men, and his son John is born. On the Friday he offers to right any wrong he has done them, pledges much of his land at Metz, holding land worth less than a thousand pounds a year, and hires a ship with the count of Saarbrücken.

Après ces choses desus dites avint, ainsi comme Diex 106
After these things above said happened so as God
vout, que une grans maladie prist le roy à Paris, dont
willed that a great sickness took the king at Paris whereof
il fu à tel meschief, si comme on le disoit, que l'une
he was in such hardship so as one it said that the-one
des dames qui le gardoit li vouloit traire le drap sur
of-the ladies who him kept to-him wished to-draw the sheet over
le visaige, et disoit que il estoit mors. Et une autre
the face and said that he was dead And an other
dame, qui estoit à l'autre part dou lit, ne li souffri
lady who was on the-other side of-the bed not to-him suffered
mie; ainçois disoit que il avoit encore l'ame ou cors.
at-all rather said that he had still the-soul in-the body
Et comme il oyt le descort de ces dous dames, Nostre Sires 107
And as he heard the discord of these two ladies Our Lord
ouvra en li et li envoia santei tantost; car il estoit esmuyz
worked in him and to-him sent health at-once for he was mute
et ne pouoit parler. Et si tost qu'il fu en estat pour parler,
and not could speak And so soon as-he was in state for to-speak
il requist que on li donnast la croiz, et si fist-on. Lors
he asked that one to-him should-give the cross and so did-one Then

la royne sa mere oy dire que la parole li estoit revenue,
the queen his mother heard say that the speech to-him was come-back
et elle en fist si grant joie comme elle pot plus. Et quant
and she thereof made as great joy as she could most And when
elle sot que il fu croisiez, ainsi comme il meismes le contoit,
she knew that he was crossed just as he himself it told
elle mena aussi grant duel comme se elle le veist mort.
she made as great grief as if she him had-seen dead
108 Après ce que il fu croisiez, se croisierent Robers li
After this that he was crossed themselves crossed Robert the
cuens d'Artois, Auphons cuens de Poitiers, Charles cuens
count of-Artois Alphonse count of Poitiers Charles count
d'Anjou, qui puis fu roys de Cezile, tuit troi freres le
of-Anjou who after was king of Sicily all three brothers (of-)the
roy; et se croisa Hugues dus de Bourgoingne, Guillaumes
king and himself crossed Hugh duke of Burgundy William
cuens de Flandres, freres le comte Guion de Flandres,
count of Flanders brother (of-)the count Guy of Flanders
nouvellement mort, li bons Hues cuens de Saint-Pol, mes
newly dead the good Hugh count of Saint-Pol my
sires Gauchiers ses niez, qui mout bien se maintint outre
lord Walter his nephew who very well himself maintained over
mer, et mout eust valu se il eust vescu.
sea and much would-have availed if he had lived
109 Si i furent li cuens de la Marche et mes sires Hugues
So there were the count of the March and my lord Hugh
li Bruns ses fiz, li cuens de Salebruche, mes sires Gobers
the Brown his son the count of Saarbrücken my lord Gobert
d'Apremont ses freres, en cui compaingnie, je Jehans, sires de
of-Apremont his brother in whose company I John lord of
Joinville, passames la mer en une nef que nous louames, pour
Joinville crossed the sea in a ship that we hired for

ce que nous estiens cousin; et passames de là atout vint
this that we were cousins and crossed from there with twenty
chevaliers, dont il estoit li disiesme et je moy disiesme.
knights of-whom he was the tenth and I myself tenth
A Pasques, en l'an de grace que li miliaires couroit par 110
At Easter in the-year of grace that the thousand-count ran by
mil dous cenz quarante et huit, mandai-je mes homes et
thousand two hundred forty and eight summoned-I my men and
mes fievez à Joinville; et la vegile de ladite Pasque, que toute
my fief-holders to Joinville and the vigil of the-said Easter when all
cele gent que je avoie mandei estoient venu, fu nez Jehans mes
that people that I had summoned were come was born John my
fiz sires de Ancerville, de ma premiere femme, qui fu suer le
son lord of Ancerville of my first wife who was sister (of-)the
conte de Grantprei. Toute celle semainne fumes en festes et
count of Grandpré All that week we-were in feasts and
en quarolles, que mes freres li sires de Vauquelour, et li autre
in carols for my brother the lord of Vaucouleurs and the other
riche home qui là estoient, donnerent à mangier chascuns li
rich men who there were gave to eat each the
uns après l'autre, le lundi, le mardi, le mercredi et le jeudi.
one after the-other the Monday the Tuesday the Wednesday and the Thursday
Je lour diz le vendredi: «Signour, je m'en voi outre mer, 111
I to-them said the Friday Lords I myself-thence go over sea
et je ne sai se je revenrai. Or venez avant; se je vous
and I not know if I will-come-back Now come forward if I you
ai de riens mesfait, je le vous desferai, l'un par l'autre,
have in anything wronged I it to-you will-undo the-one by the-other
si comme je ai acoustumei, à touz ceus qui vourront
so as I have been-accustomed to all those who will-wish
riens demander ne à moy ne à ma gent.» Je lour desfiz
anything to-ask either of me or of my people I to-them undid

par l'esgart de tout le commun de ma terre; et pour
by the-judgment of all the commons of my land and for
ce que je n'eusse point d'emport, je me levai dou
this that I not-should-have at-all of-influence I myself rose from-the
consoil, et en ting quanque il raporterent, sanz debat.
council and thereof held whatever they reported without debate
112 Pour ce que je n'en vouloie porter nulz deniers à tort,
For this that I not-thereof wished to-carry any pence at wrong
je alai lessier à Metz en Lorreinne grant foison de ma
I went to-leave at Metz in Lorraine great plenty of my
terre en gaige. Et sachiez que, au jour que je parti de
land in pledge And know that at-the day that I departed from
nostre païz pour aler en la Terre sainte, je ne tenoie
our country for to-go into the Land holy I not held
pas mil livrées de terre; car ma dame ma mere vivoit
at-all thousand librates of land for my lady my mother lived
encore: et si y alai, moy disiesme de chevaliers et moy
still and so there I-went myself tenth of knights and myself
tiers de banieres. Et ces choses vous ramantoif-je, pour
third of banners And these things to-you recall-I for
ce que se Diex ne m'eust aidié, qui onques ne me failli,
this that if God not me-had aided who ever not me failed
je l'eusse souffert à peinne par si lonc temps comme
I it-would-have suffered with pain for so long time as
par l'espace de six ans que je demourai en la Terre sainte.
for the-space of six years that I remained in the Land holy
113 En ce point que je appareilloie pour mouvoir, Jehans sires
At this point that I made-ready for to-set-out John lord
d'Apremont et cuens de Salebruche de par sa femme, envoia
of-Apremont and count of Saarbrücken by right-of his wife sent
à moy et me manda que il avoit sa besoigne arée pour aler
to me and me sent-word that he had his business arranged for to-go

outre mer, li disiesme de chevaliers; et me manda que se
over sea himself tenth of knights and me sent-word that if
je vousisse, que nous loïssiens une nef entre li et moy; et je
I wished that we should-hire a ship between him and me and I
li otroiai: sa gent et la moie louerent une nef à Marseille.
to-him granted his people and the mine hired a ship at Marseille

Joinville Leaves His Castle

XII

Joinville will not swear faith to the king's children; he is not the king's man. The provost tells the king how a clerk, robbed by three sergeants of the Châtelet, killed them; the king rules he has lost the priesthood by his prowess and hires him. The abbot of Cheminon gives Joinville scrip and staff, and he leaves barefoot, never looking back at the castle and his children. He goes down the Saône past the Roche of Glun, razed because its lord was said to rob pilgrims.

Li roys manda tous ses barons à Paris, et lour fist faire 114
The king summoned all his barons to Paris and them had make
sairement que foy et loiautei porteroient à ses enfants, se
oath that faith and loyalty they-would-bear to his children if
aucune chose avenoit de li en la voie. Il le me demanda; maiz
any thing happened of him on the way He it me asked but
je ne voz faire point de sairement, car je n'estoie pas ses hom.
I not would make at-all of oath for I not-was at-all his man
Endementres que je venoie, je trouvai trois homes mors sur 115
While that I came I found three men dead on
une charrette, que uns clers avoit tuez; et me dist-on que
a cart whom a clerk had killed and me said-one that
on les menoit au roy. Quant je oy ce, je envoiai un
one them led to-the king When I heard this I sent a

mien escuier après, pour savoir comment ce avoit estei. Et
my squire after for to-know how this had been And
conta mes escuiers, que je y envoiai, que li roys, quant il
told my squire whom I there sent that the king when he
issi de sa chapelle, ala au perron pour veoir les mors,
came-out of his chapel went to-the steps for to-see the dead
et demanda au prevot de Paris comment ce avoit estei.
and asked of-the provost of Paris how this had been
116 Et li prevoz li conta que li mort estoient troi de ses
And the provost to-him told that the dead were three of his
serjans dou Chastelet, et li conta que il aloient par
sergeants of-the Châtelet and to-him told that they went through
les rues forainnes pour desrober la gent. Et dist au roy
the streets outlying for to-rob the people And said to-the king
que «il trouverent ce clerc que vous véez ci, et lui tollirent
that they found this clerk whom you see here and him took-away
toute sa robe. Li clers s'en ala en pure sa chemise
all his robe The clerk himself-thence went in mere his shirt
en son hostel, et prist s'arbalestre, et fist aporter à un
to his lodging and took his-crossbow and had brought by a
enfant son fauchon. Quant il les vit, il les escria et
child his falchion When he them saw he them shouted-at and
lour dist que il y mourroient. Li clers tendi s'arbaleste
to-them said that they there would-die The clerk bent his-crossbow
et trait, et en feri l'un parmi le cuer; et li dui
and shot and thereof struck the-one through the heart and the two
touchierent à fuie; et li clers prist le fauchon que li enfes
took to flight and the clerk took the falchion that the child
tenoit, et les ensui à la lune, qui estoit belle et clere.
held and them pursued by the moon which was fair and clear

«Li uns en cuida passer parmi une soif en un courtil, et li 117
The one thereof thought to-pass through a hedge into a garden and the
clers fiert dou fauchon, fist li prevoz, et li trancha toute la
clerk strikes with-the falchion said the provost and him cut all the
jambe, en tel maniere que elle ne tient que à l'estival, si comme
leg in such manner that it not holds but by the-boot so as
vous véez. Li clers rensui l'autre, liquex cuida descendre en
you see The clerk pursued the-other who thought to-go-down into
une estrange maison, là où la gent veilloient encore; et li
a strange house there where the people watched still and the
clers le feri dou fauchon parmi la teste, si que il le fendi
clerk him struck with-the falchion through the head so that he him split
jusques es dens, si comme vous poez veoir, fist li prevoz au
until to-the teeth so as you can see said the provost to-the
roy. Sire, fist-il, li clers moustra son fait aus voisins de la rue,
king Lord said-he the clerk showed his deed to-the neighbors of the street
et puis si s'en vint mettre en vostre prison; sire, et je
and then so himself-thence came to-put in your prison lord and I
le vous amein, si en ferez vostre volentei; et véez-le ci.»
him to-you bring so thereof you-will-do your will and see-him here
— «Sire clers, fist li roys, vous avez perdu à estre prestre par 118
Lord clerk said the king you have lost to be priest by
vostre proesce; et pour vostre proesce je vous retieing à mes
your prowess and for your prowess I you retain at my
gaiges, et en venrez avec moy outre mer. Et ceste chose vous
wages and thence will-come with me over sea And this thing to-you
faiz-je encore à savoir, pour ce que je vueil bien que ma gent
make-I still to know for this that I wish well that my people
voient que je ne les soustenrai en nulles de lour mauvestiés.»
may-see that I not them will-uphold in any of their wickednesses
Quant li peuples qui là estoit assemblez oy ce, il se
When the people who there was assembled heard this they themselves

escrierent à Nostre Signour, et li prierent que Diex li donnast
cried to Our Lord and him prayed that God him should-give
bone vie et longue, et le ramenast à joie et à santei.
good life and long and him should-bring-back in joy and in health
119 Après ces choses, je reving en nostre païs, et atirames, li
After these things I came-back into our country and arranged the
cuens de Salebruche et je, que nous envoieriens nostre harnois
count of Saarbrücken and I that we would-send our harness
à charettes à Ausonne, pour mettre ilec en la riviere de Saonne,
on carts to Auxonne for to-put there into the river of Saône
pour aler jusques à Alle depuys la Sone jusques au Rone.
for to-go until to Arles from the Saône until to-the Rhône
120 Le jour que je me parti de Joinville, j'envoiai querre
The day that I myself departed from Joinville I-sent to-seek
l'abbei de Cheminon, que on tesmoingnoit au plus
the-abbot of Cheminon whom one attested as-the most
preudome de l'ordre blanche. Un tesmoingnaige li oy
worthy-man of the-order white A witness of-him I-heard
porter à Clerevaus, le jour d'une feste Nostre-Dame, que li
bear at Clairvaux the day of-a feast (of-)Our-Lady when the
sainz roys i estoit, à un moinne qui le moustra, et me
holy king there was by a monk who him pointed-out and me
demanda se je le cognoissoie. Et je li diz pourquoy il
asked if I him knew And I to-him said why he
le me demandoit. Et il me respondi: «Car je entent que
it me asked And he me answered For I understand that
c'est li plus preudom qui soit en toute l'ordre blanche.»
this-is the most worthy-man who may-be in all the-order white
121 «Encore sachiez, fist-il, que j'ai oy conter à un preudome
Further know said-he that I-have heard tell by a worthy-man
qui gisoit ou dortour là où li abbes de Cheminon
who lay in-the dormitory there where the abbot of Cheminon

dormoit: et avoit li abbes descouvert sa poitrine pour la
slept and had the abbot uncovered his breast for the
grant chalour que il avoit; et vit cis preudom, qui gisoit
great heat that he had and saw this worthy-man who lay
ou dortour où li abbes de Cheminon dormoit, la Mere
in-the dormitory where the abbot of Cheminon slept the Mother
Dieu qui ala au lit l'abbei, et li retira sa robe
(of-)God who went to-the bed (of-)the-abbot and to-him drew-back his robe
sur son piz pour ce que li vens ne li feist mal.»
over his breast for this that the wind not him might-do harm
Cis abbes de Cheminon si me donna m'escharpe et mon 122
This abbot of Cheminon so me gave my-scrip and my
bourdon: et lors je me parti de Joinville, sanz rentrer
staff and then I myself departed from Joinville without re-entering
ou chastel jusques à ma revenue, à pié, deschaus et en
into-the castle until to my return on foot unshod and in
langes; et ainsi alai à Blehecourt et à Saint-Urbain, et autres
woolens and thus went to Blécourt and to Saint-Urbain and other
cors sains qui là sont. Et endementieres que je aloie à
bodies holy which there are And while that I went to
Blehecourt et à Saint-Urbain, je ne voz onques retourner mes
Blécourt and to Saint-Urbain I not would ever turn my
yex vers Joinville, pour ce que li cuers ne me attendrisist
eyes toward Joinville for this that the heart not me should-soften
dou biau chastel que je lessoie et de mes dous enfans.
from-the fair castle that I left and from my two children
Je et mi compaingnon mangames à la Fonteinne l'Arcevesque 123
I and my companions ate at the Fountain (of-)the-Archbishop
devant Dongieuz; et illecques, l'abbes Adans de Saint-Urbain
before Donjeux and there the-abbot Adam of Saint-Urbain
(que Diex absoille!) donna grant foison de biaus juiaus à
whom God absolve gave great plenty of fair jewels to

moy et à neuf chevaliers que j'avoie. Dès là nous alames an
me and to nine knights that I-had From there we went to
Ausone, et en alames atout nostre hernoiz, que nous aviens
Auxonne and thence went with our harness that we had
fait mettre es neis, dès Ausone jusques à Lyon contreval
had put in-the ships from Auxonne until to Lyon down
la Sone; et encoste les neis menoit-on les grans destriers.
the Saône and beside the ships led-one the great chargers
124 A Lyon, entrames ou Rone pour aler à Alles le Blanc; et
At Lyon we-entered into-the Rhône for to-go to Arles the White and
dedans le Rone trouvames un chastel que l'on appelle Roche de
within the Rhône we-found a castle which one calls Roche of
Glin, que li roys avoit fait abatre pour ce que Rogiers, li sires
Glun which the king had had pulled-down for this that Roger the lord
dou chastel, estoit criez de desrober les pelerins et les marchans.
of-the castle was cried of robbing the pilgrims and the merchants

The Embarkation, and Winter in Cyprus

XIII

In August they board at Marseille: the horses go in, the door is caulked, the clerks sing Veni Creator, and Joinville warns how foolhardy a man is who goes to sea in sin. A round mountain off Barbary holds them until the dean of Maurupt's processions free them. In Cyprus the king's stores stand in heaps like hills. The Tartar king's envoys come; the king sends back a tent made like a chapel. Joinville, nearly penniless, is taken into the king's pay.

125 Au mois d'aoust, entrames en nos neis à la Roche de
In-the month of-August we-entered into our ships at the Roche of
Marseille. A celle journée que nous entrames en nos neis,
Marseille On that day that we entered into our ships

fist l'on ouvrir la porte de la nef, et mist l'on touz nos
had one opened the door of the ship and put one all our
chevaus ens que nous deviens mener outre mer; et puis
horses within that we ought take over sea and then
reclost l'on la porte et l'enboucha l'on bien, aussi comme
closed-again one the door and it-caulked one well just as
l'on naye un tonnel, pour ce que, quant la neis est en
one sinks a cask for this that when the ship is on
la grant mer, toute la porte est en l'yaue.
the great sea all the door is in the-water
Quant li cheval furent ens, nostre maistres notonniers escria 126
When the horses were within our master mariner called
à ses notonniers, qui estoient ou bec de la nef, et lour
to his mariners who were in-the beak of the ship and to-them
dist: «Est arée vostre besoigne?» Et il respondirent: «Oil, sire;
said Is ready your business And they answered Yes lord
vieingnent avant li clerc et li provere. Maintenant que il
let-come forward the clerks and the priests As-soon as they
furent venu, il lour escria: Chantez, de par Dieu!» Et il
were come he to-them called Sing on behalf-of God And they
s'escrierent tuit à une voix: Veni creator Spiritus. Et il escria
themselves-cried all with one voice Come creator Spirit And he called
à ses notonniers: «Faites voile, de par Dieu!» Et il si firent.
to his mariners Make sail on behalf-of God And they so did
Et en brief tens li venz se feri ou voile, et nous ot 127
And in brief time the wind itself struck into-the sail and us had
tolu la veue de la terre, que nous ne veismes que ciel et
taken-away the sight of the land that we not saw but sky and
yaue; et chascun jour nous esloigna li venz des païs où
water and each day us distanced the wind from-the countries where
nous aviens estei nei. Et ces choses vous moustré-je que cil est
we had been born And these things to-you show-I that he is

bien fol hardis, qui se ose mettre en tel peril atout autrui
well fool hardy who himself dares put in such peril with others'
chatel ou en pechié mortel; car l'on se dort le soir là où
chattel or in sin mortal for one himself sleeps the evening there where
on ne sait se l'on se trouvera ou font de la mer au matin.
one not knows if one himself will-find in-the bottom of the sea in-the morning

128 En la mer nous avint une fiere merveille; que nous
On the sea to-us happened a fierce marvel that we
trouvames une montaigne toute ronde, qui estoit devant
found a mountain all round which was before
Barbarie. Nous la trouvames entour l'eure de vespres, et
Barbary We it found about the-hour of vespers and
najames tout le soir, et cuidames bien avoir fait plus de
sailed all the evening and thought well to-have made more than
cinquante lieues; et l'endemain nous nous trouvames devant
fifty leagues and the-next-day we ourselves found before
icelle meismes montaigne; et ainsi nous avint par dous foiz
that same mountain and thus to-us happened by two times
ou par trois. Quant li marinier virent ce, il furent tuit
or by three When the mariners saw this they were all
esbahi, et nous distrent que nos neis estoient en grant peril;
dismayed and us said that our ships were in great peril
car nous estiens devant la terre aus Sarrazins de Barbarie.
for we were before the land of-the Saracens of Barbary

129 Lors nous dist uns preudom prestres, que on appeloit doyen
Then us said a worthy-man priest whom one called dean
de Malrut, car il n'ot onques persecucion en paroisse, ne
of Maurupt for he not-had ever persecution in parish either
par defaut d'yaue, ne de trop pluie, ne d'autre persecucion,
by lack of-water or of too-much rain or of-other persecution
que aussi tost comme il avoit fait trois processions par trois
but as soon as he had made three processions by three

samedis, que Diex et sa Mere ne le delivrassent. Samedis
Saturdays that God and his Mother not him should-deliver Saturday
estoit; nous feismes la premiere procession entour les dous
it-was we made the first procession around the two
maz de la nef: je-meismes m'i fiz porter par les braz,
masts of the ship I-myself myself-there had carried by the arms
pour ce que je estoie grief malades. Onques puis nous ne
for this that I was grievously sick Ever since we not
veismes la montaigne, et venimes en Cypre le tiers samedi.
saw the mountain and came to Cyprus the third Saturday
Quant nous venimes en Cypre, li roys estoit jà en Cypre, 130
When we came to Cyprus the king was already in Cyprus
et trouvames grant foison de la pourvéance le roy: c'est à
and we-found great plenty of the provision (of-)the king this-is to
savoir les celiers le roy et les deniers et les garniers. Li
know the cellars (of-)the king and the pence and the granaries The
celier le roy estoient tel, que sa gent avoient fait en mi
cellars (of-)the king were such that his people had made in midst
les chans, sur la rive de la mer, grans moyes de tonniaus de
the fields on the shore of the sea great stacks of casks of
vin, que il avoient achetei de dous ans devant que li roys
wine that they had bought of two years before that the king
venist; et les avoient mis les uns sus les autres, que quant
came and them had put the ones upon the others so-that when
l'on les véoit devant, il sembloit que ce fussent granches.
one them saw before it seemed that these were barns
Les fourmens et les orges, il les ravoient mis par monciaus 131
The wheats and the barleys they them had-again put in heaps
en mi les chans; et quant on les véoit, il sembloit que
in midst the fields and when one them saw it seemed that
ce fussent montaignes; car la pluie qui avoit batu les blez
these were mountains for the rain which had beaten the grains

de lonc temps, les avoit fait germer par desus, si que
of long time them had made sprout by above so that
il n'i paroit que l'herbe vert. Or avint ainsi que quant
it not-there showed but the-grass green Now happened so that when
on les vot mener en Egypte, l'on abati les crotes de
one them wished to-carry into Egypt one knocked-off the crusts of
desus atout l'herbe vert, et trouva l'on le fourment et
on-top with the-grass green and found one the wheat and
l'orge aussi frez comme se l'on l'eust maintenant batu.
the-barley as fresh as if one it-had at-once threshed

132 Li roys fust mout volentiers alez avant, sans arester,
The king would-have very willingly gone forward without stopping
en Egypte, si comme je li oï dire en Surie, se ne
into Egypt so as I him heard say in Syria if not
fussent sui baron qui li loerent à atendre sa gent qui
had-been his barons who him advised to await his people who
n'estoient pas encore tuit venu.
not-were at-all yet all come

133 En ce point que li roys sejournoit en Cypre, envoia li grans
At this point that the king sojourned in Cyprus sent the great
roys des Tartarins ses messaiges à li, et li manda mout
king of-the Tartars his messengers to him and to-him sent-word many
de bonnes et honnestes paroles. Entre les autres, li manda
of good and honest words Among the others to-him sent-word
que il estoit prez de li aidier à conquerre la Terre-Sainte,
that he was ready to him help to conquer the Holy-Land
et de delivrer Jherusalem de la main aus Sarrazins.
and to deliver Jerusalem from the hand of-the Saracens

134 Li roys reçut mout debonnairement ses messaiges, et li
The king received very graciously his messengers and to-him
renvoia les siens, qui demourerent dous ans avant que
sent-back the his who remained two years before that

il revenissent à li. Et par les messaiges, envoia li roys
they came-back to him And by the messengers sent the king
au roy des Tartarins une tente faite en la guise d'une
to-the king of-the Tartars a tent made in the guise of-a
chapelle, qui mout cousta; car elle fu toute faite de bone
chapel which much cost for it was all made of good
escarlate finne. Et li roys, pour veoir se il les pourroit
scarlet fine And the king for to-see if he them could
atraire à nostre créance, fist entaillier en la dite chapelle,
draw to our belief had carved in the said chapel
par ymaiges, l'Anonciacion Nostre-Dame et touz les autres
in images the-Annunciation (of-)Our-Lady and all the other
poins de la foy. Et ces choses lour envoia-il par dous
points of the faith And these things to-them sent-he by two
freres preescheours qui savoient le sarrazinnois, pour aus
friars preachers who knew the Saracen-tongue for them
moustrer et enseignier comment il devoient croire.
to-show and teach how they ought believe
Il revindrent au roi li dui frere, en ce point que li 135
They came-back to-the king the two friars at this point that the
frere au roy revindrent en France; et trouverent le roy
brothers of-the king came-back to France and found the king
qui estoit partis d'Acre, là où sui frere l'avoient lessié, et
who was departed from-Acre there where his brothers him-had left and
estoit venus à Cesaire là où il la fermoit; ne n'avoit ne
was come to Caesarea there where he it fortified nor not-had neither
paiz ne treves aus Sarrazins. Comment li messaige le
peace nor truces with-the Saracens How the messengers (of-)the
roy de France furent receu, vous dirai-je aussi comme il
king of France were received to-you will-tell-I just as they
meismes le conterent au roy; et en ce que il raporterent
themselves it told to-the king and in this that they reported

au roy, pourrez oïr mout de merveilles, lesquex je ne
to-the king you-will-be-able hear many of marvels which I not
vueil pas conter, pour ce que il me convenroit derompre
wish at-all to-tell for this that it me would-behoove to-break
ma matiere que j'ai commencie, qui est teix.
my matter that I-have begun which is such
136 Je, qui n'avoie pas mil livrées de terre, me charjai, quant
I who not-had at-all thousand librates of land myself charged when
j'alai outre mer, de moy disiesme de chevaliers et de dous
I-went over sea with myself tenth of knights and with two
chevaliers banieres portans; et m'avint ainsi que, quant
knights banners bearing and to-me-happened so that when
je arrivai en Cypre, il ne me fu demourei de remenant que
I arrived in Cyprus it not to-me was remained of remnant but
douze vins livres de tournois, ma nef païe; dont aucun de
twelve score pounds of Tours my ship paid whereof some of
mes chevaliers me manderent que se je ne me pourvéoie de
my knights to-me sent-word that if I not myself provided with
deniers, que il me lairoient. Et Diex, qui onques ne me failli,
pence that they me would-leave And God who ever not me failed
me pourveut en tel maniere que li roys, qui estoit à Nichocie,
me provided in such manner that the king who was at Nicosia
m'envoia querre et me retint, et me mist huit cens livres en
me-sent to-seek and me retained and me put eight hundred pounds in
mes cofres; et lors oz-je plus de deniers que il ne me couvenoit.
my coffers and then had-I more of pence than it not me behooved

The Empress and the Sultans

XIV

The empress of Constantinople lands at Paphos, and Joinville and Erard of Brienne fetch her; she seeks help for her lord, and Joinville swears to go if the king sends three hundred knights, but the king has no means. The sultan of Iconium has melted his gold into jars; the king of Armenia escapes his servitude by bringing the Tartars, who defeat the sultan. The sultan of Babylon besieges the sultan of Hama, who has him poisoned through the mat where he plays chess.

En ce point que nous sejournames en Cypre, me manda 137
At this point that we sojourned in Cyprus me sent-word
l'empereris de Constantinnoble que elle estoit arrivée à
the-empress of Constantinople that she was arrived at
Baphe, une citei de Cypre, et que je l'alasse querre, je et
Paphos a city of Cyprus and that I her-should-go to-seek I and
mes sires Erars de Brienne. Quant nous venimes là, nous
my lord Erard of Brienne When we came there we
trouvames que uns forz venz ot rompues les cordes des
found that a strong wind had broken the ropes of-the
ancres de sa nef, et en ot menei la nef en Acre; et ne
anchors of her ship and thence had carried the ship to Acre and not
li fu demourei de tout son harnois que sa chape que
to-her was remained of all her harness but her cape which
elle ot vestue, et un seurcot à mangier. Nous l'amenames
she had donned and a surcoat for eating We her-brought
à Limeson, là où li roys et la royne, et tuit li baron
to Limassol there where the king and the queen and all the barons
de France et de l'ost, la reçurent mout honorablement.
of France and of the-host her received very honorably

138 L'endemain, je li envoiai drap pour faire une robe, et
The-next-day I to-her sent cloth for to-make a robe and
la pane de vair avec; et li envoyai une tiretaine et
the fur of vair with-it and to-her sent a linsey and
cendal pour fourrer la robe. Mes sires Phelippes de Nanteil,
sendal for to-line the robe My lord Philip of Nanteuil
li bons chevaliers, qui estoit entour le roy, trouva mon
the good knight who was about the king found my
escuier qui aloit à l'empereris. Quant li preudom vit ce,
squire who went to the-empress When the worthy-man saw this
il ala au roy et li dist que grant honte avoie fait
he went to-the king and to-him said that great shame I-had done
à li et aus autres barons, de ces robes que je li
to him and to-the other barons with these robes that I to-her
avoie envoié, quant il ne s'ent estoient avisié avant.
had sent when they not themselves-thereof were bethought before
139 L'empereris vint querre secours au roy pour son signour,
The-empress came to-seek help of-the king for her lord
qui estoit en Constantinnoble demourez, et pourchassa
who was in Constantinople remained and pursued
tant que elle emporta cent paire de lettres et plus,
so-much that she carried-off a-hundred pair of letters and more
que de moy que des autres amis qui là estoient; es
both of me and of-the other friends who there were in
quiex lettres nous estiens tenu par nos sairemens que, se li
which letters we were held by our oaths that if the
roys ou li legaz vouloient envoier trois cens chevaliers en
king or the legate wished to-send three hundred knights to
Constantinnoble, après ce que li roys seroit partis d'outre
Constantinople after this that the king would-be departed from-over
mer, que nous y estiens tenu d'aler par nos sairemens.
sea that we there were held to-go by our oaths

Et je, pour mon sairement aquitier, requis le roy, au departir 140
And I for my oath to-acquit asked the king at-the departing
que nous feismes, par devant le conte d'Eu dont j'ai la lettre,
that we made by before the count of-Eu of-whom I-have the letter
que se il vouloit envoier trois cens chevaliers, que je iroie
that if he wished to-send three hundred knights that I would-go
pour mon sairement aquitier. Et li roys me respondi que il
for my oath to-acquit And the king me answered that he
n'avoit de quoy, et que il n'avoit si bon tresor dont il ne fust
not-had of what and that he not-had so good treasure whereof he not were
à la lie. Après ce que nous fumes arivei en Egypte, l'empereris
at the dregs After this that we were arrived in Egypt the-empress
s'en ala en France, et emmena avec li mon signour Jehan
herself-thence went into France and took with her my lord John
d'Acre, son frere, lequel elle maria à la contesce de Montfort.
of-Acre her brother whom she married to the countess of Montfort
En ce point que nous venimes en Cypre, li soudans dou 141
At this point that we came to Cyprus the sultan of-the
Coyne estoit li plus riches roys de toute la paennime. Et
Iconium was the most rich king of all the heathendom And
avoit faite une merveille; car il avoit fait fondre grant partie de
he-had done a marvel for he had had melted great part of
son or en poz de terre là où l'on met vin outre mer, qui
his gold in pots of earth there where one puts wine over sea which
tiennent bien troys muis ou quatre de vin; et fist brisier les
hold fully three hogsheads or four of wine and had broken the
poz; et les masses d'or estoient demourées à descouvert en
pots and the masses of-gold were remained in-the open in
mi un sien chastel, que chascuns qui entroit ou chastel
midst a his castle so-that each-one who entered into-the castle
y pooit touchier et veoir; et en y avoit bien six ou sept.
there could touch and see and thereof there had fully six or seven

142 Sa grans richesce apparut en un paveillon que li roys d'Ermenie
His great richness appeared in a pavilion that the king of-Armenia
envoia au roy de France, qui valoit bien cinq cens livres;
sent to-the king of France which was-worth fully five hundred pounds
et li manda li roys de Hermenie que uns ferrais au
and to-him sent-word the king of Armenia that a ferrash of-the
soudanc dou Coyne li avoit donnei. Ferrais est cil qui tient
sultan of-the Iconium to-him had given Ferrash is he who keeps
les paveillons au soudanc et qui li nettoie ses maisons.
the pavilions of-the sultan and who for-him cleans his houses
143 Li roys d'Ermine, pour li delivrer dou servaige au
The king of-Armenia for himself to-deliver from-the servitude of-the
soudanc dou Coine, en ala au roy des Tartarins, et
sultan of-the Iconium thence went to-the king of-the Tartars and
se mist en lour servaige pour avoir lour aide; et amena
himself put in their servitude for to-have their help and brought
si grant foison de gens d'armes que il ot pooir de combatre
so great plenty of men of-arms that he had power to fight
au soudanc dou Coyne. Et dura grant piece la bataille,
with-the sultan of-the Iconium And lasted great while the battle
et li tuerent li Tartarin tant de sa gent que l'on
and to-him killed the Tartars so-many of his people that one
n'oy puis nouvelles de li. Pour la renommée, qui estoit
not-heard since tidings of him For the renown which was
grans en Cypre, de la bataille qui devoit estre, passerent
great in Cyprus of the battle which was-to be crossed
de nos gens serjans en Hermenie pour gaaingnier et pour
of our people sergeants into Armenia for to-gain and for
estre en la bataille; ne onques nulz d'aus n'en revint.
to-be in the battle nor ever any of-them not-thence came-back

Li soudans de Babiloinne, qui attendoit le roy qu'il venist en 144
The sultan of Babylon who awaited the king that-he should-come into
Egypte au nouvel temps, s'apensa que il iroit confondre
Egypt at-the new season bethought-himself that he would-go to-confound
le soudanc de Hamant, qui estoit ses ennemis mortex, et
the sultan of Hama who was his enemy mortal and
l'ala assegier dedans la citei de Hamant. Li soudans de
him-went to-besiege within the city of Hama The sultan of
Hamant ne se sot comment chevir dou soudanc de
Hama not himself knew how to-manage with-the sultan of
Babiloinne; car il véoit bien que se il vivoit longuement, que
Babylon for he saw well that if he lived long that
il le confonderoit. Et fist tant barguignier au ferrais
he him would-confound And he-did so-much bargain with-the ferrash
le soudanc de Babiloinne, que li ferrais l'empoisonna.
(of-)the sultan of Babylon that the ferrash him-poisoned
Et la maniere de l'empoisonnement fu teix, que li ferrais 145
And the manner of the-poisoning was such that the ferrash
s'avisa que li soudans venoit touz jours jouer aus eschez,
bethought-himself that the sultan came all days to-play at-the chess
après relevée, sus les nates qui estoient au pié de son lit;
after noon on the mats which were at-the foot of his bed
laquel natte sur quoy il sot que li soudans s'asséoit touz
which mat on which he knew that the sultan himself-sat all
les jours, il l'envenima. Or avint ainsi que li soudans, qui
the days he it-envenomed Now happened so that the sultan who
estoit deschaus, se tourna sus une escorcheure que il avoit
was unshod himself turned upon a graze that he had
en la jambe. Tout maintenant li venins se feri ou vif,
on the leg All at-once the venom itself struck into-the quick
et li tolli tout le pooir de la moitié dou cors de celle
and to-him took-away all the power of the half of-the body of that

part dont il estoit entrez; et toutes les foys que li venins
side whence it was entered and all the times that the venom
le poingnoit vers le cuer, il estoit bien dous jours qu'il ne
him pricked toward the heart he was fully two days that-he not
bevoit, ne ne manjoit, ne ne parloit. Le soudanc de Hamant
drank nor not ate nor not spoke The sultan of Hama
lessierent en paiz, et le menerent sa gent en Egypte.
they-left in peace and him took his people into Egypt

Sailing for Egypt

XV

In March the ships are loaded. At Pentecost a wind from Egypt scatters the fleet at Limassol, leaving the king not a third of his people, but against his council he resolves to land and fight. Joinville gets no galley, only a small ship from the lady of Beirut; men leap into an overloaded boat, and Plonquet drowns. Joinville lands opposite the Saracen horsemen, and his knights plant their shields and lances in the sand, so the Turks turn back.

146 Maintenant que mars entra, par le commandement le roy, li
As-soon as March entered by the command (of-)the king the
roys et li baron et li autre pelerin commanderent que les neis
king and the barons and the other pilgrims commanded that the ships
refussent chargies de vins et de viandes, pour mouvoir quant
should-be-again laden with wines and with foods for to-set-out when
li roys le commanderoit. Dont il avint ainsi que quant li
the king it would-command Whence it happened so that when the
rois vit que la chose fu bien arée, li roys et la royne se
king saw that the thing was well arranged the king and the queen themselves
requeillirent en lour neis le vendredi devant Penthecouste; et
embarked in their ships the Friday before Pentecost and

dist li roys à ses barons que il alassent après li en lour
said the king to his barons that they should-go after him in their
neis droit vers Egypte. Le samedi fist li roys voile, et tuit
ships straight toward Egypt The Saturday made the king sail and all
li autre vessel aussi, qui mout fut belle chose à veoir; car il
the other vessels also which much was fair thing to see for it
sembloit que toute la mers, tant comme l'on pooit veoir à
seemed that all the sea as-far as one could see with
l'ueil, fust couverte de touailles des voiles des vessiaus, qui
the-eye were covered with cloths of-the sails of-the vessels which
furent nombrei à dix-huit cens vessiaus, que granz que petiz.
were numbered at eighteen hundred vessels both great and small
Li roys ancra ou bout d'un tertre que l'on appele la 147
The king anchored at-the end of-a hill which one calls the
pointe de Limeson, et tuit li autre vessel entour li. Li
point of Limassol and all the other vessels around him The
roys descendi à terre, le jour de la Pentecouste. Quand nous
king went-down to land the day of the Pentecost When we
eumes oy la messe, un venz griez et forz, qui venoit de
had heard the mass a wind grievous and strong which came from
vers Egypte, leva en tel maniere que de dous mille et huit
toward Egypt rose in such manner that of two thousand and eight
cens chevaliers que li roys mena en Egypte, ne l'en
hundred knights that the king led into Egypt not him-thereof
demoura que sept cens que li venz ne les eust dessevrés
remained but seven hundred whom the wind not them had severed
de la compagnie le roy, et menez en Acre et en autres
from the company (of-)the king and carried to Acre and into other
terres estranges, qui puis ne revindrent au roy de grant piece.
lands strange who after not came-back to-the king for great while

148 L'andemain de la Penthecouste, li venz fu cheus; li roys
The-next-day of the Pentecost the wind was fallen the king
et nous qui estiens avec li demourei, si comme Diex vout,
and we who were with him remained so as God willed
feismes voile derechief, et encontrames le prince de la Morée
made sail again and met the prince of the Morea
et le duc de Bourgoingne, qui avoit sejournei en la Morée.
and the duke of Burgundy who had sojourned in the Morea
Le jeudi après Penthecouste, ariva li roys devant Damiette,
The Thursday after Pentecost arrived the king before Damietta
et trouvames là tout le pooir dou soudanc sur la rive de
and we-found there all the power of-the sultan on the shore of
la mer, moult beles gens à regarder; car li soudans porte
the sea very fair people to look-at for the sultan bears
les armes d'or, là où li solaus feroit, qui fesoit les armes
the arms of-gold there where the sun struck which made the arms
resplendir. La noise que il menoient de lour nacaires et
shine The noise that they made with their kettledrums and
de lour cors sarrazinnois, estoit espouentable à escouter.
with their horns Saracen was frightful to hear
149 Li roys manda ses barons pour avoir consoil que il feroit.
The king summoned his barons for to-have counsel what he would-do
Mout de gens li loerent que il atendist tant que ses gens
Many of people him advised that he should-await until that his people
fussent revenu, pour ce que il ne li estoit pas demourei la
were come-back for this that it not to-him was at-all remained the
tierce partie de ses gens; et il ne les en vout onques croire.
third part of his people and he not them thereof wished ever to-believe
La raisons pourquoy, que il dist que il en donroit cuer à ses
The reason why that he said that he thereof would-give heart to his
ennemis; et meismement que en la mer devant Damiete n'a
enemies and especially that in the sea before Damietta not-has

point de port là où il peust sa gent atendre, pour ce que
at-all of port there where he could his people await for this that
uns forz venz nes preist et les menast en autres terres,
a strong wind not-them should-take and them carry into other lands
aussi comme li autre avoient le jour de la Penthecouste.
just as the others had the day of the Pentecost
Acordei fu que li roys descenderoit à terre le vendredi 150
Agreed was that the king would-go-down to land the Friday
devant la Trinitei, et iroit combatre aus Sarrazins se
before the Trinity and would-go to-fight with-the Saracens if
en aus ne demouroit. Li roys commanda à mon signour
in them not remained The king commanded to my lord
Jehan de Biaumont que il feist baillier une galie à mon
John of Beaumont that he should-have given a galley to my
signour Erart de Brienne et à moy, pour nous descendre
lord Erard of Brienne and to me for us to-land
et nos chevaliers, pour ce que les grans neis n'avoient
and our knights for this that the great ships not-had
pooir de venir jusques à terre.
power to come until to land
Aussi comme Diex vout, quant je reving à ma nef, je trouvai 151
Just as God willed when I came-back to my ship I found
une petite nef que ma dame de Baruch, qui estoit cousinne
a little ship that my lady of Beirut who was cousin
germainne le conte de Montbeliart et la nostre, m'avoit
german (of-)the count of Montbéliard and the our me-had
donnée, là où il avoit huit de mes chevaus. Quant vint au
given there where it had eight of my horses When came to-the
vendredi, entre moy et mon signour Erart, tuit armei alames
Friday between me and my lord Erard all armed we-went

au roy pour la galie demander; dont mes sires Jehans
to-the king for the galley to-ask whereof my lord John
de Biaumont nous respondi que nous n'en averiens point.
of Beaumont us answered that we not-thereof would-have at-all
152 Quant nos gens virent que nous n'averiens point de galie, il
When our people saw that we not-would-have at-all of galley they
se lessierent cheoir de la grant nef en la barge de cantiers,
themselves let fall from the great ship into the barge of landing
qui plus plus, qui miex miex, tant que la barge se vouloit
who more more who better better so-much that the barge itself was-about
enfondrer. Quant li marinier virent que la barge de cantiers
to-sink When the mariners saw that the barge of landing
se esfondroit pou à pou, il s'enfuirent en la grant nef et
itself sank little by little they themselves-fled into the great ship and
lessierent mes chevaliers en la barge de cantiers. Je demandai
left my knights in the barge of landing I asked
au maistre combien il i avoit trop de gens; et il me
of-the master how-many it there had too-many of people and he me
dist vingt homes à armes; et si li demandai se il menroit
said twenty men at arms and so him I-asked if he would-take
bien nostre gent à terre, se je le dechargoie de tante gent; et
well our people to land if I it unloaded of so-many people and
il me respondi: «Oyl.» Et je le deschargai en tel maniere que
he me answered Yes And I it unloaded in such manner that
par trois foiz il les mena en ma nef où mi cheval estoient.
by three times he them took to my ship where my horses were
153 Endementres que je menoie ces gens, uns chevaliers qui estoit
While that I led these people a knight who was
à mon signour Erart de Brene, qui avoit à non Plonquet,
to my lord Erard of Brienne who had to name Plonquet

cuida descendre de la grant nef en la barge de cantiers;
thought to-go-down from the great ship into the barge of landing
et la barge esloigna, et chéi en la mer et fu noyez.
and the barge drew-away and he-fell into the sea and was drowned
Quant je reving à ma nef, je mis en ma petite barge un 154
When I came-back to my ship I put into my little barge a
escuier que je fiz chevalier, qui ot à non mon signour
squire whom I made knight who had to name my lord
Huon de Wauquelour, et dous mout vaillans bacheliers,
Hugh of Vaucouleurs and two very valiant bachelors
dont li uns avoit non mon signour Villain de Versey,
of-whom the one had name my lord Villain of Versey
et li autres mon signour Guillaume de Danmartin, qui
and the other my lord William of Dammartin who
estoient en grief courine li uns vers l'autre. Ne nulz
were in grievous wrath the one toward the-other Nor anyone
n'en pooit faire la paiz, car il s'estoient entrepris par
not-thereof could make the peace for they themselves-were taken by
les cheveus à la Morée; et lour fiz pardonner lour
the hair in the Morea and to-them I-had pardon their
maltalent et besier l'un l'autre, par ce que lour jurai sur
ill-will and kiss the-one the-other by this that to-them I-swore on
sains que nous n'iriens pas à terre atout lour maltalent.
relics that we not-would-go at-all to land with their ill-will
Lors nous esmeumes pour aler à terre, et venimes par 155
Then we set-out for to-go to land and came by
delez la barge de cantiers de la grant nef le roy, là
beside the barge of landing of the great ship (of-)the king there
où li roys estoit. Et sa gent me commencierent à escrier
where the king was And his people me began to cry
(pour ce que nous aliens plus tost que il ne fesoient)
for this that we went more quickly than they not did

que je arivasse à l'ensaigne Saint-Denis qui en aloit en
that I should-land at the-ensign Saint-Denis which thence went in
un autre vaissel devant le roy. Mais je ne les en cru
an other vessel before the king But I not them thereof believed
pas; ainçois nous fiz ariver devant une grosse bataille de
at-all rather us I-had land before a great battalion of
Turs, là où il avoit bien sis mille homes à cheval.
Turks there where it had fully six thousand men on horse
156 Si tost comme il nous virent à terre, il vindrent, ferant
So soon as they us saw on land they came striking
des esperons, vers nous. Quant nous les veismes venir,
with-the spurs toward us When we them saw come
nous fichames les pointes de nos escus ou sablon, et le fust
we fixed the points of our shields in-the sand and the shaft
de nos lances ou sablon et les pointes vers aus. Maintenant
of our lances in-the sand and the points toward them As-soon
que il les virent ainsi comme pour aler par mi les ventres,
as they them saw thus as for to-go through midst the bellies
il tournerent ce devant darieres et s'en fouirent.
they turned this front behind and themselves-thence fled

The Landing, and Damietta Taken

XVI

Baldwin of Reims joins Joinville. The banner of Saint-Denis comes ashore, and the king, refusing the legate, leaps into the sea up to his armpits and would charge the Saracens if his men allowed it. The Saracens send pigeons to the sultan three times, get no answer, think him dead, and abandon Damietta, firing the market but leaving the bridge of boats. Joinville counts the grace God showed them.

Mes sires Baudouins de Reims, uns preudom qui estoit 157
My lord Baldwin of Reims a worthy-man who was
descendus à terre, me manda par son escuier que je l'attendisse;
gone-down to land me sent-word by his squire that I him-should-await
et je li mandai que si feroie-je mout volentiers, que teix
and I to-him sent-word that so would-do-I very willingly for such
preudom comme il estoit devoit bien estre atendus à un tel
worthy-man as he was ought well to-be awaited at a such
besoing; dont il me sot bon grei toute sa vie. Avec li nous
need whereof he to-me knew good gratitude all his life With him to-us
vindrent mille chevalier; et soiés certains que quant je arivai,
came thousand knights and be certain that when I arrived
je n'oz ne escuier, ne chevalier, ne varlet que je eusse amenei
I not-had neither squire nor knight nor varlet that I had brought
avec moy de mon pays; et si ne m'en lessa pas Diex à aidier.
with me from my country and so not me-thereof left at-all God to aid
A nostre main senestre, ariva li cuens de Japhe, qui estoit 158
On our hand left arrived the count of Jaffa who was
cousins germains le conte de Monbeliart, et dou lignaige
cousin german (of-)the count of Montbéliard and of-the lineage
de Joinville. Ce fu cil qui plus noblement ariva; car sa galie
of Joinville This was he who most nobly arrived for his galley

ariva toute peinte, dedens mer et dehors, à escussiaus de
arrived all painted within sea and without with escutcheons of
ses armes, lesquex armes sont d'or à une croiz de gueules
his arms which arms are of-gold with a cross of gules
patée. Il avoit bien trois cens nageours en sa galie, et à
patée He had fully three hundred rowers in his galley and to
chascun de ses nageours avoit une targe de ses armes, et à
each of his rowers there-had a targe of his arms and to
chascune targe avoit un pennoncel de ses armes batu à or.
each targe there-had a pennoncel of his arms beaten in gold
159 Endementieres que il venoient, il sembloit que la galie
While that they came it seemed that the galley
volast, par les nageours qui la contreingnoient aus avirons;
flew by the rowers who it drove with-the oars
et sembloit que foudre cheist des ciex, au bruit que li
and seemed that thunderbolt fell from-the heavens at-the noise that the
pennoncel menoient, et que li nacaire, li tabour et li cor
pennoncels made and that the kettledrums the tabors and the horns
sarrazinnois menoient, qui estoient en sa galie. Si tost comme la
Saracen made which were in his galley So soon as the
galie fu ferue ou sablon si avant comme l'on l'i pot mener,
galley was struck into-the sand so far as one it-there could bring
et il et sui chevalier saillirent de la galie moult bien armei
and he and his knights leapt from the galley very well armed
et moult bien atirié, et se vindrent arangier de coste nous.
and very well arrayed and themselves came to-range by side us
160 Je vous avoie oublié à dire que, quant li cuens de Japhe fu
I to-you had forgotten to say that when the count of Jaffa was
descendus, il fist tantost tendre ses trez et ses paveillons; et si
landed he had at-once pitched his tents and his pavilions and so
tost comme li Sarrazin les virent tendus, il se vindrent
soon as the Saracens them saw pitched they themselves came

tuit assembler devant nous, et revindrent ferant des esperons,
all to-assemble before us and came-again striking with-the spurs
ainsi comme pour nous courre sus; et quant il virent que
just as for us to-run upon and when they saw that
nous ne fuiriens pas, il s'en ralerent tantost arieres.
we not would-flee at-all they themselves-thence went-again at-once back
A nostre main destre, bien le trait à une grant arbalestrée, 161
On our hand right fully the shot of a great crossbow-shot
ariva la galie là où l'enseigne Saint-Denis estoit. Et ot un
arrived the galley there where the-ensign Saint-Denis was And there-was a
Sarrazin, quant il furent arivei, qui se vint ferir entre aus,
Saracen when they were arrived who himself came to-strike between them
ou pour ce que il ne pot son cheval tenir, ou pour ce que il
either for this that he not could his horse hold or for this that he
cuidoit que li autre le deussent suivre; mais il fu touz decopez.
thought that the others him ought follow but he was all cut-to-pieces
Quant li roys oy dire que l'enseigne Saint-Denis estoit à 162
When the king heard say that the-ensign Saint-Denis was on
terre, il en ala grant pas par mi son vessel, ne onques
land he thence went great pace through midst his vessel nor ever
pour le legat qui estoit avec li, ne la vout lessier, et
for the legate who was with him not it wished to-leave and
sailli en la mer, dont il fu en yaue jusques aus esseles.
leapt into the sea whereof he was in water until to-the armpits
Et ala l'escu au col, et le heaume en la teste, et
And went the-shield at-the neck and the helm on the head and
le glaive en la main, jusques à sa gent qui estoient sur
the lance in the hand until to his people who were on
la rive de la mer. Quant il vint à terre et il choisi les
the shore of the sea When he came to land and he spied the
Sarrazins, il demanda quex gent c'estoient; et on li dist
Saracens he asked what people these-were and one to-him said

que c'estoient Sarrazin; et il mist le glaive desous s'esselle
that these-were Saracens and he put the lance below his-armpit
et l'escu devant li, et eust couru sus aus Sarrazins,
and the-shield before him and would-have run upon to-the Saracens
se sui preudome, qui estoient avec li, li eussent souffert.
if his worthy-men who were with him to-him had suffered
163 Li Sarrazin envoierent au soudanc par coulons messagiers
The Saracens sent to-the sultan by pigeons messengers
par trois foiz, que li roys estoit arivez, que onques messaige
by three times that the king was arrived that ever message
n'en orent, pour ce que li soudans estoit en sa maladie; et
not-thereof had-they for this that the sultan was in his sickness and
quand il virent ce, il cuidierent que li soudans fust mors, et
when they saw this they thought that the sultan were dead and
lessierent Damiete. Li roys y envoia savoir par un messagier
left Damietta The king there sent to-know by a messenger
chevalier. Li chevaliers s'en vint au roy, et dist que il
knight The knight himself-thence came to-the king and said that he
avoit estei dedans les maisons au soudanc, et que c'estoit voirs.
had been within the houses of-the sultan and that this-was true
Lors envoia querre li roys le legat et touz les prelas de l'ost,
Then sent to-seek the king the legate and all the prelates of the-host
et chanta l'on hautement: Te Deum laudamus. Lors monta
and sang one loudly Thee God we-praise Then mounted
li roys et nous tuit, et nous alames logier devant Damiete.
the king and we all and we went to-lodge before Damietta
164 Mal apertement se partirent li Turc de Damiete, quant
Ill adroitly themselves departed the Turks from Damietta when
il ne firent coper le pont qui estoit de neis, qui grant
they not had cut the bridge which was of ships which great
destourbier nous eust fait; et grant doumaige nous firent
hindrance to-us would-have made and great harm to-us they-did

au partir, de ce que il bouterent le feu en la fonde, là
at-the departing from this that they thrust the fire into the market there
où toutes les marcheandises estoient et touz li avoirs de
where all the merchandise was and all the goods by
poiz. Aussi avint de ceste chose comme qui averoit demain
weight Just-so happened of this thing as who would-have tomorrow
boutei le feu (dont Diex le gart!) à Petit Pont de Paris.
thrust the fire whence God it guard at Petit Pont of Paris
Or disons donc que grant grace nous fist Diex li touz puissans, 165
Now let-us-say then that great grace to-us did God the all mighty
quant il nous deffendi de mort et de peril à l'ariver, là
when he us defended from death and from peril at the-landing there
où nous arivames à pié, et courumes sus à nos ennemis,
where we arrived on foot and ran upon to our enemies
qui estoient à cheval. Grant grace nous fist Nostre Sires de
who were on horse Great grace to-us did Our Lord with
Damiete que il nous delivra, laquel nous ne deussiens pas avoir
Damietta that he to-us delivered which we not ought at-all have
prise sanz affamer; et ce poons-nous veoir tout cler, pour ce
taken without starving and this can-we see all clear for this
que par affamer la prist li roys Jehans ou tens de nos peres.
that by starving it took the king John in-the time of our fathers

Disorder in the Host

XVII

Like the Israelites, the host forgets God. John of Valéry will not share out the booty under a plan that breaks the old custom, and the king is blamed for undoing good customs; the king's people let the stalls dear, and merchants stay away. The lords hold costly feasts, and the common people take to loose women. When the sultan's horsemen ring the camp, Walter of Autrèche charges alone, falls, is clubbed, and dies that night.

166 Autant puet dire Nostre Sires de nous comme il dist
As-much can say Our Lord of us as he said
des fiz Israel, là où il dist: Et pro nichilo habuerunt
of-the sons (of-)Israel there where he said And for nothing they-held
terram desiderabilem. Et que dist-il après? Il dist que il
land desirable And what said-he after He said that they
oublierent Dieu, qui sauvez les avoit. Et comment nous
forgot God who saved them had And how we
l'oubliames vous dirai-je ci après.
him-forgot to-you will-tell-I here after

167 Je vous penrai premierement au roy, qui manda querre ses
I you will-take first to-the king who sent to-seek his
barons, les clers et les laiz, et lour requist que il li aidassent
barons the clerks and the lay and them asked that they him should-help
à conseillier comment l'on departiroit ce que l'on avoit
to counsel how one would-divide that which one had
gaaingnié en la ville. Li patriarches fu li premiers qui parla, et
gained in the town The patriarch was the first who spoke and
dist ainsi: «Sire, il me semble que il iert bon que vous retenez
said thus Lord it to-me seems that it will-be good that you retain
les formens et les orges et les ris, et tout ce de quoy on puet
the wheats and the barleys and the rices and all that of which one can

vivre, pour la ville garnir; et face l'on crier en l'ost que
live for the town to-provision and let-have one cried in the-host that
tuit li autre mueble fussent aportei en l'ostel au legat, sur
all the other movables be brought into the-lodging of-the legate on
peinne de escommeniement.» A ce consoil s'acorderent tuit li
pain of excommunication To this counsel themselves-agreed all the
autre baron. Or avint ainsi que tuit li mueble que l'on apporta
other barons Now happened so that all the movables that one brought
à l'ostel le legat ne monterent que à sis mille livres.
to the-lodging (of-)the legate not amounted but to six thousand pounds
Quant ce fu fait, li roys et li baron manderent querre 168
When this was done the king and the barons sent to-seek
mon signour Jehan de Waleri le preudome, et li distrent
my lord John of Valéry the worthy-man and to-him said
ainsi: «Sire de Waleri, dist li roys, nous avons acordei que
thus Lord of Valéry said the king we have agreed that
li legas vous baillera les sis milles livres, à departir là où
the legate to-you will-give the six thousand pounds to divide there where
vous cuiderés que il soit miex. — Sire, fist li preudom,
you will-think that it may-be best Lord said the worthy-man
vous me faites grant honour, la vostre merci! mais ceste
you me do great honor the your thanks but this
honour et ceste offre que vous me faites, ne penrai-je pas,
honor and this offer that you me make not will-take-I at-all
se Dieu plait; car je desferoie les bonnes coustumes de la
if God pleases for I would-undo the good customs of the
Sainte-Terre, qui sont teix: car quant l'on prent les cités des
Holy-Land which are such for when one takes the cities of-the
ennemis, des biens que l'on treuve dedans, li roys en doit
enemies of-the goods that one finds within the king thereof ought
avoir le tiers, et li pelerin en doivent avoir les dous pars.
have the third and the pilgrims thereof ought have the two parts

169 «Et ceste coustume tint bien li roys Jehans quant il
And this custom held well the king John when he
prist Damiete; et ainsi comme li ancien dient, li roy de
took Damietta and just as the ancients say the kings of
Jerusalem qui furent devant le roy Jehan, tindrent bien ceste
Jerusalem who were before the king John held well this
coustume. Et se il vous plait que vous me vueilliez baillier
custom And if it you pleases that you me may-wish to-give
les dous pars des fourmens et des orges, des ris et des
the two parts of-the wheats and of-the barleys of-the rices and of-the
autres vivres, je me entremeterai volentiers pour departir
other victuals I myself will-undertake willingly for to-divide
aus pelerins.» Li roys n'ot pas consoil dou faire, et ainsi
to-the pilgrims The king not-had at-all counsel of-the doing and thus
demoura la besoigne; dont mainte gent se tindrent mal
remained the business whereof many people themselves held ill
apaié de ce que li roys deffit les bones coustumes anciennes.
satisfied of this that the king undid the good customs ancient
170 Les gens le roy, qui deussent debonnairement les gens
The people (of-)the king who ought graciously the people
retenir, lour loerent les estaus pour vendre lour danrées aussi
retain them rented the stalls for to-sell their wares as
chier, si comme l'on disoit, comme il porent; et pour ce la
dear so as one said as they could and for this the
renommée couru en estranges terres: dont maint marcheant
renown ran into strange lands whereof many merchants
lessierent à venir en l'ost. Li baron, qui deussent garder le
left-off to come into the-host The barons who ought keep the
lour pour bien emploier en lieu et en tens, se pristrent
theirs for well to-employ in place and in time themselves took
à donner les grans mangiers et les outrageuses viandes.
to give the great feasts and the outrageous foods

Li communs peuples se prist aus foles femmes; dont il avint 171
The common people itself took to-the foolish women whereof it happened
que li roys donna congié à tout plein de ses gens, quant
that the king gave leave to all full of his people when
nous revenimes de prison. Et je li demandai pour quoi il
we came-back from prison And I him asked for what he
avoit ce fait; et il me dist que il avoit trouvei de certein que
had this done and he me said that he had found for certain that
au giet d'une pierre menue, entour son paveillon, tenoient
at-the throw of-a stone small around his pavilion held
cil lour bordiaus à cui il avoit donnei congié, et ou
those their brothels to whom he had given leave and in-the
temps dou plus grant meschief que li os eust onques estei.
time of-the most great hardship that the host had ever been
Or revenons à nostre matiere et disons ainsi, que un pou 172
Now let-us-return to our matter and let-us-say thus that a little
après ce que nous eussiens pris Damiete, vindrent devant l'ost
after this that we had taken Damietta came before the-host
toute la chevalerie au soudanc, et assistrent nostre ost par
all the knighthood of-the sultan and besieged our host by
devers la terre. Li roys et toute la chevalerie s'armerent. Je,
toward the land The king and all the knighthood themselves-armed I
touz armez, alai parler au roy, et le trouvai tout armei séant
all armed went to-speak to-the king and him found all armed sitting
sus une forme, et des preudomes chevaliers qui estoient de
on a bench and of-the worthy-men knights who were of
sa bataille, avec li touz armés. Je li requis qu'il vousist que
his battalion with him all armed I him asked that-he would-wish that
je et ma gent alissiens jusques hors de l'ost, pour ce que li
I and my people should-go until outside of the-host for this that the
Sarrazin ne se ferissent en nos heberges. Quant mes sires
Saracens not themselves should-strike into our lodgings When my lord

Jehans de Biaumont oy ma requeste, il m'escria mout fort, et
John of Beaumont heard my request he me-cried-at very hard and
me commanda, de par le roy, que je ne me partisse de
me commanded on behalf-of the king that I not myself should-depart from
ma herberge jusques à tant que li roys le me commanderoit.
my lodging until to so-much that the king it me would-command
173 Les preudomes chevaliers qui estoient avec le roy vous ai-je
The worthy-men knights who were with the king to-you have-I
ramenteu, pour ce que il en y avoit avec li huit, touz
recalled for this that it thereof there had with him eight all
bons chevaliers, qui avoient eu pris d'armes de çà mer et
good knights who had had prize of-arms of this-side sea and
de là; et tiex chevaliers soloit l'on appeler bons chevaliers.
of there and such knights was-wont one to-call good knights
Li non ceus qui estoient chevalier entour le roy sont
The names (of-)those who were knights around the king are
tel: mes sires Geffroys de Sargines, mes sires Mahis de
such my lord Geoffrey of Sargines my lord Matthew of
Marley, mes sires Phelippes de Nenteul, mes sires Ymbers de
Marly my lord Philip of Nanteuil my lord Imbert of
Biaujeu, connestables de France, qui n'estoit pas là, ainçois
Beaujeu constable of France who not-was at-all there rather
estoit au dehors de l'ost, entre li et le maistre des
was at-the outside of the-host between him and the master of-the
arbalestriers, atout le plus des serjans à armes le roy,
crossbowmen with the most of-the sergeants at arms (of-)the king
à garder nostre ost, que li Turc n'i feissent doumaige.
to guard our host that the Turks not-there should-do harm
174 Or avint que mes sires Gauchiers d'Autreche se fist
Now happened that my lord Walter of-Autrèche himself had
armer en son paveillon de touz poins, et quant il fu
armed in his pavilion at all points and when he was

montez sus son cheval, l'escu au col, le hyaume en la
mounted upon his horse the-shield at-the neck the helm on the
teste, il fist lever les pans de son paveillon, et feri des
head he had lifted the flaps of his pavilion and struck with-the
esperons pour aler aus Turs; et au partir que il fist de
spurs for to-go to-the Turks and at-the departing that he made from
son paveillon touz seux, toute sa mesnie escria à haute
his pavilion all alone all his household cried with high
voiz: «Chasteillon!» Or avint ainsi que avant que il venist
voice Châtillon Now happened so that before that he came
aus Turs, il chaï, et ses chevaus li vola parmi le cors;
to-the Turks he fell and his horse him flew through the body
et s'en ala li chevaus, couvers de ses armes, à nos
and itself-thence went the horse covered with his arms to our
ennemis, pour ce que le plus des Sarrazins estoient montei
enemies for this that the most of-the Saracens were mounted
sur jumens; et pour ce trait li chevaus aus Sarrazins.
on mares and for this drew the horse to-the Saracens
Et nous conterent cil qui le virent que quatre Turc vindrent 175
And us told those who it saw that four Turks came
par le signour Gauchier, qui se gisoit par terre; et au
by the lord Walter who himself lay on ground and at-the
passer que il fesoient par devant li, li donnoient grans
passing that they made by before him to-him gave great
cos de lour maces là où il gisoit. Là le rescourent
blows with their maces there where he lay There him rescued
li connestables de France et plusour des sergens le
the constable of France and several of-the sergeants (of-)the
roy avec li, qui le ramenerent par les bras jusques à
king with him who him brought-back by the arms until to
son paveillon. Quant il vint là, il ne pot parler; plusour
his pavilion When he came there he not could speak several

des cyrurgiens et des phisiciens de l'ost alerent à li;
of-the surgeons and of-the physicians of the-host went to him
et pour ce que il lour sembloit que il n'i avoit point
and for this that it to-them seemed that it not-there had at-all
de peril de mort, il le firent seignier des dous bras.
of peril of death they him had bled from-the two arms
176 Le soir, tout tart, me dist mes sires Aubers de Narcy
The evening all late me said my lord Aubert of Narcy
que nous l'alissiens veoir, pour ce que nous ne l'aviens
that we him-should-go to-see for this that we not him-had
encore veu, et estoit hom de grant non et de grant
yet seen and (he)-was man of great name and of great
valour. Nous entrames en son paveillon, et ses chamberlans
valor We entered into his pavilion and his chamberlain
nous vint à l'encontre pour ce que nous alissiens belement,
us came to the-meeting for this that we should-go softly
et pour ce que nous ne esveillissiens son maistre. Nous
and for this that we not should-wake his master We
le trouvames gisant sus couvertours de menu vair, et nous
him found lying on coverlets of small vair and we
traimes tout souef vers li, et le trouvames mort. Quant
drew all gently toward him and him found dead When
on le dist au roy, il respondi que il n'en vourroit mie
one it said to-the king he answered that he not-thereof would-wish at-all
avoir tiex mil, puis que il ne vousissent ouvrer de son
to-have such thousand since that they not wished to-work by his
commandement, aussi comme il avoit fait.
command just as he had done

The March, and the Nile

XVIII

Saracens creep in by night and behead a watchman. The host waits for the count of Poitiers, who comes after processions on three Saturdays while a storm wrecks two hundred and forty vessels. The barons want Alexandria, but the king follows the count of Artois to Babylon. In Advent the host routs the Turks who attack the Templars. Joinville digresses on the Nile. The king camps where the sultan bars the crossing.

Li Sarrazin à pié entroient toutes les nuiz en l'ost, et 177
The Saracens on foot entered all the nights into the-host and
occioient les gens, là où il les trouvoient dormans: dont
killed the people there where they them found sleeping whereof
il avint que il occistrent la gaite au signour de Courtenay,
it happened that they killed the watch of-the lord of Courtenay
et le lessierent gisant sur une table, et li coperent la
and him left lying on a table and to-him cut the
teste et l'emporterent. Et ce firent-il pour ce que li soudans
head and it-carried-off And this did-they for this that the sultan
donnoit de chascune teste des chrestiens un besant d'or.
gave for each head of-the Christians a bezant of-gold
Et ceste persecucions avenoit pour ce que les batailles guetoient, 178
And this persecution happened for this that the battalions watched
chascune à son soir, l'ost à cheval; et quant li Sarrazin
each on its evening the-host on horse and when the Saracens
vouloient entrer en l'ost, il atendoient tant que les fraintes des
wished to-enter into the-host they waited until that the noises of-the
chevaus et des batailles estoient passées; si se metoient
horses and of-the battalions were passed so themselves put
en l'ost par darieres les dos des chevaus, et rissoient avant
into the-host by behind the backs of-the horses and went-out-again before

que jours fust. Et pour ce ordena li roys que les batailles qui
that day were And for this ordained the king that the battalions which
soloient guietier à cheval, guietteroient à pié; si que touz li
were-wont to-watch on horse would-watch on foot so that all the
os estoient asseurs de nos gens qui guietoient, pour ce que il
host was secure from our people who watched for this that they
estoient espandu en tel maniere que li uns touchoit à l'autre.
were spread in such manner that the one touched to the-other

179 Après ce que ce fu fait, li roys ot consoil que il ne
After this that this was done the king had counsel that he not
partiroit de Damiete, jusques à tant que ses freres li
would-depart from Damietta until to so-much that his brother the
cuens de Poitiers seroit venus, qui amenoit l'ariere-ban de
count of Poitiers would-be come who brought the-rear-levy of
France. Et pour ce que li Sarrazin ne se ferissent
France And for this that the Saracens not themselves should-strike
par mi l'ost à cheval, li roy fist clorre tout l'ost de
through midst the-host on horse the king had enclosed all the-host with
grans fossés; et sus les fossés gaitoient arbelestrier, touz
great ditches and on the ditches watched crossbowmen all
les soirs, et serjant, et aus entrées de l'ost aussi.
the evenings and sergeants and at-the entries of the-host also

180 Quand la saint Remy fu passée, que on n'oy nulles
When the Saint Remy was passed that one not-heard any
nouvelles dou conte de Poitiers (dont li roys et tuit cil
tidings of-the count of Poitiers whereof the king and all those
de l'ost furent à grant mesaise, car il doutoient que
of the-host were in great unease for they feared that
aucuns meschiez ne li fust avenus), lors je ramentu le
some hardship not to-him were happened then I reminded the
legat comment li diens de Malrut nous avoit fait faire
legate how the dean of Maurupt us had had make

trois processions en la mer, par trois samedis; et devant le
three processions on the sea by three Saturdays and before the
tiers samedi nous arivames en Cypre. Li legas me crut et
third Saturday we arrived in Cyprus The legate me believed and
fist crier les trois processions en l'ost par trois samedis.
had cried the three processions in the-host by three Saturdays
La premiere processions commença en l'ostel dou legat, 181
The first procession began at the-lodging of-the legate
et alerent au moustier Nostre-Dame en la ville; liquex
and they-went to-the minster (of-)Our-Lady in the town which
moustiers estoit fais en la mahommerie des Sarrazins, et
minster was made in the mosque of-the Saracens and
l'avoit li legas dedié en l'onnour de la Mere Dieu. Li legas
it-had the legate dedicated in the-honor of the Mother (of-)God The legate
fist le sermon par dous samedis. Là fu li roys, et li
made the sermon by two Saturdays There was the king and the
riche homme de l'ost, ausquiex li legas donna grant pardon.
rich men of the-host to-whom the legate gave great pardon
Dedans le tiers samedi vint li cuens de Poitiers, et ne fu 182
Within the third Saturday came the count of Poitiers and not was
pas mestier que il fust avant venus; car dedans les trois
at-all need that he were before come for within the three
samedis fu si grans baquenas en la mer devant Damiete,
Saturdays was so great storm on the sea before Damietta
que il y ot bien douze vins vessiaus, que grans que
that it there had fully twelve score vessels both great and
petiz, brisiez et perdus, atout les gens qui estoient dedans,
small broken and lost with the people who were within
noyez et perdus. Dont, se li cuens de Poitiers fust avant
drowned and lost Whence if the count of Poitiers were before
venus, et li et sa gent eussent estei tuit confondu.
come both he and his people would-have been all confounded

183 Quant li cuens de Poitiers fu venus, li roys manda touz
When the count of Poitiers was come the king summoned all
ses barons de l'ost, pour savoir quel voie il tenroit, ou
his barons of the-host for to-know which way he would-hold either
en Alixandre ou en Babiloine. Dont il avint ainsi que li
to Alexandria or to Babylon Whence it happened so that the
bons cuens Pierres de Bretaingne et le plus des barons
good count Peter of Brittany and the most of-the barons
de l'ost s'acorderent que li roys alast assegier Alixandre,
of the-host themselves-agreed that the king should-go to-besiege Alexandria
pour ce que devant la ville avoit bon port, là où les
for this that before the town there-was good port there where the
neis ariveroient qui aporteroient les viandes en l'ost. A
ships would-arrive which would-bring the foods into the-host To
ce fu li cuens d'Artois contraires, et dist ainsi que il ne
this was the count of-Artois contrary and said thus that he not
s'acorderoit jà que on alast mais que en Babiloine, pour
himself-would-agree ever that one should-go but that to Babylon for
ce que c'estoit li chiés de tout le royaume d'Egypte; et dist
this that this-was the head of all the realm of-Egypt and said
ainsi, que qui vouloit tuer premier la serpent, il li devoit
thus that who wished to-kill first the serpent he it ought
esquachier le chief. Li roys lessa tous les autres conseus
crush the head The king left all the other counsels
de ses barons, et se tint au consoil de son frere.
of his barons and himself held to-the counsel of his brother

184 En l'entrée des Advens, se esmut li roys et li os
At the-entry of-the Advent himself set-out the king and the host
pour aler vers Babiloine, ainsi comme li cuens d'Artois
for to-go toward Babylon just as the count of-Artois
l'avoit loei. Assez près de Damiete, trouvames un flum qui
it-had advised Quite near to Damietta we-found a river which

issoit de la grant riviere; et fu ainsi accordei que li os
issued from the great river and was thus agreed that the host
sejournast un jour pour bouchier ledit braz, par quoy on
should-sojourn a day for to-stop the-said arm by which one
peust passer. La chose fu faite assez legierement; car l'on
could pass The thing was done quite lightly for one
boucha ledit bras rez à rez de la grant riviere, en sorte
stopped the-said arm close to close with the great river in sort
que l'yaue se tourna assez legierement avec la grant riviere.
that the-water itself turned quite lightly with the great river
A ce flum passer envoia li soudans cinq cens de ses
At this river to-pass sent the sultan five hundred of his
chevaliers, les miex montez que il pot trouver en tout son
knights the best mounted that he could find in all his
host, pour hardier l'ost le roy, pour delaier nostre alée.
host for to-harry the-host (of-)the king for to-delay our going
Le jour de la saint-Nicholas, commenda li roys que il 185
The day of the Saint-Nicholas commanded the king that they
s'atirassent pour chevauchier, et deffendi que nulz
themselves-should-array for to-ride and forbade that anyone
ne fust si hardis que il poinsist à ces Sarrazins qui
not were so bold that he should-spur at these Saracens who
venu estoient. Or avint que quant li os s'esmut pour
come were Now happened that when the host itself-set-out for
chevauchier, et li Turc virent que l'on ne poindroit pas à
to-ride and the Turks saw that one not would-spur at-all at
aus, et sorent par lour espies que li roys l'avoit deffendu, il
them and knew by their spies that the king it-had forbidden they
s'enhardirent et assemblerent aus Templiers, qui avoient
themselves-emboldened and engaged with-the Templars who had
la premiere bataille; et li uns des Turs porta un chevalier
the first battalion and the one of-the Turks bore a knight

dou Temple à terre, tout devant les piez dou cheval frere
of-the Temple to ground all before the feet of-the horse (of-)brother
Renaut de Vichiers, qui estoit lors marechaus dou Temple.
Reginald of Vichiers who was then marshal of-the Temple
186 Quant il vit ce, il escria à ses freres: «Or à aus, de par Dieu!
When he saw this he cried to his brothers Now at them on behalf-of God
car ce ne pourroie-je plus souffrir.» Il feri des esperons et
for this not could-I more suffer He struck with-the spurs and
touz li os aussi: li cheval à nos gens estoient frez, et li
all the host also the horses of our people were fresh and the
cheval aus Turs estoient jà foulei; dont je oy recorder que
horses of-the Turks were already tired whereof I heard recount that
nus n'en y avoit eschapei, que tuit ne fussent mort; et
any not-thence there had escaped but all not were dead and
plusour d'aus en estoient entrei ou flum et furent noyé.
several of-them thence were entered into-the river and were drowned
187 Il nous couvient premierement parler dou flum qui vient
It us behooves first to-speak of-the river which comes
par Egypte et de Paradis terrestre; et ces choses vous
through Egypt and from Paradise earthly and these things to-you
ramentoif-je pour vous faire entendant aucunes choses qui
recall-I for you to-make understanding some things which
affierent à ma matiere. Cis fleuves est divers de toutes autres
pertain to my matter This river is different from all other
rivieres; car quant plus viennent les autres riviere aval,
rivers for the more come the other rivers downstream
et plus y chiéent de petites rivieres et de petiz ruissiaus;
and more there fall of little rivers and of little brooks
et en ce flum n'en chiet nulles: ainçois avient ainsi
and into this river not-thence falls any rather happens so

que il vient touz en un chanel jusques en Egypte, et lors
that it comes all in one channel until into Egypt and then
giete de li sept branches, qui s'espandent parmi Egypte.
casts from itself seven branches which themselves-spread through Egypt
Et quant ce vient après la saint-Remy, les sept rivieres 188
And when this comes after the Saint-Remy the seven rivers
s'espandent par le païs et cuevrent les terres pleinnes;
themselves-spread through the country and cover the lands flat
et quant elles se retraient, li gaaingnour vont chascuns
and when they themselves withdraw the tillers go each
labourer en sa terre à une charue sanz rouelles, de quoy il
to-plow in his land with a plow without wheels with which they
tornent dedens la terre les fourmens, les orges, les comminz, le
turn within the land the wheats the barleys the cumins the
ris; et viennent si bien que nulz n'i sauroit qu'amander.
rice and they-come so well that anyone not-there would-know what-to-amend
Ne ne sait l'on dont celle creue vient, mais que de la
Nor not knows one whence that rising comes but that from the
volontei Dieu; et se ce n'estoit, nul bien ne venroient ou
will (of-)God and if this not-were any good not would-come in-the
païs, pour la grant chalour dou soleil qui arderoit tout, pour
country for the great heat of-the sun which would-burn all for
ce que il ne pluet nulle foiz ou pays. Li fluns est touzjours
this that it not rains any time in-the country The river is always
troubles; dont cil dou païs qui boire en vuelent, vers le
turbid whence those of-the country who to-drink thereof wish toward the
soir le prennent, et esquachent quatre amendes ou quatre
evening it take and crush four almonds or four
feves; et l'endemain est si bone à boire que riens n'i faut.
beans and the-next-day it-is so good to drink that anything not-there lacks

189 Avant que li fluns entre en Egypte, les gens qui ont
Before that the river enters into Egypt the people who have
acoustumei à ce faire, gietent lour roys desliées parmi le
accustomed to this do cast their nets unfolded through the
flum au soir; et quant ce vient au matin, si treuvent en
river at-the evening and when this comes to-the morning so they-find in
lour royz cel avoir de poiz que l'on aporte en ceste terre,
their nets that wealth of weight which one brings into this land
c'est à savoir gingimbre, rubarbe, lignaloecy et canele. Et
this-is to know ginger rhubarb aloes-wood and cinnamon And
dit l'on que ces choses viennent de Paradis terrestre; que li
says one that these things come from Paradise earthly which the
venz abat des arbres qui sont en Paradis, aussi comme
wind beats-down from-the trees which are in Paradise just as
li venz abat en la forest en cest païs le bois sec;
the wind beats-down in the forest in this country the wood dry
et ce qui chiet dou bois sec ou flum, nous vendent li
and that which falls of-the wood dry into-the river us sell the
marcheant en ce païz. L'yaue dou flum est de tel nature,
merchants in this country The-water of-the river is of such nature
que quant nous la pendiens (en poz de terre blans que l'en
that when we it hung in pots of earth white which one
fait ou païs) aus cordes de nos paveillons, l'yaue devenoit
makes in-the country by-the ropes of our pavilions the-water became
ou chaut dou jour aussi froide comme de fonteinne.
in-the heat of-the day as cold as of fountain
190 Il disoient ou païs que li soudans de Babiloine avoit
They said in-the country that the sultan of Babylon had
mainte foiz essaié dont li fluns venoit; et y envoioit
many time tried whence the river came and there sent
gens qui portoient une maniere de pains que l'on appelle
people who carried a manner of breads which one calls

becuis, pour ce que il sont cuit par dous foiz; et de ce
biscuits for this that they are cooked by two times and of this
pain vivoient tant que il revenoient arieres au soudanc.
bread they-lived until that they came back to-the sultan
Et raportoient que il avoient cerchié le flum, et que il
And they-reported that they had searched the river and that they
estoient venu à un grant tertre de roches taillies, là où
were come to a great hill of rocks cut there where
nulz n'avoit pooir de monter. De ce tertre chéoit li fluns,
anyone not-had power to climb From this hill fell the river
et lour sembloit que il y eust grant foison d'arbres en
and to-them seemed that it there had great plenty of-trees on
la montaigne en haut; et disoient que il avoient trouvei
the mountain on high and said that they had found
merveilles de diverses bestes sauvaiges et de diverses façons,
marvels of diverse beasts wild and of diverse fashions
lyons, serpens, oliphans, qui les venoient regarder dessus
lions serpents elephants which them came to-look-at from-above
la riviere de l'yaue, aussi comme il aloient amont.
the bank of the-water just as they went upstream
Or revenons à nostre premiere matiere, et disons ainsi que 191
Now let-us-return to our first matter and let-us-say thus that
quant li fluns vient en Egypte, il giete ses branches aussi
when the river comes into Egypt it casts its branches just
comme je ai jà dit devant. L'une de ses branches va en
as I have already said before The-one of its branches goes to
Damiete, l'autre en Alixandre, la tierce à Tenis, la quarte
Damietta the-other to Alexandria the third to Tanis the fourth
à Raxi. Et à celle branche qui va à Rexi, vint li roys
to Rexi And at that branch which goes to Rexi came the king
de France atout son ost; et si se logea entre le flum
of France with his host and so himself lodged between the river

de Damiette et celui de Rexi; et toute la puissance dou
of Damietta and that of Rexi and all the power of-the
soudanc se logierent sur le flum de Rexi, d'autre part,
sultan themselves lodged on the river of Rexi on-other side
devant nostre ost, pour nous deffendre le passaige: laquex
before our host for us to-forbid the passage which
chose lour estoit legiere à faire; car nulz ne pooit passer
thing to-them was easy to do for anyone not could pass
ladite yaue par devers aus, se nous ne la passiens à nou.
the-said water by toward them if we not it passed by swimming

The Causeway

XIX

For a causeway across the river the king builds two cat-castles and eighteen engines; the Saracens' sixteen engines shoot back, and pits they dig undo the work. On Christmas Day Turks raid the camp, and Joinville's knights rescue Peter of Avallon. Their chief Fakhr-ad-Din, said to have been knighted by the emperor Frederick, boasts that he will dine in the king's tents; when his men cross, the king of Sicily routs them.

192 Li roys ot consoil que il feroit faire une chaucie par mi
The king had counsel that he would-have made a causeway through midst
la riviere pour passer vers les Sarrazins. Pour garder ceux
the river for to-pass toward the Saracens For to-guard those
qui ouvreroient à la chaucie, fist faire li roys dous beffrois
who would-work at the causeway had made the king two belfries
que l'on appelle chas-chastiaus: car il avoit dous chastiaus
which one calls cat-castles for it had two castles
devant les chas et dous massons darrieres les chastiaus,
before the cats and two sheds behind the castles

pour couvrir ceus qui guieteroient, pour les cos des engins
for to-cover those who would-watch for the blows of-the engines
aus Sarrazins, liquel avoient seize engins touz drois.
of-the Saracens which had sixteen engines all straight
Quant nous venimes là, li roys fist faire dix-huit engins, 193
When we came there the king had made eighteen engines
dont Jocelins de Cornaut estoit maistres engingnierres. Nostre
of-which Jocelin of Cornaut was master engineer Our
engin getoient aus lour, et li lour aus nostres; mais onques
engines threw at-the theirs and the theirs at-the ours but ever
n'oy dire que li nostre feissent biaucop. Li frere le
I-not-heard say that the ours did much The brothers (of-)the
roy guietoient de jour, et nous, li autre chevalier, guietiens
king watched by day and we the other knights watched
de nuit les chaz. Nous venimes la semainne devant Nouël.
by night the cats We came the week before Christmas
Maintenant que li chat furent fait, l'on emprist à faire 194
As-soon as the cats were made one undertook to make
la chaucie, pour ce que li roys ne vouloit que li Sarrazin
the causeway for this that the king not wished that the Saracens
blesassent ceus qui portoient la terre, liquel traioient à nous
should-wound those who carried the earth who shot at us
de visée parmi le flum. A celle chaucie faire furent aveuglei
with aim across the river At that causeway making were blinded
li roys et tuit li baron de l'ost; car pour ce que il avoient
the king and all the barons of the-host for for this that they had
bouchié l'un des bras dou flum, aussi comme je vous ai
stopped the-one of-the arms of-the river just as I to-you have
dit devant (lequel il firent legierement, pour ce que il
said before which they did lightly for this that they
pristrent à bouchier là où il partoit dou grant flum),
took to stop there where it parted from-the great river

et par cesti fait cuidierent-il bouchier le flum de Raxi, qui
and by this deed thought-they to-stop the river of Rexi which
estoit jà partis dou grant fleuve bien demie lieue aval.
was already parted from-the great river fully half league downstream
195 Et pour destourber la chaucie que li roys fesoit, li
And for to-hinder the causeway that the king made the
Sarrazin fesoient faire caves en terre par devers lour ost;
Saracens had made pits in ground by toward their host
et si tost comme li fluns venoit aus caves, li fluns se
and so soon as the river came to-the pits the river itself
flatissoit es caves dedens et refaisoit une grant fosse.
dashed into-the pits within and remade a great ditch
Dont il avenoit ainsi que tout ce que nous aviens fait en
Whence it happened thus that all that which we had made in
trois semainnes, il nous deffesoient tout en un jour, pour
three weeks they us undid all in one day for
ce que tout ce que nous bouchiens dou flum devers nous,
this that all that which we stopped of-the river toward us
il relargissoient devers aus pour les caves que il fesoient.
they widened-again toward them by the pits that they made
196 Pour le soudanc qui estoit mors, et de la maladie que il prist
For the sultan who was dead and of the sickness that he took
devant Hamant la citei, il avoient fait chievetain d'un Sarrazin
before Hama the city they had made chieftain of-a Saracen
qui avoit à non Scecedin le fil au seic. L'on disoit que li
who had to name Fakhr-ad-Din the son of-the sheikh One said that the
emperieres Ferris l'avoit fait chevalier. Cil manda à une partie
emperor Frederick him-had made knight He sent-word to a part
de sa gent que il venissent assaillir nostre ost par devers
of his people that they should-come to-assail our host by toward
Damiete, et il si firent; car il alerent passer à une ville qui
Damietta and they so did for they went to-cross at a town which

est sur le flum de Rixi, qui a non Sormesac. Le jour Noël,
is on the river of Rexi which has name Sharimshah The day (of-)Christmas
je et mi chevalier mangiens avec mon signour Perron d'Avalon:
I and my knights ate with my lord Peter of-Avallon
tandis que nous mangiens, il vindrent, ferant des esperons,
while that we ate they came striking with-the spurs
jusques à nostre ost, et occistrent plusours povres gens qui
until to our host and killed several poor people who
estoient alei aus chans à pié. Nous nous alames armer.
were gone to-the fields on foot We ourselves went to-arm
Nous ne seumes onques si tost revenir que nous ne trouvissiens 197
We not could ever so quickly come-back that we not should-find
mon signour Perron, notre oste, qui estoit au dehors de
my lord Peter our host who was at-the outside of
l'ost, qui en fu alez après les Sarrasins. Nous ferimes des
the-host who thence was gone after the Saracens We struck with-the
esperons après, et le rescousismes aus Sarrazins, qui l'avoient
spurs after and him rescued from-the Saracens who him-had
tirié à terre; et li et son frere, le signour dou Val, arrieres
pulled to ground and him and his brother the lord of-the Val back
en remenames en l'ost. Li Templier, qui estoient venu au
thence brought into the-host The Templars who were come at-the
cri, firent l'ariere-garde bien et hardiement. Li Turc nous
cry made the-rearguard well and boldly The Turks us
vindrent hardoiant jusques en nostre ost: pour ce commanda
came harrying until into our host for this commanded
li roys que l'on clousist nostre ost de fossés par devers
the king that one should-close our host with ditches by toward
Damiete, depuis le flum de Damiete jusques au flum de Rexi.
Damietta from the river of Damietta until to-the river of Rexi

198 Scecedins, que je vous ai devant nommei (li chievetains
Fakhr-ad-Din whom I to-you have before named the chieftain
des Turs), si estoit li plus prisiés de toute la paennime.
of-the Turks so was the most prized of all the heathendom
En sa baniere portoit les armes l'empereour qui l'avoit fait
On his banner he-bore the arms (of-)the-emperor who him-had made
chevalier. Sa baniere estoit bandée: en l'une des bandes
knight His banner was striped in the-one of-the stripes
estoient les armes l'empereour qui l'avoit fait chevalier;
were the arms (of-)the-emperor who him-had made knight
en l'autre estoient les armes le soudanc de Halape; en
in the-other were the arms (of-)the sultan of Aleppo in
l'autre bande estoient les au soudanc de Babiloine.
the-other stripe were those of-the sultan of Babylon

199 Ses nons estoit Secedin le fil seic; ce vaut autant à dire
His name was Secedin the son (of-)sheikh this is-worth as-much to say
comme le vieil le fil au vieil. Celuy non tenoient-il à
as the old-man the son of-the old-man That name held-they at
mout grant chose en la paiennime; car ce sont les gens ou
very great thing in the heathendom for these are the people in-the
monde qui plus honneurent gens anciennes, puis que il est
world who most honor people ancient since that it is
ainsi que Diex les ait gardés de vilain reproche jusques
so that God them may-have kept from churlish reproach until
en lour vieillesce. Secedins, cis vaillans Turs, aussi comme les
in their old-age Fakhr-ad-Din this valiant Turk just as the
espies le roy le raporterent, se vanta que il mangeroit, le
spies (of-)the king it reported himself boasted that he would-eat the
jour de la feste de saint Sebastien, es paveillons le roy.
day of the feast of saint Sebastian in-the pavilions (of-)the king

Li roys, qui sot ces choses, atira son host en tel maniere que 200
The king who knew these things arrayed his host in such manner that
li cuens d'Artois, ses freres, garderoit les chaz et les engins;
the count of-Artois his brother would-guard the cats and the engines
li roys et li cuens d'Anjou, qui puis fu roys de Secile, furent
the king and the count of-Anjou who after was king of Sicily were
establi à garder l'ost par devers Babiloinne; et li cuens de
established to guard the-host by toward Babylon and the count of
Poitiers, et nous de Champaigne, garderiens l'ost par devers
Poitiers and we of Champagne would-guard the-host by toward
Damiete. Or avint ainsi que li princes des Turs devant
Damietta Now happened so that the prince of-the Turks before
nommez fist passer sa gent en l'ille qui est entre le flum de
named had cross his people into the-isle which is between the river of
Damiete et le flum de Rexi, là où nostre os estoit logiez; et
Damietta and the river of Rexi there where our host was lodged and
fist rangier ses batailles dès l'un des fleuves jusques à l'autre.
had ranged his battalions from the-one of-the rivers until to the-other
A celle gent assembla li roys de Sezile et les desconfist. 201
With that people engaged the king of Sicily and them discomfited
Mout en y ot de noiez en l'un fleuve et en l'autre; et
Many thereof there had of drowned in the-one river and in the-other and
toutes voies en demoura il grant partie ausquiex on n'osa
all ways thereof remained it great part with-whom one not-dared
assembler, pour ce que li engin des Sarrasins getoient parmi
engage for this that the engines of-the Saracens shot across
les dous fleuves. A l'assembler que li roys de Sezile fist
the two rivers At the-engaging that the king of Sicily made
aus Turs, li cuens Guis de Forez tresperça l'ost des Turs
with-the Turks the count Guy of Forez pierced-through the-host of-the Turks
à cheval, et assembla il et sui chevalier à une bataille de
on horse and engaged he and his knights with a battalion of

Sarrazins serjans qui le porterent à terre; et ot la jambe
Saracen sergeants who him bore to ground and he-had the leg
brisie, et dui de ses chevaliers le ramenerent par les bras.
broken and two of his knights him brought-back by the arms
A grant peinne firent traire le roy de Sezile dou peril
With great pain they-had drawn the king of Sicily from-the peril
là où il estoit, et mout fu prisiez de celle journée.
there where he was and much was-he prized for that day
202 Li Turc vindrent au conte de Poitiers et à nous, et
The Turks came to-the count of Poitiers and to us and
nous lour courumes sus et les chassames grant piesce;
we them ran upon and them chased great while
de lour gens y ot occis, et revenimes sanz perdre.
of their people there had killed and we-came-back without losing

The Greek Fire

XX

One night the Saracens throw Greek fire at the cat-castles, and Walter of Écurey has the knights fall on their elbows and knees and pray. Joinville describes the fire, big as a barrel, with a tail like a lance, coming like a dragon through the air; each time it is thrown the king raises his hands and weeps for his people. The cat-castles burn on the king of Sicily's watch; the barons give their ships' timber for a new one, and that burns too.

203 Un soir avint, là où nous guietiens les chas chastiaus de
One evening happened there where we watched the cat castles by
nuit, que il nous avierent un engin que l'on appele perriere,
night that they us brought-up an engine which one calls petrary
ce que il n'avoient encore fait, et mistrent le feu gregoiz
this which they not-had yet done and put the fire Greek

en la fonde de l'engin. Quant mes sires Gautiers d'Escuiré, li
into the sling of the-engine When my lord Walter of-Écurey the
bons chevaliers, qui estoit avec moy, vit ce, il nous dist ainsi:
good knight who was with me saw this he us said thus
«Signour, nous sommes ou plus grant peril que nous 204
Lords we are in-the most great peril that we
fussiens onques mais; car se il ardent nos chastiaus et nous
were ever more for if they burn our castles and we
demourons, nous sommes perdu et ars; et se nous lessons
remain we are lost and burned and if we leave
nos deffenses que l'on nous a baillies à garder, nous soumes
our defenses that one us has given to guard we are
honni; dont nulz de cest peril ne nous puet deffendre, fors que
shamed whence anyone from this peril not us can defend except that
Dieu. Si vous lo et conseil que toutes les foiz que il nous
God So you I-advise and counsel that all the times that they us
geteront le feu, que nous nous metons à coutes et à genouz,
will-cast the fire that we ourselves put on elbows and on knees
et prions Nostre Signour que il nous gart de ce peril.»
and pray Our Lord that he us may-guard from this peril
Si tost comme il geterent le premier cop, nous nous 205
So soon as they cast the first throw we ourselves
meismes à coutes et à genouz, ainsi comme il nous avoit
put on elbows and on knees just as he us had
enseignié. Li premiers cos que il jeterent vint entre nos dous
taught The first throw that they cast came between our two
chas-chastiaus, et chaï en la place devant nous que li os
cat-castles and fell in the place before us which the host
avoit faite pour bouchier le fleuve. Nostre esteingnour furent
had made for to-stop the river Our extinguishers were
appareillié pour estaindre le feu; et pour ce que li Sarrazin
made-ready for to-quench the fire and for this that the Saracens

ne pooient traire à aus, pour les dous eles des paveillons
not could shoot at them for the two wings of-the pavilions
que li roys y avoit fait faire, il traioient tout droit vers
that the king there had had made they shot all straight toward
les nues, si que li pylet lour chéoient tout droit vers aus.
the clouds so that the bolts to-them fell all straight toward them
206 La maniere dou feu gregois estoit teix que il venoit bien devant
The manner of-the fire Greek was such that it came fully in-front
aussi gros comme uns tonniaus de verjus, et la queue dou feu
as big as a cask of verjuice and the tail of-the fire
qui partoit de li, estoit bien aussi grans comme uns grans
which parted from it was fully as great as a great
glaives. Il faisoit tel noise au venir, que il sembloit que ce
lance It made such noise at-the coming that it seemed that this
fust la foudre dou ciel; il sembloit un dragon qui volast par
were the thunderbolt of-the sky it seemed a dragon which might-fly through
l'air. Tant getoit grant clartei que l'on véoit aussi clair parmi
the-air So-much it-cast great brightness that one saw as clear through
l'ost comme se il fust jours, pour la grant foison dou feu qui
the-host as if it were day for the great plenty of-the fire which
getoit la grant clartei. Trois foiz nous geterent le feu gregois celi
cast the great brightness Three times us they-cast the fire Greek that
soir, et le nous lancierent quatre foiz à l'arbalestre à tour.
evening and it us they-hurled four times with the-crossbow with winch
207 Toutes les foiz que nostre sains roys ooit que il nous
All the times that our holy king heard that they us
getoient le feu grejois, il s'en estoit en son lit, et
cast the fire Greek he himself-thence stood in his bed and
tendoit ses mains vers Nostre Signour, et disoit en plourant:
stretched his hands toward Our Lord and said in weeping
«Biaux Sire Diex, gardez-moy ma gent!» Et je croi vraiement
Fair Lord God guard-me my people And I believe truly

que ses prieres nous orent bien mestier ou besoing. Le soir,
that his prayers us had well need at need The evening
toutes les foiz que li feus estoit cheus, il nous envoioit
all the times that the fire was fallen he us sent
un de ses chamberlans pour savoir en quel point nous
one of his chamberlains for to-know in what point we
estiens, et se li feus nous avoit fait point de doumaige.
were and if the fire us had done at-all of harm
L'une des foiz que il nous geterent, si chéi encoste le 208
The-one of-the times that they us cast so it-fell beside the
chat-chastel que les gens mon signour de Courtenay gardoient,
cat-castle that the people (of-)my lord of Courtenay guarded
et feri en la rive dou flum. A tant es-vous un chevalier qui
and struck on the bank of-the river At this behold-you a knight who
avoit non l'Aubigoiz: «Sire, fist-il à moy, se vous ne nous
had name the-Albigensian Lord said-he to me if you not us
aidiés, nous sommes tuit ars; car li Sarrazin ont tant trait
help we are all burned for the Saracens have so-much shot
de lour pylés, que il a aussi comme une grant haye qui vient
of their bolts that it has just as a great hedge which comes
ardant vers nostre chastel.» Nous saillimes sus et alames
burning toward our castle We leapt up and went
là, et trouvames que il disoit voir. Nous esteingnimes le
there and found that he said true We quenched the
feu, et avant que nous l'eussiens estaint, nous chargierent li
fire and before that we it-had quenched us loaded the
Sarrazin touz de pylés que il traioient ou travers dou flum.
Saracens all with bolts that they shot in-the crosswise of-the river
Li frere le roy gaitoient les chas-chastiaus de jour, et 209
The brothers (of-)the king watched the cat-castles by day and
montoient ou chastel en haut, pour traire aus Sarrazins
climbed into-the castle on high for to-shoot at-the Saracens

des arbalestres de quarriaus qui aloient par mi l'ost aus
with-the crossbows of quarrels which went through midst the-host to-the
Sarrazins. Or avoit li roys ainsi atirié que, quant li roys de
Saracens Now had the king thus arranged that when the king of
Sezile guietoit de jour les chas-chastiaus, et nous les deviens
Sicily watched by day the cat-castles and we them ought
guietier de nuit. Celle journée que li roys de Sezile guieta
watch by night That day that the king of Sicily watched
de jour, et nous deviens guietier la nuit; et nous estiens
by day and we ought watch the night and we were
en grant mesaise de cuer, pour ce que li Sarrazin avoient
in great unease of heart for this that the Saracens had
tout confroissié nos chas-chastiaus. Li Sarrazin amenerent la
all smashed our cat-castles The Saracens brought the
perriere de grant jour, ce que il n'avoient encore fait que
petrary by great day this which they not-had yet done but
de nuit, et geterent le feu gregois en nos chas-chastiaus.
by night and cast the fire Greek into our cat-castles
210 Lour engins avoient si acouplez aus chaucies que li os
Their engines they-had so coupled to-the causeways that the host
avoit faites pour bouchier le flum, que nulz n'osoit aler aus
had made for to-stop the river that anyone not-dared go to-the
chas-chastiaus, pour les engins qui getoient les grans pierres, et
cat-castles for the engines which cast the great stones and
chéoient en la voie. Dont il avint ainsi que nostre dui chastel
fell on the way Whence it happened thus that our two castles
furent ars; dont li roys de Sezile estoit si hors dou sens, que
were burned whereof the king of Sicily was so out of-the sense that
il se vouloit aler ferir ou feu pour estaindre; et se il
he himself wished to-go to-strike into-the fire for to-quench and if he

en fu courouciez, je et mi chevalier en loames Dieu; car
thereof was angered I and my knights thereof praised God for
se nous eussiens guietié le soir, nous eussiens estei tuit ars.
if we had watched the evening we would-have been all burned
Quant li roys vit ce, il envoia querre touz les barons de 211
When the king saw this he sent to-seek all the barons of
l'ost, et lour pria que chascuns li donnast dou merrien
the-host and them prayed that each to-him should-give of-the timber
de ses neis pour faire un chat pour bouchier le flum;
of his ships for to-make a cat for to-stop the river
et lour moustra que il véoient bien que il n'i avoit
and to-them showed that they saw well that it not-there had
boiz dont on le peust faire, se ce n'estoit dou merrien
wood whereof one it could make if this not-were of-the timber
des neis qui avoient amenei nos harnois amont. Il en
of-the ships which had brought our harness upstream They thereof
donnerent ce que chascuns vout; et quant cis chas fu
gave that which each wished and when this cat was
fais, li merriens fu prisiez à dix mille livres et plus.
made the timber was valued at ten thousand pounds and more
Li roys atira aussi que l'on ne bouteroit le chat avant en 212
The king arranged thus that one not would-thrust the cat forward on
la chaucie jusques à tant que li jours venroit que li roys
the causeway until to so-much that the day would-come that the king
de Sezile devoit guietier, pour restorer la meschéance des
of Sicily ought watch for to-restore the mischance of-the
autres chastiaus qui furent ars à son guiet. Ainsi comme
other castles which were burned at his watch Just as
l'on l'ot atirié, ainsi fu fait; car si tost comme li roys de
one it-had arranged so was done for so soon as the king of

Sezile fu venus à son gait, il fist bouter le chat jusques
Sicily was come to his watch he had thrust the cat until
au lieu là ou li dui autre chat-chastel avoient estei ars.
to-the place there where the two other cat-castles had been burned
213 Quant li Sarrazin virent ce, il atirierent que tuit lour seize
When the Saracens saw this they arranged that all their sixteen
engin geteroient sur la chaucie, là où li chas estoit venus.
engines would-cast on the causeway there where the cat was come
Et quant il virent que nostre gent redoutoient à aler au
And when they saw that our people feared to go to-the
chat, pour les pierres des engins qui chéoient sur la chaucie
cat for the stones of-the engines which fell on the causeway
par où li chas estoit venus, il amenerent la perriere, et
by where the cat was come they brought the petrary and
geterent le feu grejois ou chat et l'ardirent tout. Ceste
cast the fire Greek into-the cat and it-burned all This
grant courtoisie fist Diex à moy et à mes chevaliers; car nous
great courtesy did God to me and to my knights for we
eussiens le soir guietié en grant peril, aussi comme nous
would-have the evening watched in great peril just as we
eussiens fait, à l'autre guiet, dont je vous ai parlei devant.
would-have done at the-other watch of-which I to-you have spoken before

The Ford, and the Count of Artois

XXI

A Bedouin shows a ford for five hundred bezants, paid in advance. On Shrove Tuesday the king and his brothers cross, and some men drown. The count of Artois, who should follow the Templars, charges ahead, and they chase the Turks through the Mansourah, where he and some three hundred knights are killed. Joinville kills a Saracen, meets about six thousand Turks, and holds a ruined house with his wounded knights until Erard of Siverey brings the count of Anjou to their rescue.

Quant li roys vist ce, il manda touz ses barons pour avoir 214
When the king saw this he summoned all his barons for to-have
consoil. Or acorderent entre aus que il n'averoient pooir
counsel Now they-agreed between them that they not-would-have power
de faire chaucie par quoy ils peussent passer par devers
to make causeway by which they could pass by toward
les Sarrazins, pour ce que nostre gent ne savoient tant
the Saracens for this that our people not knew so-much
bouchier d'une part comme il en desbouchoient d'autre.
stop on-one side as they thence unstopped on-other
Lors dist li connestables messires Hymbers de Biaujeu au 215
Then said the constable my-lord Imbert of Beaujeu to-the
roy, que uns Beduyns estoit venus qui li avoit dit que il
king that a Bedouin was come who to-him had said that he
enseigneroit un bon guei, mais que l'ont li donnast cinq
would-show a good ford provided that one to-him should-give five
cens besans. Li roys dist que il s'acordoit que on li
hundred bezants The king said that he himself-agreed that one to-him
donnast, mais que il tenist veritei de ce que il prometoit. Li
should-give provided that he held truth of this that he promised The
connestables en parla au Beduyn, et il dist que il nen
constable thereof spoke to-the Bedouin and he said that he not-thereof

enseigneroit jà guei se l'on ne li donnoit les deniers avant.
would-show ever ford if one not to-him gave the pence before
Acordei fu que l'on les li bailleroit, et donnei li furent.
Agreed was that one them to-him would-give and given to-him they-were
216 Li roys atira que li dus de Bourgoingne et li riche home
The king arranged that the duke of Burgundy and the rich men
d'outre mer qui estoient en l'ost, guieteroient l'ost, pour
of-over sea who were in the-host would-guard the-host for
ce que l'on n'i feist doumaige; et que li roys et sui
this that one not-there should-do harm and that the king and his
troi frere passeroient ou guei là où li Beduyns devoit
three brothers would-cross at-the ford there where the Bedouin ought
enseignier. Ceste chose fu emprise et atirie à passer le jour de
show This thing was undertaken and arranged to cross the day of
quaresme-prenant, à laquel journée nous venimes au guei le
Shrove-Tuesday on which day we came to-the ford (of-)the
Beduyn. Aussi comme l'aube dou jour apparoit, nous nous
Bedouin Just as the-dawn of-the day appeared we ourselves
atirames de touz poins; et quant nous fumes atirié, nous en
arrayed at all points and when we were arrayed we thence
alames ou flum, et furent nostre cheval à nou. Quant nous
went into-the river and were our horses at swimming When we
fumes alei jusques en mi le flum, si trouvames terre là où
were gone until into midst the river so we-found ground there where
nostre cheval pristrent pié; et sur la rive dou flum, trouvames
our horses took footing and on the bank of-the river we-found
bien trois cens Sarrazins touz montez sur lour chevaus.
fully three hundred Saracens all mounted on their horses
217 Lors diz-je à ma gent: «Signour, ne regardez qu'à main
Then said-I to my people Lords not look but-to hand
senestre, pour ce que chascuns i tire; les rives sont
left for this that each there draws the banks are

moillies, et li cheval lour chiéent sur les cors et les
wet and the horses on-them fall upon the bodies and them
noient.» Et il estoit bien voirs que il en y ot des noiés
drown And it was well true that it thence there had of-the drowned
au passer, et entre les autres fu naiez mes sires Jehans
at-the crossing and among the others was drowned my lord John
d'Orliens, qui portoit baniere à la voivre. Nous acordames
of-Orléans who bore banner with the wivern We agreed
en tel maniere que nous tournames encontremont l'yaue,
in such manner that we turned upstream the-water
et trouvames la voie essuyée; et passames en tel maniere,
and found the way dried and crossed in such manner
la merci Dieu, que onques nuls de nous n'i chéi; et
the mercy (of-)God that ever any of us not-there fell and
maintenant que nous fumes passei, li Turc s'enfouirent.
as-soon as we were crossed the Turks themselves-fled
L'on avoit ordenei que li Temples feroit l'avant-garde, et 218
One had ordained that the Temple would-make the-vanguard and
li cuens d'Artois averoit la seconde bataille après le Temple.
the count of-Artois would-have the second battalion after the Temple
Or avint ainsi que si tost comme li cuens d'Artois ot
Now happened so that so soon as the count of-Artois had
passei le flum, il et toute sa gent ferirent aus Turs qui
crossed the river he and all his people struck at-the Turks who
s'enfuioient devant aus. Li Temples li manda que il lour
themselves-fled before them The Temple to-him sent-word that he to-them
fesoit grant vileinnie, quant il devoit aler après aus et il
did great villainy when he ought go after them and he
aloit devant; et li prioient que il les laissast aler devant,
went before and him prayed that he them should-let go before
aussi comme il avoit estei acordei par le roy. Or avint
just as it had been agreed by the king Now happened

ainsi que li cuens d'Artois ne lour osa respondre, pour
so that the count of-Artois not to-them dared answer for
mon signour Fourcaut dou Merle qui le tenoit par le frain;
my lord Foucaud of-the Merle who him held by the bridle
et cis Fourcaus dou Merle, qui mout estoit bons chevaliers,
and this Foucaud of-the Merle who very was good knight
n'oioit chose que li Templier deissent au conte, pour ce
not-heard thing that the Templars said to-the count for this
que il estoit sours; et escrioit: «Or à aus, or à aus!»
that he was deaf and cried Now at them now at them
219 Quant li Templier virent ce, il se penserent que il
When the Templars saw this they themselves thought that they
seroient honni se il lessoient le conte d'Artois aler devant aus;
would-be shamed if they let the count of-Artois go before them
si ferirent des esperons, qui plus plus et qui miex miex, et
so they-struck with-the spurs who more more and who better better and
chacierent les Turs, qui s'enfuioient devant aus, tout parmi la
chased the Turks who themselves-fled before them all through the
ville de la Massoure jusques aus chans par devers Babiloine.
town of the Mansourah until to-the fields by toward Babylon
Quant il cuidierent retourner arieres, li Turc lour lancierent
When they thought to-return back the Turks to-them hurled
trez et merrien parmi les rues, qui estoient estroites. Là fu
beams and timber through the streets which were narrow There was
mors li cuens d'Artois, li sires de Couci que l'on appeloit
dead the count of-Artois the lord of Coucy whom one called
Raoul, et tant des autres chevaliers que il furent esmei à
Ralph and so-many of-the other knights that they were reckoned at
trois cens. Li Temples, ainsi comme li maistres le me dist
three hundred The Temple just as the master it me said
depuis, y perdi quatorze vins homes armés, et touz à cheval.
since there lost fourteen score men armed and all on horse

Je et mi chevalier acordames que nous iriens sus courre à 220
I and my knights agreed that we would-go upon to-run at
plusours Turs qui chargoient lour harnois à main senestre
several Turks who loaded their harness on hand left
en lour ost, et lour courumes sus. Endementres que nous
in their host and them we-ran upon While that we
les chaciens parmi l'ost, je resgardai un Sarrazin qui montoit
them chased through the-host I looked-at a Saracen who mounted
sur son cheval: uns siens chevaliers li tenoit le frain.
on his horse one his knight to-him held the bridle
Là où il tenoit ses dous mains à sa selle pour monter, 221
There where he held his two hands to his saddle for to-mount
je li donnai de mon glaive par desous les esselles et
I to-him gave with my lance by below the armpits and
le getai mort; et quant ses chevaliers vit ce, il laissa
him threw dead and when his knight saw this he left
son signour et son cheval, et m'apoia, au passer que je
his lord and his horse and me-pressed at-the passing that I
fis, de son glaive entre les dous espaules, et me coucha
made with his lance between the two shoulders and me laid
sur le col de mon cheval, et me tint si pressei que je
on the neck of my horse and me held so pressed that I
ne pouoie traire m'espée que j'avoie ceinte. Si me couvint
not could draw my-sword that I-had girt So me behooved
traire l'espée qui estoit à mon cheval; et quant il vit que
to-draw the-sword which was at my horse and when he saw that
j'oz m'espée traite, si tira son glaive à li et me lessa.
I-had my-sword drawn so drew his lance to him and me left
Quant je et mi chevalier venimes hors de l'ost aus 222
When I and my knights came out of the-host of-the
Sarrazins, nous trouvames bien six mille Turs, par esme,
Saracens we found fully six thousand Turks by reckoning

qui avoient lessies lour herberges et se estoient trait aus
who had left their lodgings and themselves were drawn to-the
chans. Quant il nous virent, il nous vindrent sus courre,
fields When they us saw they us came upon to-run
et occistrent mon signour Huon de Trichastel, signour de
and killed my lord Hugh of Trichâtel lord of
Conflans, qui estoit avec moy à baniere. Je et mi chevalier
Conflans who was with me with banner I and my knights
ferimes des esperons, et alames rescourre mon signour Raoul
struck with-the spurs and went to-rescue my lord Ralph
de Wanou, qui estoit avec moy, que il avoient tirié à terre.
of Wanou who was with me whom they had pulled to ground
223 Endementieres que je en revenoie, li Turc m'apuierent de
While that I thence came-back the Turks me-pressed with
lour glaives; mes chevaus s'agenoilla pour le fais que il
their lances my horse himself-knelt for the burden that he
senti, et je en alai outre parmi les oreilles dou cheval. Et
felt and I thence went beyond through the ears of-the horse And
me resdreçai, au plus tost que je peu, mon escu à mon
myself straightened at-the most soon that I could my shield at my
col et m'espée en ma main; et mes sires Erars de Severey
neck and my-sword in my hand and my lord Erard of Siverey
(que Diex absoille!), qui estoit entour moy, vint à moy
whom God absolve who was about me came to me
et nous dist que nous nous treissiens emprès une maison
and us said that we ourselves should-draw beside a house
deffaite, et illec atenderiens le roy qui venoit. Ainsi comme
undone and there would-await the king who came Just as
nous en aliens à pié et à cheval, une grans route de
we thence went on foot and on horse a great troop of

Turs vint hurter à nous, et me porterent à terre, et alerent
Turks came to-hurtle at us and me bore to ground and went
par dessus moy, et firent voler mon escu de mon col.
by over me and made fly my shield from my neck
Et quant il furent outre passei, mes sires Erars de Syverey 224
And when they were beyond passed my lord Erard of Siverey
revint sur moy et m'emmena, et en alames jusques aus
came-back over me and me-led-away and thence we-went until to-the
murs de la maison deffaite; et illec revindrent à nous mes sires
walls of the house undone and there came-back to us my lord
Hugues d'Escoz, mes sires Ferris de Loupey, mes sires Renaus
Hugh of-Écot my lord Frederick of Loupey my lord Reginald
de Menoncourt. Illec li Turc nous assailloient de toutes pars;
of Menoncourt There the Turks us assailed from all sides
une partie d'aus entrerent en la maison deffaite, et nous
a part of-them entered into the house undone and us
piquoient de lour glaives par desus. Lors me dirent mi chevalier
pricked with their lances by above Then me said my knights
que je les preisse par les frains; et je si fis pour ce que li
that I them should-take by the bridles and I so did for this that the
cheval ne s'enfouissent. Et il se deffendoient des Turs
horses not themselves-should-flee And they themselves defended from-the Turks
si vigoureusement; car il furent loei de touz les preudomes de
so vigorously for they were praised by all the worthy-men of
l'ost, et de ceus qui virent le fait et de ceus qui l'oïrent dire.
the-host and by those who saw the deed and by those who it-heard say
Là fu navrez mes sires Hugues d'Escoz de trois glaives ou 225
There was wounded my lord Hugh of-Écot with three lances in-the
visaige, et mes sires Raous, et mes sires Ferris de Loupey
face and my lord Ralph and my lord Frederick of Loupey
d'un glaive parmi les espaules; et fu la plaie si large que
with-a lance through the shoulders and was the wound so wide that

li sans li venoit dou cors aussi comme li bondons d'un
the blood to-him came from-the body just as the bung of-a
tonnel. Mes sires Erars de Syverey fu ferus d'une espée parmi
cask My lord Erard of Siverey was struck with-a sword through
le visaige, si que li nez li chéoit sus le levre. Et lors il
the face so that the nose to-him fell upon the lip And then it
me souvint de mon signour saint Jaque, que je requis: «Biaus
me remembered of my lord saint James whom I besought Fair
sire sains Jacques, aidiés-moy et secourez à ce besoing.»
lord saint James help-me and succor at this need
226 Maintenant que j'oi faite ma priere, mes sires Erars de Syverey
As-soon as I-had made my prayer my lord Erard of Siverey
me dist: «Sire, se vous cuidiés que je ne mi hoir n'eussiens
me said Lord if you thought that I nor my heirs not-should-have
reprouvier, je vous iroie querre secours au conte d'Anjou,
reproach I you would-go to-seek help to-the count of-Anjou
que je voi là en mi les chans.» Et je li dis: «Mes sires
whom I see there in midst the fields And I to-him said My lord
Erars, il me semble que vous feriés vostre grant honour, se
Erard it me seems that you would-do your great honor if
vous nous aliés querre aide pour nos vies sauver; car la vostre
you us went to-seek aid for our lives to-save for the yours
est bien en avanture.» Et je disoie bien voir; car il fu mors de
is well in hazard And I said well true for he was dead of
celle bleceure. Il demanda consoil à touz nos chevaliers qui là
that wound He asked counsel of all our knights who there
estoient, et tuit li louerent ce que je li avoie loei; et
were and all to-him advised that which I to-him had advised and
quant il oy ce, il me pria que je li lessasse aler son cheval,
when he heard this he me prayed that I to-him should-let go his horse
que je li tenoie par le frain avec les autres; et je si fiz.
that I for-him held by the bridle with the others and I so did

Au conte d'Anjou vint, et li requist que il me venist 227
To-the count of-Anjou he-came and him asked that he me should-come
secourre moy et mes chevaliers. Uns riches hom qui estoit
to-succor me and my knights A rich man who was
avec li, li desloa; et li cuens d'Anjou li dist que il
with him to-him advised-against and the count of-Anjou to-him said that he
feroit ce que mes chevaliers li requeroit: son frain tourna
would-do that which my knight him asked his bridle he-turned
pour nous venir aidier, et plusour de ses serjans ferirent des
for us to-come to-help and several of his sergeants struck with-the
esperons. Quant li Sarrazin les virent, si nous lessierent.
spurs When the Saracens them saw so us they-left
Devant ces sergans vint mes sires Pierres de Alberive, l'espée
Before these sergeants came my lord Peter of Alberive the-sword
ou poing; et quant il vit que li Sarrazin nous orent
in-the fist and when he saw that the Saracens us had
lessiés, il courut sur tout plein de Sarrazins qui tenoient
left he ran upon all full of Saracens who held
mon signour Raoul de Vaunou, et le rescoy mout blecié.
my lord Ralph of Wanou and him rescued very wounded

The King's Battle

XXII

The king arrives, the finest-armed knight Joinville ever saw, and his knights charge among the Turks. On John of Valéry's counsel he draws toward the river. Told that the count of Artois holds a house in the Mansourah, Joinville rides with the constable, but a thousand Turks cut them off, and the king's battalions are routed on the river. They hold a little bridge over a brook; Peter of Brittany passes, and the count of Soissons stays while the constable goes for help.

228 Là ou je estoie à pié, et mi chevalier, aussi bleciez comme
There where I was on foot and my knights as wounded as
il est devant dit, vint li roys à toute sa bataille, à grant
it is before said came the king with all his battalion with great
noyse et à grant bruit de trompes et de nacaires; et se
noise and with great sound of trumpets and of kettledrums and himself
aresta sur un chemin levei. Mais onques si bel armei ne vi;
stopped on a road raised But ever so fair armed not I-saw
car il paroit desur toute sa gent dès les espaules en amont, un
for he appeared above all his people from the shoulders in upward a
heaume dorei en son chief, une espée d'Alemaingne en sa main.
helm gilded on his head a sword of-Germany in his hand
229 Quant il fu là arestez, sui bon chevalier que il avoit en
When he was there stopped his good knights whom he had in
sa bataille, que je vous ai avant nommez, se lancierent
his battalion whom I to-you have before named themselves hurled
entre les Turs, et plusour des vaillans chevaliers qui
among the Turks and several of-the valiant knights who
estoient en la bataille le roy. Et sachiés que ce fu uns
were in the battalion (of-)the king And know that this was a
très-biaus fais d'armes; car nulz n'i traioit ne d'arc
very-fair deed of-arms for anyone not-there shot neither with-bow

ne d'arbalestre, ainçois estoit li fereis de maces et d'espées,
nor with-crossbow rather was the smiting with maces and with-swords
des Turs et de nostre gent, qui tuit estoient mellei. Uns
of-the Turks and of our people who all were mingled A
miens escuiers, qui s'en estoit fuis atout ma baniere et
my squire who himself-thence was fled with my banner and
estoit revenus à moy, me bailla un mien roncin flament sur
was come-back to me me gave a my rouncy Flemish on
quoy je montai, et me trais vers le roy touz coste à coste.
which I mounted and myself drew toward the king all side by side
Endementres que nous estiens ainsi, mes sires Jehans de 230
While that we were thus my lord John of
Waleri li preudom vint au roy, et li dist que il looit
Valéry the worthy-man came to-the king and to-him said that he advised
que il se traisist à main destre sur le flum, pour avoit
that he himself should-draw to hand right on the river for to-have
l'aide dou duc de Bourgoingne et des autres qui gardoient
the-aid of-the duke of Burgundy and of-the others who guarded
l'ost que nous aviens lessié, et pour ce que sui serjant
the-host that we had left and for this that his sergeants
eussent à boire; car il chaus estoit jà grant levez.
might-have to drink for the heat was already great risen
Li roys commanda à ses serjans que il li alassent querre 231
The king commanded to his sergeants that they him should-go to-seek
ses bons chevaliers, que il avoir entour li de son consoil;
his good knights that he had around him of his council
et les nomma touz par lour non. Li serjant les alerent
and them named all by their name The sergeants them went
querre en la bataille, où li hutins estoit grans d'aus et des
to-seek in the battalion where the fray was great of-them and of-the
Turs. Il vindrent au roy, et lour demanda consoil; et il
Turks They came to-the king and them he-asked counsel and they

distrent que mes sires Jehans de Waleri le conseilloit mout
said that my lord John of Valéry him counseled very
bien; et lors commanda li roys au gonfanon Saint-Denis
well and then commanded the king to-the gonfanon Saint-Denis
et à ses banieres qu'il se traisissent à main destre
and to his banners that-they themselves should-draw to hand right
vers le flum. A l'esmouvoir l'ost le roy, rot
toward the river At the-setting-out (of-)the-host (of-)the king there-was-again
grant noise de trompes, de nacaires et de cors sarrazinnois.
great noise of trumpets of kettledrums and of horns Saracen
232 Il n'ot guieres alei quant il ot plusours messaiges dou conte
He not-had much gone when he had several messages from-the count
de Poitiers son frere, dou conte de Flandres et de plusours
of Poitiers his brother from-the count of Flanders and from several
autres riches homes qui illec avoient lour batailles, qui tuit
other rich men who there had their battalions who all
li prioient que il ne se meust; car il estoient si pressei
him prayed that he not himself should-move for they were so pressed
de Turs que il ne le pooient suivre. Li roys rapela touz ses
by Turks that they not him could follow The king recalled all his
preudomes chevaliers de son consoil, et tuit li loerent que il
worthy-men knights of his council and all him advised that he
atendist; et un pou après mes sires Jehans de Waleri revint,
should-wait and a little after my lord John of Valéry came-back
qui blasma le roy et son consoil de ce que il estoient en
who blamed the king and his council of this that they were in
demeure. Après, touz ses consaus li loa que il se traisist
delay After all his council him advised that he himself should-draw
sur le flum, aussi comme li sires de Waleri li avoit loei.
on the river just as the lord of Valéry him had advised

Et maintenant li connestables mes sires Hymbers de Biaujeu 233
And at-once the constable my lord Imbert of Beaujeu
vint à li, et li dist que li cuens d'Artois, ses freres,
came to him and to-him said that the count of-Artois his brother
se deffendoit en une maison à la Massoure, et que il
himself defended in a house at the Mansourah and that he
l'alast secourre. Et li roys li dist: «Connestables, alés
him-should-go to-succor And the king to-him said Constable go
devant, je vous suivrai.» Et je dis au connestable que
before I you will-follow And I said to-the constable that
je seroie ses chevaliers, et il m'en mercia mout. Nous
I would-be his knight and he me-thereof thanked much We
nous meismes à la voie pour aler à la Massourre.
ourselves put on the way for to-go to the Mansourah
Lors vint uns serjans à mace au connestable, touz effraez, 234
Then came a sergeant at mace to-the constable all affrighted
et li dist que li roys estoit arestez, et li Turc s'estoient
and to-him said that the king was stopped and the Turks themselves-were
mis entre li et nous. Nous nous tornames, et veimes que
put between him and us We ourselves turned and saw that
il en y avoit bien mil et plus entre li et nous; et
it thence there had fully thousand and more between him and us and
nous n'estiens que six. Lors dis-je au connestable: «Sire, nous
we not-were but six Then said-I to-the constable Lord we
n'avons pooir d'aler au roy parmi ceste gent; maiz alons
not-have power to-go to-the king through this people but let-us-go
amont, et metons cest fossei que vous véez devant vous,
upstream and let-us-put this ditch which you see before you
entre nous et aus, et ainsi pourrons revenir au roy.» Ainsi
between us and them and thus we-will-be-able come-back to-the king Just
comme je le louai, li connestables le fist. Et sachiez que se
as I it advised the constable it did And know that if

il se fussent pris garde de nous, il nous eussent touz
they themselves had taken heed of us they us would-have all
mors; mais il entendoient au roy et aus autres grosses
killed but they attended to-the king and to-the other big
batailles: par quoy il cuidoient que nous fussiens des lour.
battalions by which they thought that we were of-the theirs
Tandis que nous reveniens aval pardesus le flum, entre
While that we came-back downstream over the river between
le ru et le flum, nous veimes que li roys estoit venus
the brook and the river we saw that the king was come
sur le flum, et que li Turc en amenoient les autres
on the river and that the Turks thence drove the other
batailles le roy, ferant et batant de maces et d'espées;
battalions (of-)the king striking and beating with maces and with-swords
et firent flatir toutes les autres batailles avec les batailles
and made dash all the other battalions with the battalions
le roy sur le flum. Là fu la desconfiture si grans
(of-)the king on the river There was the discomfiture so great
que plusour de nos gens recuidierent passer à nou par
that several of our people thought-again to-cross by swimming by
devers le duc de Bourgoingne: ce que il ne porent faire;
toward the duke of Burgundy this which they not could do
car li cheval estoient lassei et li jours estoit eschaufez;
for the horses were tired and the day was heated
si que nous voiens, endementieres que nous veniens aval,
so that we saw meanwhile that we came downstream
que li fluns estoit couvers de lances et de escus, et
that the river was covered with lances and with shields and
de chevaus et de gens qui se noioient et perissoient.
with horses and with people who themselves drowned and perished

Nous venimes à un poncel qui estoit parmi le ru, et 236
We came to a little-bridge which was across the brook and
je dis au connestable que nous demourissiens pour garder
I said to-the constable that we should-remain for to-guard
ce poncel; «car se nous le lessons, il ferront sus le roy
this little-bridge for if we it leave they will-strike upon the king
par deçà; et se nostre gent sont assailli de dous pars, il
by this-side and if our people are assailed from two sides they
pourront bien perdre.» Et nous le feismes ainsinc. Et dist
will-be-able well lose And we it did so And said
l'on que nous estiens trestuit perdu dès celle journée, se li
one that we were all lost from that day if the
cors le roy ne fust. Car li sires de Courtenay et mes
body (of-)the king not were For the lord of Courtenay and my
sires Jehans de Saillenay me conterent que sis Turc estoient
lord John of Saillenay me told that six Turks were
venu au frain le roy et l'emmenoient pris; et il tous
come to-the bridle (of-)the king and him-led-away taken and he all
seuz s'en delivra, aus grans cos que il lour donna de
alone himself-thence delivered with-the great blows that he them gave with
s'espée. Et quant sa gent virent que li roys metoit deffense
his-sword And when his people saw that the king put defense
en li, il pristrent cuer, et lessierent le passaige dou flum
in himself they took heart and left the passage of-the river
plusour d'aus, et se trestrent vers le roy pour li aidier.
several of-them and themselves drew toward the king for him to-help
A nous tout droit qui gardiens le poncel vint li cuens Pierres 237
To us all straight who guarded the little-bridge came the count Peter
de Bretaingne, qui venoit tout droit de vers la Massoure, et
of Brittany who came all straight from toward the Mansourah and
estoit navrez d'une espée parmi le visaige, si que li sans li
was wounded with-a sword through the face so that the blood to-him

chéoit en la bouche. Sus un bas cheval bien fourni séoit; ses
fell into the mouth Upon a low horse well stout he-sat his
renes avoit getées sur l'arçon de sa selle et le tenoit à
reins he-had thrown on the-saddlebow of his saddle and it held with
ses dous mains, pour ce que sa gent qui estoient darieres, qui
his two hands for this that his people who were behind who
mout le pressoient, ne le getassent dou pas. Bien sembloit
much him pressed not him should-throw from-the pace Well it-seemed
que il les prisast pou; car quant il crachoit le sanc de
that he them prized little for when he spat the blood from
sa bouche, il disoit mout souvent: «Voi! par le Chief Dieu!
his mouth he said very often See by the Head (of-)God
avez veu de ces ribaus?» En la fin de sa bataille, venoit li
have-you seen of these rascals In the end of his battalion came the
cuens de Soissons et mes sires Pierres de Noville, que l'on
count of Soissons and my lord Peter of Neuville whom one
appeloit Caier, qui assez avoient souffert de cos celle journée.
called Caier who much had suffered of blows that day
238 Quant il furent passei, et li Turc virent que nous gardiens
When they were passed and the Turks saw that we guarded
le pont, il les lessierent, et quant il virent que nous
the bridge they them left and when they saw that we
aviens tournez les visaiges vers aus. Je ving au conte de
had turned the faces toward them I came to-the count of
Soissons, cui cousine germainne j'avoie espousée, et li
Soissons whose cousin german I-had married and to-him
dis: «Sire, je croi que vous feriés bien, se vous demouriés
said Lord I believe that you would-do well if you remained
à ce poncel garder; car se nous lessons le poncel, cist
at this little-bridge to-guard for if we leave the little-bridge these
Turc que vous véez ci devant vous, se ferront jà
Turks whom you see here before you themselves will-strike at-once

parmi; et ainsi iert li roys assaillis par deriere et par
through and thus will-be the king assailed by behind and by
devant.» Et il demanda, se il demouroit, se je demourroie;
before And he asked if he remained if I would-remain
et je li respondi: «Oïl, mout volentiers.» Quant li
and I to-him answered Yes very willingly When the
connestables oy ce, il me dist que je ne partisse de
constable heard this he me said that I not should-depart from
là tant que il revenist, et il nous iroit querre secours.
there until that he came-back and he us would-go to-seek help

The Little Bridge

XXIII

Holding the bridge with the count of Soissons, Joinville makes a shield of a Saracen's padded coat, and is wounded only five times and his horse fifteen; Soissons jests that they will talk of this day. At sunset the king's crossbowmen put the Saracens to flight. Henry of Ronnay tells the king that his brother Artois is in paradise, and the king weeps. Many proud men flee over the bridge, while Guy Malvoisin returns with honor.

Là où je demourai ainsi sus mon roncin, me demoura 239
There where I remained thus on my rouncy to-me remained
li cuens de Soissons à destre, et mes sires Pierres de
the count of Soissons on right and my lord Peter of
Noville à senestre. A tant es vous un Turc qui vint de
Neuville on left At this behold you a Turk who came from
vers la bataille le roy, qui dariere nous estoit; et feri
toward the battalion (of-)the king which behind us was and struck
par darieres mon signour Pierre de Noville d'une mace, et
by behind my lord Peter of Neuville with-a mace and

le coucha sus le col de son cheval dou cop que il li
him laid on the neck of his horse with-the blow that he to-him
donna, et puis se feri outre le pont et se lança entre
gave and then himself struck beyond the bridge and himself hurled among
sa gent. Quant li Turc virent que nous ne lairiens pas le
his people When the Turks saw that we not would-leave at-all the
poncel, il passerent le ruissel et se mistrent entre le
little-bridge they crossed the brooklet and themselves put between the
ruissel et le flum, ainsi comme nous estiens venu aval;
brooklet and the river just as we were come downstream
et nous nous traismes encontre aus en tel maniere que nous
and we ourselves drew against them in such manner that we
estiens tuit appareillié à aus sus courre, se il vousissent
were all ready at them upon to-run if they wished
passer vers le roy, et se il vousissent passer le poncel.
to-cross toward the king and if they wished to-cross the little-bridge
Devant nous, avoit dous serjans le roy, dont li
Before us there-were two sergeants (of-)the king of-whom the
uns avoit non Guillaume de Boon et li autres Jehan de
one had name William of Boon and the other John of
Gamaches, à cui li Turc qui s'estoient mis entre le flum
Gamaches to whom the Turks who themselves-were put between the river
et le ru, amenerent tout plein de vileins à pié, qui lour
and the brook brought all full of churls on foot who at-them
getoient motes de terres: onques ne les porent mettre
cast clods of earths ever not them could-they put
sur nous. Au darrien, il amenerent un vilain à pié, qui
upon us At-the last they brought a churl on foot who
lour geta trois foiz le feu gregois. L'une des foiz, requeilli
at-them cast three times the fire Greek The-one of-the times caught

Guillaumes de Boon le pot de feu gregoiz à sa roelle; car
William of Boon the pot of fire Greek on his buckler for
se il se fust pris à riens sur li, il eust estei touz ars.
if it itself had taken to anything on him he would-have been all burned
Nous estiens tuit couvert de pylés qui eschapoient des 241
We were all covered with bolts which escaped from-the
sergens. Or avint ainsi que je trouvai un gamboison
sergeants Now happened so that I found a gambeson
d'estoupes à un Sarrazin: je tournai le fendu devers moy, et
of-tow on a Saracen I turned the slit toward me and
fis escu dou gamboison, qui m'ot grant mestier; car je ne
made shield of-the gambeson which to-me-had great need for I not
fu pas bleciez de lour pylés que en cinc lieus, et mes roncins
was at-all wounded by their bolts but in five places and my rouncy
en quinze lieus. Or avint encore ainsi que uns miens bourjois
in fifteen places Now happened further so that a my burgher
de Joinville m'aporta une baniere de mes armes, à un fer de
of Joinville me-brought a banner of my arms on a head of
glaive; et toutes les foiz que nous voiens que il pressoient
lance and all the times that we saw that they pressed
les serjans, nous lour couriens sus, et il s'enfuioient.
the sergeants we on-them ran upon and they themselves-fled
Li bons cuens de Soissons, en ce point là où nous 242
The good count of Soissons at this point there where we
estiens, se moquoit à moy et me disoit: «Seneschaus,
were himself mocked to me and me said Seneschal
lessons huer ceste chiennaille; que par la Quoife Dieu!
let-us-let howl this dog-pack for by the Coif (of-)God
(ainsi comme il juroit) encore en parlerons-nous, entre
just as he swore still thereof will-speak-we between
vous et moi, de ceste journée es chambres des dames.»
you and me of this day in-the chambers of-the ladies

243 Le soir, au soleil couchant, nous amena li connestables les
The evening at-the sun setting to-us brought the constable the
arbalestriers le roy à pié, et s'arangierent devant nous;
crossbowmen (of-)the king on foot and themselves-ranged before us
et quant li Sarrazin nous virent mettre pié en l'estrier des
and when the Saracens us saw put foot in the-stirrup of-the
arbalestes, il s'enfuirent et nous laissierent. Et lors me dist
crossbows they themselves-fled and us left And then me said
li connestables. «Seneschaus, c'est bien fait; or vous en
the constable Seneschal this-is well done now you thence
alez vers le roy, si ne le lessiés huimais jusques à tant
go toward the king so not him leave henceforth until to so-much
que il iert descendus en son paveillon.» Si tost comme
that he will-be dismounted in his pavilion So soon as
je ving au roy, mes sires Jehans de Waleri vint à li
I came to-the king my lord John of Valéry came to him
et li dist: «Sire, mes sires de Chasteillon vous prie que
and to-him said Lord my lord of Châtillon you prays that
vous li donnez l'ariere-garde.» Et li roys si fist mout
you to-him give the-rearguard And the king so did very
volentiers, et puis si se mist au chemin. Endementieres
willingly and then so himself put on-the road While
que nous en veniens, je li fis oster son hyaume, et
that we thence came I to-him had removed his helm and
li baillai mon chapel de fer pour avoir le vent.
to-him gave my hat of iron for to-have the wind

244 Et lors vint freres Henris de Ronnay, prevoz de l'Ospital, à li
And then came brother Henry of Ronnay provost of the-Hospital to him
qui avoit passei la riviere, et li besa la main toute armée. Et
who had crossed the river and to-him kissed the hand all armed And
il li demanda se il savoit nulles nouvelles dou conte d'Artois,
he him asked if he knew any tidings of-the count of-Artois

son frere; et il li dist que il en savoit bien nouvelles,
his brother and he to-him said that he thereof knew well tidings
car estoit certeins que ses freres li cuens d'Artois estoit en
for he-was certain that his brother the count of-Artois was in
paradis: «Hé! sire, dist li prevoz, vous en ayés bon reconfort;
paradise Ah lord said the provost you thereof have good comfort
car si grans honnours n'avint onques à roy de France comme
for so great honor not-happened ever to king of France as
il vous est avenu. Car pour combattre à vos ennemis avez
it to-you is happened For for to-fight with your enemies you-have
passei une riviere à nou, et les avez desconfiz et chaciez
crossed a river by swimming and them have discomfited and chased
dou champ, et gaaingniés lour engins et lour heberges,
from-the field and gained their engines and their lodgings
là où vous gerrés encore ennuit.» Et li roys respondi
there where you will-lie still tonight And the king answered
que Diex en fust aourez de tout ce que il li donnoit;
that God thereof were adored for all that which he to-him gave
et lors li chéoient les lermes des yex mout grosses.
and then to-him fell the tears from-the eyes very big
Quant nous venimes à la heberge, nous trouvames que 245
When we came to the lodging we found that
li Sarrazin à pié tenoient les cordes d'une tente que il
the Saracens on foot held the ropes of-a tent that they
avoient destendue, d'une part, et nostre menue gent, d'autre.
had unpitched on-one side and our small people on-other
Nous lour courumes sus, li maistres dou Temple et je;
We on-them ran upon the master of-the Temple and I
et il s'enfuirent, et la tente demoura à nostre gent.
and they themselves-fled and the tent remained to our people

246 En celle bataille ot mout de gens, et de grant bobant,
In that battle there-were many of people and of great show
qui s'en vindrent mout honteusement fuiant parmi le
who themselves-thence came very shamefully fleeing across the
poncel dont je vous ai avant parlei, et s'enfuirent effréement;
little-bridge of-which I to-you have before spoken and themselves-fled affrightedly
ne onques n'en peumes nul arester delez nous; dont je en
nor ever not-thereof we-could any stop beside us whereof I thereof
nommeroie bien, desquiex je me soufferrai; car mort sont.
would-name well of-whom I myself will-forbear for dead they-are
247 Mais de mon signour Guion Malvoisin, ne me soufferrai-je
But of my lord Guy Malvoisin not myself will-forbear-I
mie; car il en vint de la Massoure honorablement. Et bien
at-all for he thence came from the Mansourah honorably And well
toute la voie que li connestables et je en alames amont,
all the way that the constable and I thence went upstream
il revenoit aval. Et en la maniere que li Turc amenerent
he came-back downstream And in the manner that the Turks drove
le conte de Bretaingne et sa bataille, en ramenerent-il mon
the count of Brittany and his battalion thence drove-back-they my
signour Guion Malvoisin et sa bataille, qui ot grant los, il
lord Guy Malvoisin and his battalion who had great praise he
et sa gent, de celle jornée. Et ce ne fu pas de merveille
and his people from that day And this not was at-all of marvel
se il et sa gent se prouverent bien celle journée; car
if he and his people themselves proved well that day for
l'on me dist, icil qui bien savoient son couvine, que toute
one me said those who well knew his condition that all
sa bataille, n'en failloit gueres, estoit toute de chevaliers
his battalion not-thereof lacked much was all of knights
de son linnaige et de chevaliers qui estoient sui home-lige.
of his lineage and of knights who were his men-liege

Quant nous eumes desconfiz les Turs et chaciés de lour 248
When we had discomfited the Turks and chased from their
herberges, et que nul de nos gens ne furent demourei
lodgings and that any of our people not were remained
en l'ost, li Beduyn se ferirent en l'ost des Sarrazins,
in the-host the Bedouins themselves struck into the-host of-the Saracens
qui moult estoient grans gens. Nulle chose dou monde il
who much were great people Any thing of-the world they
ne lessierent en l'ost des Sarrazins, que il n'emportassent
not left in the-host of-the Saracens that they not-carried-off
tout ce que li Sarrazin avoient lessié; ne je n'oy onques
all that which the Saracens had left nor I not-heard ever
dire que li Beduyn, qui estoient sousjet aus Sarrazins, en
say that the Bedouins who were subject to-the Saracens thereof
vausissent pis de chose que il lour eussent tolue ne
were-worth worse for thing that they from-them had taken nor
robée, pour ce que lour coustume est teix et lour usaiges,
robbed for this that their custom is such and their usage
que il courent tousjours sus aus plus febles.
that they run always upon to-the more feeble

The Bedouins, and the Night Attack

XXIV

The Bedouins follow the law of Ali and hold that no one dies but on his day; they live in the fields under skins and wrap their heads in cloths. That night, wounded as he is, Joinville is roused by the cry "To arms!" and with his wounded knights drives back the Saracens' sergeants. His priest John of Voisey charges eight Saracens alone and puts them to flight, and the sergeants carry off the stones behind which the Turks sheltered.

249 Pour ce que il affiert à la matere, vous dirai-je quex gens sont
For this that it befits to the matter to-you will-tell-I what people are
li Beduyn. Li Beduyn ne croient point en Mahommet, ainçois
the Bedouins The Bedouins not believe at-all in Muhammad rather
croient en la loy Haali, qui fu oncles Mahommet; et aussi
believe in the law (of-)Ali who was uncle (of-)Muhammad and also
y croient li Vieil de la Montaigne, cil qui nourrissent
there believe the Old-Man of the Mountain those who nourish
les Assacis. Et croient que quant li om meurt pour son
the Assassins And they-believe that when the man dies for his
signour ou en aucune bone entencion, que l'ame d'aus en va
lord or in some good intention that the-soul of-them thence goes
en meillour cors et en plus aaisié que devant; et pour ce
into better body and into more at-ease than before and for this
ne font force li Assacis se l'on les occist quant il font le
not make force the Assassins if one them kills when they do the
conmandement dou Vieil de la Montaigne. Dou Vieil de
command of-the Old-Man of the Mountain Of-the Old-Man of
la Montaigne nous tairons orendroit, si dirons des Beduyns.
the Mountain we will-be-silent now so will-speak of-the Bedouins

Li Beduyn ne demeurent en villes, ne en cités, n'en 250
The Bedouins not dwell in towns nor in cities nor-in
chastiaus, mais gisent adès aus chans; et lour mesnies,
castles but lie always in-the fields and their households
lour femmes, lour enfans fichent le soir de nuit, ou de
their wives their children they-fix the evening by night or by
jour quant il fait mal tens, en unes manieres de herberges
day when it makes ill weather in some manners of lodgings
que il font de cercles de tonniaus loiés à perches, aussi
that they make of hoops of casks bound to poles just
comme li cher à ces dames sont; et sur ces cercles
as the carts of these ladies are and on these hoops
gietent piaus de moutons que l'on appelle piaus de Damas,
they-cast skins of sheep which one calls skins of Damascus
conrées en alun: li Beduyn meismes en ont grans pelices,
cured in alum the Bedouins themselves thereof have great pelisses
qui lour cuevrent tout le cors, lour jambes et lour piés.
which them cover all the body their legs and their feet
Quant il pleut le soir et fait mal tens de nuit, il 251
When it rains the evening and makes ill weather by night they
s'encloent dedens lour pelices, et ostent les frains à lour
themselves-enclose within their pelisses and take-off the bridles from their
chevaus, et les lessent paistre delez aus. Quant ce vient
horses and them let graze beside them When this comes
l'endemain, il restendent lour pelices au soleil et les frotent
the-next-day they spread-again their pelisses in-the sun and them rub
et les conroient; ne jà n'i perra chose que elles aient
and them curry nor ever not-there will-appear thing that they may-have
estei moillies le soir. Lour créance est teix, que nus ne puet
been wet the evening Their belief is such that anyone not can
morir que à son jour, et pour ce ne se veulent-il armer;
die but on his day and for this not themselves wish-they to-arm

et quant il maudient lour enfans, si lour dient: «Ainsi
and when they curse their children so to-them they-say Thus
soies-tu maudis, comme li Frans qui s'arme pour poour de
be-thou cursed as the Frank who himself-arms for fear of
mort!» En bataille, il ne portent riens que l'espée et le glaive.
death In battle they not bear anything but the-sword and the lance
252 Presque tuit sont vestu de seurpeliz, aussi comme li prestre; de
Almost all are clothed in surplices just as the priests with
touailles sont entorteillies lour testes, qui lour vont par desous
cloths are wound their heads which to-them go by below
le menton: dont laides gens et hydeuses sont à regarder, car
the chin whence ugly people and hideous they-are to look-at for
li chevel des testes et des barbes son tuit noir. Il vivent dou
the hairs of-the heads and of-the beards are all black They live on-the
lait de lour bestes, et achietent les pasturaiges, es berries aus
milk of their beasts and buy the pasturages in-the plains of-the
riches homes, de quoy lour bestes vivent. Le nombre d'aus ne
rich men by which their beasts live The number of-them not
sauroit nulz nommer; car il en a ou réaume de Egypte, ou
could anyone name for it thereof has in-the realm of Egypt in-the
réaume de Jérusalem et en toutes les autres terres des Sarrazins
realm of Jerusalem and in all the other lands of-the Saracens
et des mescréans, à qui il rendent grans tréus chascun an.
and of-the misbelievers to whom they render great tributes each year
253 J'ai veu en cest païs, puis je que reving d'outre mer, aucuns
I-have seen in this country since I that came-back from-over sea some
desloiaus crestiens qui tenoient la loy des Beduyns, et disoient
disloyal Christians who held the law of-the Bedouins and said
que nulz ne pouoit morir qu'à son jour; et lour créance est si
that anyone not could die but-on his day and their belief is so
deloiaus, qu'il vaut autant dire comme Diex n'ait pouoir
disloyal that-it is-worth as-much to-say as God not-may-have power

de nous aidier. Car il seroient fol cil qui serviroient Dieu,
of us to-help For they would-be foolish those who would-serve God
se nous ne cuidiens que il eust pooir de nous eslongier nos
if we not thought that he had power of us to-lengthen our
vies et de nous garder de mal et de meschéance; et en li
lives and of us to-guard from ill and from mischance and in him
devons-nous croire, que il est poissans de toutes choses faire.
ought-we believe that he is mighty of all things to-do
Or disons ainsi que à l'anuitier revenimes de la perillouse 254
Now let-us-say thus that at the-nightfall we-came-back from the perilous
bataille desus dite, li roys et nous, et nous lojames ou lieu
battle above said the king and we and we lodged in-the place
dont nous aviens chacié nos ennemis. Ma gent, qui estoient
whence we had chased our enemies My people who were
demourei en nostre ost dont nous estiens parti, m'aporterent
remained in our host whence we were departed me-brought
une tente que li Templier m'avoient donnée, et la me
a tent that the Templars me-had given and it for-me
tendirent devant les engins que nous aviens gaingniés aus
pitched before the engines that we had gained from-the
Sarrazins; et li roys fist establir serjans pour garder les engins.
Saracens and the king had established sergeants for to-guard the engines
Quant je fus couchiés en mon lit, là où je eusse 255
When I was lain-down in my bed there where I would-have
bien mestier de reposer pour les bleceures que j'avoie eu
well need of resting for the wounds that I-had had
le jour devant, il ne m'avint pas ainsi; car avant que il
the day before it not to-me-happened at-all so for before that it
fust bien jours, l'on escria en nostre ost: «Aus armes! aus
were well day one cried in our host To-the arms to-the
armes!» Je fiz lever mon chamberlain qui gisoit devant moy,
arms I had rise my chamberlain who lay before me

et li diz que il alast veoir que c'estoit. Et il revint
and to-him said that he should-go to-see what this-was And he came-back
touz effraez, et me dist: «Sire, or sus! or sus! que vez-ci
all affrighted and me said Lord now up now up for see-here
les Sarrazins qui sont venu à pié et à cheval; et ont
the Saracens who are come on foot and on horse and have
desconfit les serjans le roy qui gardoient les engins, et
discomfited the sergeants (of-)the king who guarded the engines and
les ont mis dedans les cordes de nos paveillons.»
them have put within the ropes of our pavilions

256 Je me levai et jetai un gamboison en mon dos et un
I myself rose and threw a gambeson on my back and a
chapel de fer en ma teste, et escriai à nos serjans: «Par
hat of iron on my head and cried to our sergeants By
saint Nicholas? ci ne demourront-il pas.» Mi chevalier me
saint Nicholas here not will-remain-they at-all My knights to-me
vindrent si blecié comme il estoient, et reboutames les
came so wounded as they were and we-pushed-back the
serjans aus Sarrazins hors des engins, jusques devant une
sergeants of-the Saracens out of-the engines until before a
grosse bataille de Turs à cheval, qui estoient tuit rez à rez
big battalion of Turks on horse who were all close to close
des engins que nous aviens gaaingniés. Je mandai au roy
with-the engines that we had gained I sent-word to-the king
que il nous secourust; car je ne mi chevalier n'aviens pouoir
that he us should-succor for I nor my knights not-had power
de vestir haubers, pour les plaies que nous aviens eues; et
to don hauberks for the wounds that we had had and
li roys nous envoya mon signour Gauchier de Chasteillon,
the king us sent my lord Walter of Châtillon
liquex se logea entre nous et les Turs, devant nous.
which himself lodged between us and the Turks before us

Quant li sires de Chasteillon ot reboutei ariere les serjans 257
When the lord of Châtillon had pushed back the sergeants
aus Sarrazins à pié, il se retraistrent sus une grosse
of-the Saracens on foot they themselves withdrew upon a big
bataille de Turs à cheval, qui estoit rangie devant nostre
battalion of Turks on horse which was ranged before our
ost, pour garder que nous ne seurpreissiens l'ost aus
host for to-guard that we not should-surprise the-host of-the
Sarrazins, qui estoit logiez dariere aus. De celle bataille
Saracens which was lodged behind them From that battalion
de Turs à cheval estoient descendu à pié huit de lour
of Turks on horse were dismounted on foot eight of their
chievetains mout bien armei, qui avoient fait un hourdéis
chieftains very well armed who had made a hoarding
de pierres taillies, pour ce que notre arbalestrier ne les
of stones cut for this that our crossbowmen not them
bleçassent: cist huit Sarrazin traioient à la volée parmi nostre
should-wound these eight Saracens shot at the volley through our
ost, et blecierent plusours de nos gens et de nos chevaus.
host and wounded several of our people and of our horses
Je et mi chevalier nous meismes ensemble et acordames, 258
I and my knights ourselves put together and agreed
quand il seroit anuitié, que nous emporteriens les pierres
when it would-be nightfallen that we would-carry-off the stones
dont il se hourdoient. Uns miens prestres, qui avoit
with-which they themselves hoarded A my priest who had
à non mon signour Jehan de Voyssei, fu à ce consoil,
to name my lord John of Voisey was at this counsel
et n'atendi pas tant; ainçois se parti de nostre ost
and not-waited at-all so-long rather himself departed from our host
touz seus, et s'adreça vers les Sarrazins, son gamboison
all alone and himself-directed toward the Saracens his gambeson

vestu, son chapel de fer en sa teste, son glaive (trainant le
donned his hat of iron on his head his lance trailing the
fer) desous l'essele, pour ce que li Sarrazin ne l'avisassent.
iron below the-armpit for this that the Saracens not him-should-notice
259 Quand il vint près des Sarrazins, qui riens ne le prisoient
When he came near of-the Saracens who anything not him prized
pour ce que il le véoient tout seul, il lança son glaive de
for this that they him saw all alone he hurled his lance from
sous s'essele et lour courut sus. Il n'i ot nul des huit qui
below his-armpit and on-them ran upon It not-there had any of-the eight who
y meist deffense, ainçois tournerent tuit en fuie. Quant cil
there put defense rather turned all in flight When those
à cheval virent que lour signour s'en venoient fuiant,
on horse saw that their lords themselves-thence came fleeing
il ferirent des esperons pour aus rescourre, et il saillirent
they struck with-the spurs for them to-rescue and they leapt
bien de nostre ost jusques à cinquante serjans; et cil à
fully from our host until to fifty sergeants and those on
cheval vindrent ferant des esperons, et n'oserent assembler
horse came striking with-the spurs and not-dared engage
à nostre gent à pié, ainçois ganchirent par devant aus.
with our people on foot rather swerved by before them
260 Quant il orent ce fait ou dous foiz ou trois, uns de nos
When they had this done either two times or three one of our
serjans tint son glaive parmi le milieu, et le lança à un
sergeants held his lance by the middle and it hurled at one
des Turs à cheval, et li en donna parmi les costes; et
of-the Turks on horse and to-him thereof gave through the ribs and
emporta cil qui frappez estoit le glaive trainant dont il avait le
carried-off he who struck was the lance trailing whereof he had the
fer parmy les costes. Quant li Turc virent ce, il n'y oserent
iron through the ribs When the Turks saw this they not-there dared

puis aler ne venir, et nostre serjant emporterent les pierres.
after go nor come and our sergeants carried-off the stones
Dès illec en avant fu mes prestres bien cogneus en l'ost, et
From there on forward was my priest well known in the-host and
le moustroient li uns à l'autre, et disoient: «Vez-ci le prestre
him pointed-out the one to the-other and said See-here the priest
mon signour de Joinville, qui a les huit Sarrazins desconfiz.»
(of-)my lord of Joinville who has the eight Saracens discomfited

The Battle of the First Friday in Lent

XXV

The Saracens' new chief shows the count of Artois's coat as the king's, saying a body without a head is nothing to fear. The king, warned, arms the host at midnight. At sunrise four thousand Turkish horse ring the camp, and at noon they attack. The king spurs to save his brother of Anjou. Battle by battle Joinville tells the fight: the barons of outremer, Walter of Châtillon, the master of the Temple, who loses his other eye and dies, and Guy Malvoisin.

Ces choses avindrent le premier jour de quaresme. Ce jour 261
These things happened the first day of Lent That day
meismes, uns vaillans Sarrazins, que nostre ennemi avoient
same a valiant Saracen whom our enemies had
fait chievetain pour Scecedin le fil au seic, que il avoient
made chieftain for Fakhr-ad-Din the son of-the sheikh whom they had
perdu en la bataille le jour de quaresme-pernant, prist la
lost in the battle the day of Shrove-Tuesday took the
cote le conte d'Artois qui avoit estei mors en celle bataille,
coat (of-)the count of-Artois who had been dead in that battle

et la moustra à tout le peuple des Sarrazins, et lour
and it showed to all the people of-the Saracens and to-them
dist que c'estoit la cote le roy à armer, qui mors estoit.
said that this-was the coat (of-)the king for arming who dead was
262 «Et ces choses vous moustré-je, pour ce que cors sanz chief ne
And these things to-you show-I for this that body without head not
vaut riens à redouter, ne gent sanz roy. Dont, se il vous plait,
is-worth anything to fear nor people without king Whence if it you pleases
nous les assaurons vendredi; et vous y devez accorder, si
we them will-assail Friday and you there ought agree so
comme il me semble; car nous ne deverons pas faillir que nous
as it to-me seems for we not ought at-all fail that we
les prenons touz, pour ce que il ont perdu lour chievetein.»
them take all for this that they have lost their chieftain
Et tuit s'accorderent que il nous venroient assaillir vendredi.
And all themselves-agreed that they us would-come to-assail Friday
263 Les espies le roy qui estoient en l'ost des Sarrasins, vindrent
The spies (of-)the king who were in the-host of-the Saracens came
dire au roy ces nouvelles. Et lors commanda li roys à touz les
to-tell to-the king these tidings And then commanded the king to all the
chieveteins des batailles que il feissent lour gent armer dès la
chieftains of-the battalions that they should-have their people arm from the
mie nuit, et se traisissent hors des paveillons jusques à la
mid night and themselves should-draw out of-the pavilions until to the
lice, qui estoit teix que il y avoit lons merriens, pour ce que
palisade which was such that it there had long timbers for this that
li Sarrazin ne se ferissent parmi l'ost; et estoient atachié
the Saracens not themselves should-strike through the-host and they-were fastened
en terre en tel maniere que l'on pooit passer parmi le merrien
in ground in such manner that one could pass through the timber
à pié. Et ainsi comme li roys l'ot commandei il fu fait.
on foot And just as the king it-had commanded it was done

A soleil levant tout droit, li Sarrazins devant nommez, de quoy 264
At sun rising all straight the Saracen before named of whom
il avoient fait lour chievetain, nous amena bien quatre mille
they had made their chieftain us brought fully four thousand
Turs à cheval, et les fist rangier touz entour nostre ost et
Turks on horse and them had ranged all around our host and
li, dès le flum qui vient de Babiloine jusques au flum qui
him from the river which comes from Babylon until to-the river which
se partoit de nostre ost et en aloit vers une ville que l'on
itself parted from our host and thence went toward a town which one
appele Risil. Quant il orent ce fait, il nous ramenerent si
calls Rexi When they had this done they us brought-back so
grant foison de Sarrazins à pié, que il nous renvironnerent tout
great plenty of Saracens on foot that they us surrounded-again all
nostre ost, aussi comme il avoient des gens à cheval. Après
our host just as they had of-the people on horse After
ces dous batailles que je vous cont, firent rangier tout le pooir
these two battalions that I to-you tell they-had ranged all the power
au soudanc de Babiloine, pour aus aidier se mestier lour fust.
of-the sultan of Babylon for them to-help if need to-them were
Quand il orent ce fait, li chievetains touz seus vint veoir 265
When they had this done the chieftain all alone came to-see
le couvine de nostre ost, sur un petit roncin; et selonc
the array of our host on a little rouncy and according-to
ce que il véoit que nos batailles estoient plus grosses en
this that he saw that our battalions were more big in
un lieu que en un autre, il raloit querre de sa gent et
one place than in an other he went-again to-seek of his people and
renforçoit ses batailles contre les nostres. Après ce, fist-il
reinforced his battalions against the ours After this had-he
passer les Beduyns, qui bien estoient trois mille, par devers
cross the Bedouins who fully were three thousand by toward

l'ost que li dus de Bourgoigne gardoit, qui estoit entre
the-host that the duke of Burgundy guarded which was between
les dous rivieres. Et ce fist-il pour ce que il cuidoit que li
the two rivers And this did-he for this that he thought that the
roys eust envoié au duc de sa gent pour li aidier contre
king had sent to-the duke of his people for him to-help against
les Beduyns; par quoy li os le roy en fust plus febles.
the Bedouins by which the host (of-)the king thereof were more feeble
266 En ces choses aréer mist-il jusques à midi; et lors il fist
In these things arraying spent-he until to noon and then he had
sonner les tabours que l'on appelle nacaires, et lors nous
sounded the drums which one calls kettledrums and then us
coururent sus et à pié et à cheval. Tout premier je vous
they-ran upon both on foot and on horse All first I to-you
dirai dou roy de Sezile (qui lors estoit cuens d'Anjou),
will-tell of-the king of Sicily who then was count of-Anjou
pource que c'estoit li premiers par devers Babiloine. Il
because that this-was the first by toward Babylon They
vindrent à li en la maniere que l'on jeue aus eschiez; car
came to him in the manner that one plays at-the chess for
il li firent courre sus à lour gent à pié, en tel maniere
they him had run upon with their people on foot in such manner
que cil à pié li getoient le feu grejois. Et les pressoient
that those on foot at-him cast the fire Greek And them pressed
tant cil à cheval et cil à pié que il desconfirent le
so-much those on horse and those on foot that they discomfited the
roy de Sezile, qui estoit entre ses chevaliers à pié.
king of Sicily who was among his knights on foot
267 Et l'on vint au roy et li dist l'on le meschief où ses
And one came to-the king and to-him told one the hardship where his
freres estoit. Quand il oy ce, il feri des esperons parmi les
brother was When he heard this he struck with-the spurs through the

batailles son frere, l'espée ou poing, et se feri entre les
battalions (of-)his brother the-sword in-the fist and himself struck among the
Turs si avant que il li empristrent la coliere de son cheval
Turks so far that they to-him set-afire the crupper of his horse
de feu grejois. Et par celle pointe que li roys fist, il secouri le
with fire Greek And by that charge that the king made he succored the
roy de Sezile et sa gent; et enchacierent les Turs de lour ost.
king of Sicily and his people and chased the Turks from their host
Après la bataille au roy de Sezile, estoit la bataille 268
After the battalion of-the king of Sicily was the battalion
des barons d'outre mer, dont mes sires Guis d'Ibelin et
of-the barons of-over sea of-whom my lord Guy of-Ibelin and
mes sires Baudoins, ses freres, estoient chievetein. Après
my lord Baldwin his brother were chieftains After
lour bataille, estoit la bataille mon signour Gautier de
their battalion was the battalion (of-)my lord Walter of
Chateillon, pleinne de preudomes et de bone chevalerie.
Châtillon full of worthy-men and of good knighthood
Ces dous batailles se deffendirent si viguerousement que
These two battalions themselves defended so vigorously that
onques li Turc ne les porent ne percier ne rebouter.
ever the Turks not them could neither pierce nor push-back
Après la bataille mon signour Gautier, estoit freres Guillaumes 269
After the battalion (of-)my lord Walter was brother William
de Sonnac, maistres dou Temple, atout ce pou de freres qui
of Sonnac master of-the Temple with this little of brothers who
li estoient demourei de la bataille dou mardi. Il ot fait
to-him were remained from the battle of-the Tuesday He had had
faire deffense endroit li des engins aus Sarrazins que nous
made defense opposite him with-the engines of-the Saracens which we
aviens gaaingniés. Quant li Sarrazin le vindrent assaillir, il
had gained When the Saracens him came to-assail they

geterent le feu grejois ou hordis que il y avoit fait faire;
cast the fire Greek into-the hoarding that he there had had made
et li feus s'i prist de legier, car li Templier y avoient
and the fire itself-there took with ease for the Templars there had
fait mettre grant quantitei de planches de sapin. Et sachiez
had put great quantity of planks of fir And know
que li Turc n'attendirent pas que li feus fust touz ars,
that the Turks not-waited at-all that the fire were all burned
ains alerent sus courre aus Templiers parmi le feu ardant.
rather went upon to-run at-the Templars through the fire burning
270 Et à celle bataille, freres Guillaumes, li maistres dou
And at that battle brother William the master of-the
Temple, perdi l'un des yex; et l'autre avoit-il perdu le
Temple lost the-one of-the eyes and the-other had-he lost the
jour de quaresme-pernant; et en fu mors li diz sires,
day of Shrove-Tuesday and thereof was dead the said lord
que Diex absoille! Et sachiez que il avoit bien un journel
whom God absolve And know that it had fully a journal
de terre dariere les Templiers, qui estoit si chargiez de
of ground behind the Templars which was so loaded with
pylés que li Sarrazin lour avoient lanciés, que il n'y
bolts that the Saracens to-them had hurled that it not-there
paroit point de terre pour la grant foison de pylés.
showed at-all of ground for the great plenty of bolts
271 Après la bataille dou Temple, estoit la bataille mon signour
After the battalion of-the Temple was the battalion (of-)my lord
Guion Malvoisin, laquel bataille li Turc ne porent onques
Guy Malvoisin which battalion the Turks not could ever
vaincre; et toutevois avint ainsi que li Turc couvrirent
vanquish and all-the-same happened so that the Turks covered

mon signour Guion Malvoisin de feu grejois, que à
my lord Guy Malvoisin with fire Greek so-that with
grant peinne le porent esteindre sa gent.
great pain him could quench his people

The Sultan's Guard

XXVI

The Turks dare not attack Joinville's wounded men, and his crossbowmen help the count of Flanders rout them. The count of Poitiers is taken until the butchers and market women rescue him. Henry of Cône has the king's crossbowmen shoot across the river to save Josserand of Brancion's knights, but Brancion dies of his wound; he fought in thirty-six battles and prayed to die in God's service. Joinville explains the sultan's troops.

De la bataille mon signour Guion Malvoisin descendoit la 272
From the battalion (of-)my lord Guy Malvoisin went-down the
lice qui clooit nostre ost, et venoit vers le flum bien le
palisade which closed our host and came toward the river fully the
giet d'une pierre poingnant. Dès illec si s'adreçoit la lice par
throw of-a stone fist-sized From there so itself-directed the palisade by
devant l'ost le conte Guillaume de Flandres, et s'estendoit
before the-host (of-)the count William of Flanders and itself-stretched
jusques au flum qui s'en aloit vers la mer. Endroit celi
until to-the river which itself-thence went toward the sea Opposite that
qui venoit de vers mon signour Guion Malvoisin, estoit la
which came from toward my lord Guy Malvoisin was the
nostre bataille; et pour ce que la bataille le conte Guillaume
our battalion and for this that the battalion (of-)the count William
de Flandres lour estoit encontre lour visaiges, il n'oserent
of Flanders to-them was against their faces they not-dared

venir à nous: dont Diex nous fist grant courtoisie; car je ne
come to us whereof God us did great courtesy for I nor
mi chevalier n'aviens ne haubers ne escus, pour ce que nous
my knights not-had neither hauberks nor shields for this that we
estiens tuit blecié de la bataille dou jour de quaresme-prenant.
were all wounded from the battle of-the day of Shrove-Tuesday
273 Le conte de Flandres coururent sus moult aigrement et
The count of Flanders they-ran upon very fiercely and
viguerousement, et à pié et à cheval. Quant je vi ce, je
vigorously both on foot and on horse When I saw this I
commandai à nos arbalestriers que il traisissent à ceus à
commanded to our crossbowmen that they should-shoot at those on
cheval. Quant cil à cheval virent que on les bleçoit par devers
horse When those on horse saw that one them wounded by toward
nous, cil à cheval touchierent à la fuie; et quant les gens
us those on horse took to the flight and when the people
le conte virent ce, il lessierent l'ost, et se fichierent
(of-)the count saw this they left the-host and themselves thrust
par desus la lice, et coururent sus aus Sarrasins à pié et les
by over the palisade and ran upon to-the Saracens on foot and them
desconfirent. Plusours en y ot de mors, et plusours de lour
discomfited Several thereof there had of dead and several of their
targes gaaingnies. Là se prouva viguerousement Gautiers de
targes gained There himself proved vigorously Walter of
la Horgne, qui portoit la baniere mon signour d'Apremont.
the Horgne who bore the banner (of-)my lord of-Apremont
274 Après la bataille le conte de Flandres, estoit la bataile au
After the battalion (of-)the count of Flanders was the battalion of-the
conte de Poitiers, le frere le roy; laquez bataille dou conte
count of Poitiers the brother (of-)the king which battalion of-the count
de Poitiers estoit à pié, et il touz seus estoit à cheval;
of Poitiers was on foot and he all alone was on horse

laquel bataille dou conte li Turc desconfirent tout à net, et
which battalion of-the count the Turks discomfited all at clean and
enmenoient le conte de Poitiers pris. Quant li bouchier et li
led-away the count of Poitiers taken When the butchers and the
autre home de l'ost, et les femmes qui vendoient les danrées,
other men of the-host and the women who sold the wares
oïrent ce, il leverent le cri en l'ost, et à l'aide de Dieu,
heard this they raised the cry in the-host and with the-help of God
il secoururent le conte et chacierent de l'ost les Turs.
they succored the count and chased from the-host the Turks
Après la bataille le conte de Poitiers, estoit la bataille mon 275
After the battalion (of-)the count of Poitiers was the battalion (of-)my
signour Jocerant de Brançon, qui estoit venus avec le conte
lord Josserand of Brancion who was come with the count
en Egypte, li uns des meillours chevaliers qui fust en l'ost.
into Egypt the one of-the best knights who were in the-host
Sa gent avoit si arée que tuit sui chevalier estoient à pié; et
His people he-had so arrayed that all his knights were on foot and
il estoit à cheval, et ses fiz mes sires Henris, et li fiz mon
he was on horse and his son my lord Henry and the son (of-)my
signour Jocerant de Nantum; et ceus retint à cheval, pour ce
lord Josserand of Nanteuil and these he-kept on horse for this
que il estoient enfant. Par plusours fois, li desconfirent li
that they were children By several times to-him discomfited the
Turc sa gent. Toutes les foiz que il véoit sa gent desconfire, il
Turks his people All the times that he saw his people discomfit he
feroit des esperons et prenoit les Turs par deriere; et ainsi
struck with-the spurs and took the Turks by behind and thus
lessoient li Turc sa gent par plusours foiz pour li courre sus.
left the Turks his people by several times for him to-run upon

276 Toutevoiz ce ne lour eust riens valu que li Turc ne les
All-the-same this not to-them would-have anything availed that the Turks not them
eussent touz mors ou champ, se ne fust mes sires Henris
would-have all killed in-the field if not were my lord Henry
de Coonne, qui estoit en l'ost le duc de Bourgoingne,
of Cône who was in the-host (of-)the duke of Burgundy
saiges chevaliers, et preus et apensez; et toutes les foiz que
wise knight and valiant and thoughtful and all the times that
il véoit que li Turc venoient courre sus à mon signour de
he saw that the Turks came to-run upon at my lord of
Brancion, il fesoit traire les arbalestriers le roy aus Turs
Brancion he had shoot the crossbowmen (of-)the king at-the Turks
parmi la riviere. Et ainsi eschapa li sires de Brancion dou
across the river And thus escaped the lord of Brancion from-the
meschief de celle journée, que de vint chevaliers que il avoit
hardship of that day that of twenty knights that he had
entour li, il en perdi douze, sanz l'autre gent d'armes; et
around him he thereof lost twelve without the-other people of-arms and
il meismes fu si malement atournez que onques puis sus ses
he himself was so badly handled that ever since on his
piez n'aresta, et fu mors de celle bleceure ou servise Dieu.
feet not-stood and was dead of that wound in-the service (of-)God
277 Dou signour de Brancion vous dirai. Il avoit estei, quant il
Of-the lord of Brancion to-you I-will-tell He had been when he
mourut, en trente-six batailles et poingnéis dont il avoit portei
died in thirty-six battles and skirmishes whereof he had borne
pris d'armes. Je le vi en un ost le conte de Chalon, cui
prize of-arms I him saw in a host (of-)the count of Chalon whose
cousins il estoit; et vint à moy et à mon frere, et nous dist
cousin he was and he-came to me and to my brother and us said
le jour d'un grant vendredi: «Mi neveu, venés à moy aidier, et
the day of-a great Friday My nephews come to me to-help both

vous et vostre gent; car li Alemant brisent le moustier.» Nous
you and your people for the Germans break-into the minster We
alames avec li, et lour courumes sus, les espées traites; et à
went with him and to-them ran upon the swords drawn and with
grant peinne et à grant hutin, les chassames dou moustier.
great pain and with great fray them chased from-the minster
Quant ce fu fait, li preudom s'agenoilla devant l'autel, et 278
When this was done the worthy-man himself-knelt before the-altar and
cria merci à Nostre Signour à haute voiz, et dist: «Sire,
cried mercy to Our Lord with high voice and said Lord
je te pri que il te preingne pitié de moy, et m'ostes
I thee pray that it thee may-take pity of me and me-take-away
de ces guerres entre crestiens, là où j'ai vescu grant
from these wars among Christians there where I-have lived great
piesce; et m'otroies que je puisse mourir en ton servise,
while and me-grant that I may die in thy service
par quoy je puisse avoir ton regne de paradis.» Et ces
by which I may have thy realm of paradise And these
choses vous ai-je ramenteu, pour ce que je croi que Diex
things to-you have-I recalled for this that I believe that God
li otroia, si comme vous pouez avoir veu ci-devant.
to-him granted so as you can have seen here-before
Après la bataille le premier vendredi de quaresme, manda 279
After the battle the first Friday of Lent summoned
li roys touz ses barons devant li, et lour dist: «Grant
the king all his barons before him and to-them said Great
grace, fist-il, devons à Nostre Signour de ce qu'il nous
thanks said-he we-owe to Our Lord of this that-he us
a fait tiex dous honnours en ceste semainne, que mardi,
has done such two honors in this week that Tuesday
le jour de quaresme-prenant, nous les chassames de lour
the day of Shrove-Tuesday we them chased from their

herberges, là où nous sommes logié; ce vendredi prochain,
lodgings there where we are lodged this Friday next
qui passez est, nous nous sommes deffendu à aus,
which past is we ourselves are defended against them
nous à pié et il à cheval.» Et mout d'autres beles
we on foot and they on horse And many of-other fair
paroles lour dist pour aus reconforter.
words to-them he-said for them to-comfort

280 Pour ce que il nous couvient poursuivre nostre matiere, laquel il
For this that it us behooves to-pursue our matter which it
nous couvient un pou entrelacier, pour faire entendre comment
us behooves a little to-interlace for to-make understand how
li soudanc tenoient lour gent ordenéement et aréement. Et
the sultans held their people orderly and arrayed And
est voirs que le plus de lour chevalerie il avoient fait de gens
it-is true that the most of their knighthood they had made of people
estranges, que marcheant prenoient en estranges terre pour
strange whom merchants took in strange land for
vendre; et il les achetoient mout volentiers et chierement. Et
to-sell and they them bought very willingly and dearly And
ces gens que il menoient en Egypte, prenoient en Orient, parce
these people whom they brought into Egypt they-took in Orient because
que quant li uns des roys d'Orient avoit desconfit l'autre, si
that when the one of-the kings of-Orient had discomfited the-other so
prenoit les povres gens que il avoit conquis, et les vendoit aus
he-took the poor people that he had conquered and them sold to-the
marcheans; et li marcheant les revenoient vendre en Egypte.
merchants and the merchants them came-again to-sell in Egypt

281 La chose estoit si ordenée que les enfans, jusques à tant
The thing was so ordered that the children until to so-much
que barbe lour venoit, li soudans les nourrissoit en sa
that beard to-them came the sultan them nourished in his

maison; en tel maniere que selonc ce que il estoient,
house in such manner that according-to this that they were
li soudans lour fesoit faire ars à lour point; et si tost
the sultan to-them had made bows to their point and so soon
comme il enforçoient, il getoient lour foibles ars en
as they grew-strong they cast their feeble bows into
l'artillerie au soudanc, et li maistres artilliers lour bailloit
the-armory of-the sultan and the master artillerer to-them gave
ars si fors comme ils les pooient teser.
bows as strong as they them could draw
Les armes au soudanc estoient d'or; et tiex armes comme 282
The arms of-the sultan were of-gold and such arms as
li soudans portoit, portoient celle joene gent; et estoient
the sultan bore bore that young people and they-were
appelei bahariz. Maintenant que les barbes lour venoient,
called Bahariz As-soon as the beards to-them came
li soudans les fesoit chevaliers. Et portoient les armes au
the sultan them made knights And they-bore the arms of-the
soudanc fors que tant que il y avoit difference, c'est
sultan except that so-much that it there had difference this-is
à savoir ensignes vermeilles, roses ou bendes vermeilles, ou
to know ensigns red roses or bends red or
oisiaus, ou autres enseignes que il metoient sus armes
birds or other ensigns that they put upon arms
d'or, teix comme il lour plaisoit.
of-gold such as it to-them pleased
Et ceste gent que je vous nomme, appeloit l'on de la 283
And this people whom I to-you name called one of the
Haulequa; car li beharis gesoient dedans les tentes au
Halca for the Bahariz lay within the tents of-the
soudanc. Quant li soudans estoit en l'ost, cil de la Haulequa
sultan When the sultan was in the-host those of the Halca

estoient logié entour les heberges le soudanc, et establi
were lodged around the lodgings (of-)the sultan and established
pour le cors le soudanc garder. A la porte de la herberge
for the body (of-)the sultan to-guard At the gate of the lodging
le soudanc, estoient logié en une petite tente li portier
(of-)the sultan were lodged in a little tent the porters
le soudanc, et sui menestrier, qui avoient cors sarrazinnois
(of-)the sultan and his minstrels who had horns Saracen
et tabours et nacaires. Et fesoient tel noise au point dou
and drums and kettledrums And they-made such noise at-the point of-the
jour et à l'anuitier, que cil qui estoient delez aus ne pooient
day and at the-nightfall that those who were beside them not could
entendre li uns l'autre; et clerement les oioit l'on parmi l'ost.
hear the one the-other and clearly them heard one through the-host
284 Ne li menestrier ne fussent jà si hardi que il sonnassent
Nor the minstrels not would-be ever so bold that they should-sound
lour estrumens de jour, ne mais que par le maistre de la
their instruments by day nor but that by the master of the
Haulequa: dont il estoit ainsi que quant li soudans vouloit
Halca whence it was so that when the sultan wished
chargier, il envoioit querre le maistre de la Haulequa
to-charge he sent to-seek the master of the Halca
et li fesoit son commandement. Et lors li maistres
and to-him made his command And then the master
fesoit sonner les estrumens au soudanc, et lors touz li
had sounded the instruments of-the sultan and then all the
os venoit pour oïr le commandement au soudanc: li
host came for to-hear the command of-the sultan the
maistres de la Hauleca le disoit, et touz li os le fesoit.
master of the Halca it said and all the host it did

Quand li soudans se conbatoit, les chevaliers de la 285
When the sultan himself fought the knights of the
Hauleca, selonc ce que il se prouvoient bien en la
Halca according-to this that they themselves proved well in the
bataille, li soudans en fesoit amiraus, et lour bailloit en
battle the sultan thereof made emirs and to-them gave in
lour compaingnie dous cens chevaliers ou trois cens; et
their company two hundred knights or three hundred and
comme miex le fesoient, et plus lour donnoit li soudans.
as better it they-did and more to-them gave the sultan
Li pris qui est en lour chevalerie si est teix que, quant il sont 286
The prize which is in their knighthood so is such that when they are
si preu et si riche que il n'i ait que dire, et li soudans
so valiant and so rich that it not-there may-have what to-say and the sultan
a poour que il ne le tuent ou que il ne le desheritent, si
has fear that they not him may-kill or that they not him may-disinherit so
les fait penre et mourir en sa prison, et à lour femmes
them be-makes be-taken and die in his prison and from their wives
tolt ce que elles ont. Et ceste chose fist li soudans de ceus qui
takes that which they have And this thing did the sultan with those who
pristrent le conte de Monfort et le conte de Bar, et autel fist
took the count of Montfort and the count of Bar and the-same did
Boudendars de ceus qui avoient desconfit le roy de Hermenie;
Bundukdar with those who had discomfited the king of Armenia
car pour ce que il cuidoient avoir bien, il descendirent à
for for this that they thought to-have good they dismounted on
pié et l'alerent saluer là où il chaçoit aus bestes sauvaiges.
foot and him-went to-greet there where he hunted at-the beasts wild
Et il lour respondi: «Je ne vous salu pas;» car il li
And he to-them answered I not you greet at-all for they to-him
avoient destourbée sa chace. Et lour fist les testes coper.
had disturbed his hunt And to-them had the heads cut

Sickness in the Host

XXVII

The dead sultan's son gives his father's officers' rods of gold to his own men; the council plots his death. Nine days after the battles the dead rise in the river and pile at the bridge, and the king hires a hundred rascals to sort Christians from Saracens. Through Lent the host eats only burbots, and a sickness of the legs and gums spreads. Galleys dragged overland cut off food from Damietta, until at Easter an ox costs eighty pounds and an egg twelve pence.

287 Or revenons à nostre matiere et disons ainsi, que li
Now let-us-return to our matter and let-us-say thus that the
soudans qui mors estoit, avoit un sien fil de l'aage de
sultan who dead was had a his son of the-age of
vingt-cinq ans, saige et apert et malicieus; et pour ce que
twenty-five years wise and adroit and malicious and for this that
il doutoit que il ne le desheritast, li donna un réaume
he feared that he — him might-disinherit to-him gave a realm
que il avoit en Orient. Maintenant que li soudans fu
that he had in Orient As-soon as the sultan was
mors, li amiral l'envoierent querre; et sitost comme il vint
dead the emirs him-sent to-seek and as-soon as he came
en Egypte, il osta et tolli au seneschal son pere,
into Egypt he removed and took-away from-the seneschal (of-)his father
et au connestable, et au mareschal les verges d'or,
and from-the constable and from-the marshal the rods of-gold
et les donna à ceus qui estoient venu avec li d'Orient.
and them gave to those who were come with him from-Orient
288 Quand il virent ce, il en orent si grant despit, et tuit
When they saw this they thereof had so great spite and all
li autre aussi qui estoient dou conseil le pere, pour la
the others also who were of-the council (of-)the father for the

deshonour que il lour avoit faite. Et pour ce que il
dishonor that he to-them had done And for this that they
doutoient que il ne feist autel d'aus comme ses peres
feared that he not might-do the-same with-them as his father
avoit fait à ceus qui avoient pris le conte de Bar et le conte
had done to those who had taken the count of Bar and the count
de Monfort, ainsi comme il est devant dit, il pourchacierent
of Montfort just as it is before said they pursued
tant à ceus de la Halequa (qui sont devant nommei, qui
so-much with those of the Halca who are before named who
le cors dou soudanc devoient garder), que il lour orent
the body of-the sultan ought guard that they to-them had
couvent que à lour requeste il lour occirroient le soudanc.
covenant that at their request they for-them would-kill the sultan
Après les dous batailles devant dites, commencierent à venir 289
After the two battles before said began to come
li grant meschief en l'ost; car au chief de nuef jours, li
the great hardships in the-host for at-the end of nine days the
cors de nos gens que il avoient tuez vindrent au desus
bodies of our people whom they had killed came to-the top
de l'yaue; et dit l'on que c'estoit pour ce que li fiel en
of the-water and says one that this-was for this that the galls of-them
estoient pourri. Il en vindrent flotant jusques au pont
were rotted They thence came floating until to-the bridge
qui estoit entre nos dous os, et ne porent passer, pour
which was between our two hosts and not could pass for
ce que li pons joingnoit à l'yaue. Si grant foison en y
this that the bridge joined to the-water So great plenty thereof there
avoit, que touz li fluns estoit pleins de mors dès l'une rive
had that all the river was full of dead from the-one bank
jusques à l'autre, et de lonc bien le giet d'une pierre menue.
until to the-other and of length fully the throw of-a stone small

290 Li roys avoit loez cent ribaus, qui bien y furent huit
The king had hired a-hundred rascals who well there were eight
jours. Les cors aus Sarrazins, qui estoient retaillié, getoient
days The bodies of-the Saracens who were circumcised they-cast
d'autre part dou pont, et laissoient aler d'autre part l'yaue;
on-other side of-the bridge and let go on-other side the-water
et les crestiens fesoient mettre en grans fosses, les uns avec
and the Christians they-had put in great ditches the ones with
les autres. Je y vi les chamberlans au conte d'Artois,
the others I there saw the chamberlains of-the count of-Artois
et mout d'autres, qui queroient lour amis entre les mors;
and many of-others who sought their friends among the dead
ne onques n'oy dire que nulz y fust retrouvez.
nor ever not-heard say that any there were found-again
291 Nous ne mangiens nulz poissons en l'ost tout le quaresme,
We not ate any fish in the-host all the Lent
mais que bourbetes; et les bourbetes manjoient les gens mors,
but that burbots and the burbots ate the people dead
pour ce que ce sont glout poisson. Et pour ce meschief,
for this that these are glutton fish And for this hardship
et pour l'enfermetei dou païs, là où il ne pleut nulle foiz
and for the-unhealthiness of-the country there where it not rains any time
goutte d'yaue, nous vint la maladie de l'ost, qui estoit teix,
drop of-water to-us came the sickness of the-host which was such
que la chars de nos jambes sechoit toute, et li cuirs de nos
that the flesh of our legs dried all and the skin of our
jambes devenoit tavelés de noir et de terre, aussi comme une
legs became spotted with black and with earth just as an
vieille heuse; et à nous qui aviens tel maladie, venoit chars
old boot and to us who had such sickness came flesh
pourrie es gencives; ne nulz ne eschapoit de celle maladie,
rotted in-the gums nor anyone not escaped from that sickness

que mourir ne l'en couvenist. Li signes de la mort
that to-die not him-thence behooved The sign of the death
estoit teix, que là où li nez seignoit, il couvenoit mourir.
was such that there where the nose bled it behooved to-die
A la quinzeinne après, li Turc, pour nous affamer (dont 292
At the fortnight after the Turks for us to-starve whereof
mout de gent se merveillierent), prirent plusours de lour
many of people themselves marveled took several of their
galies desus nostre ost, et les firent treinner par terre et
galleys above our host and them had dragged by land and
mettre ou flum qui venoit de Damiete, bien une lieue
put into-the river which came from Damietta fully a league
desous nostre ost. Et ces galies nous donnerent famine; que
below our host And these galleys us gave famine for
nus ne nous osoit venir de Damiete pour aporter garnison
anyone not us dared come from Damietta for to-bring provision
contremont l'yaue, pour lour galies. Nous ne seumes onques
upstream the-water for their galleys We not knew ever
nouvelles de ces choses jusques à tant que uns vaisselez
tidings of these things until to so-much that a little-vessel
au conte de Flandres, qui eschapa d'aus par force
of-the count of Flanders which escaped from-them by force
d'yaue, le nous dist, et que les galies dou soudanc avoient
of-water it us told and that the galleys of-the sultan had
bien gaaingnié quatre-vins de nos galies qui estoient venues
fully gained fourscore of our galleys which were come
de vers Damiete, et tuées les gens qui estoient dedans.
from toward Damietta and killed the people who were within
Par ce avint si grans chiertés en l'ost, que tantost que la 293
By this happened so great dearth in the-host that as-soon as the
Pasque fu venue, uns bues valoit en l'ost quatre-vins livres,
Easter was come an ox was-worth in the-host fourscore pounds

et uns moutons trente livres, et uns pors trente livres,
and a sheep thirty pounds and a pig thirty pounds
et uns œs douze deniers, et uns muis de vin dix livres.
and an egg twelve pence and a hogshead of wine ten pounds

Joinville Falls Ill

XXVIII

The king moves the host across the river behind a barbican. At Hugh of Landricourt's bier six knights laugh about remarrying his wife, and in the next day's battle all six are killed or mortally wounded. Joinville falls sick; his priest faints at the sacring, and Joinville holds him through his last mass. Damietta is offered for the kingdom of Jerusalem, but the Saracens will take only the king as surety, which Geoffrey of Sargines refuses.

294 Quant li roys et li baron virent ce, il s'acorderent que
When the king and the barons saw this they themselves-agreed that
li roys feist passer son ost par devers Babiloinne, en
the king should-have cross his host by toward Babylon into
l'ost le duc de Bourgoingne, qui estoit sus le flum
the-host (of-)the duke of Burgundy which was on the river
qui aloit à Damiete. Pour requerre sa gent plus sauvement,
which went to Damietta For to-gather-up his people more safely
fist li roys faire une barbaquane devant le pont qui estoit
had the king made a barbican before the bridge which was
entre nos dous os, en tel maniere que l'on pooit entrer
between our two hosts in such manner that one could enter
de dous pars en la barbaquane à cheval.
from two sides into the barbican on horse

Quant la barbacane fu arée, si s'arma touz li os le roy, 295
When the barbican was arrayed so itself-armed all the host (of-)the king
et y ot grant assaut de Turs à l'ost le roy. Toutevoiz
and there had great assault of Turks on the-host (of-)the king All-the-same
ne se mut li roys ne ses gens, jusques à tant que touz
not himself moved the king nor his people until to so-much that all
li harnoiz fu portez outre; et lors passa li roys et sa
the harness was carried across and then crossed the king and his
bataille après li, et tuit li autre baron après, fors que mon
battalion after him and all the other barons after except that my
signour Gautier de Chasteillon, qui fist l'arriere-garde. Et à
lord Walter of Châtillon who made the-rearguard And at
l'entrer en la barbacane, rescout mes sires Erars de Walery
the-entering into the barbican rescued my lord Erard of Valéry
mon signour Jehan, son frere, que li Turc enmenoient pris.
my lord John his brother whom the Turks led-away taken
Quant touz li os fu entrez dedans, cil qui demourerent 296
When all the host was entered within those who remained
en la barbacane furent à grant meschief; car la barbacane
in the barbican were in great hardship for the barbican
n'estoit pas haute, si que li Turc lour traioient de visée
not-was at-all high so that the Turks at-them shot with aim
à cheval, et li Sarrazin à pié lour getoient les motes
on horse and the Saracens on foot at-them cast the clods
de terre enmi les visaiges. Tuit estoient perdu, se ce ne
of earth amid the faces All were lost if this not
fust li cuens d'Anjou (qui puis fu roys de Sezile), qui les
were the count of-Anjou who after was king of Sicily who them
ala rescourre et les enmena sauvement. De celle journée
went to-rescue and them led-away safely Of that day

emporta le pris mes sires Geffroys de Mussanbourc, le pris
carried-off the prize my lord Geoffrey of Mussambourg the prize
de touz ceus qui estoient en la barbacane.
of all those who were in the barbican

297 La vegile de quaresme-pernant, vi une merveille que je vous
The vigil of Shrove-Tuesday I-saw a marvel which I to-you
vueil raconter; car ce jour meismes, fu mis en terre mes sires
wish to-recount for this day same was put in ground my lord
Hues de Landricourt, qui estoit avec moy à baniere. Là
Hugh of Landricourt who was with me with banner There
où il estoit en biere en ma chapelle, six de mes chevaliers
where he was on bier in my chapel six of my knights
estoient apuié sus plusours saz pleins d'orge; et pour ce que
were leaning on several sacks full of-barley and for this that
il parloient haut en ma chapelle et que il faisoient noise
they spoke loud in my chapel and that they made noise
au prestre, je lour alai dire que il se teussent,
to-the priest I to-them went to-say that they themselves should-be-silent
et lour dis que vileinne chose estoit de chevaliers et de
and to-them said that churlish thing it-was of knights and of
gentiz homes qui parloient tandis que l'on chantoit la messe.
gentle men who spoke while that one sang the mass

298 Et il me commencierent à rire, et me distrent en riant
And they me began to laugh and me said in laughing
que il li remarioient sa femme. Et je les enchoisonnai
that they to-him remarried his wife And I them rebuked
et lour dis que tiex paroles n'estoient ne bones ne beles,
and to-them said that such words not-were neither good nor fair
et que tost avoient oublié lour compaingnon. Et Diex en
and that soon they-had forgotten their companion And God thereof
fist tel vengance que l'endemain fu la grans bataille dou
made such vengeance that the-next-day was the great battle of-the

quaresme-prenant, dont il furent mort ou navrei à mort;
Shrove-Tuesday whereof they were dead or wounded to death
par quoy il convint lour femmes remarier toutes six.
by which it behooved their wives to-remarry all six
Pour les bleceures que j'oi le jour de quaresme-prenant, me 299
For the wounds that I-had the day of Shrove-Tuesday me
prist la maladie de l'ost, de la bouche et des jambes, et une
took the sickness of the-host of the mouth and of-the legs and a
double tierceinne, et une reume si grans en la teste que la
double tertian and a rheum so great in the head that the
reume me filoit de la teste parmi les nariles; et pour les dites
rheum me ran from the head through the nostrils and for the said
maladies, acouchai ou lit malades en la mi-quaresme: dont il
sicknesses I-took-to-bed in-the bed sick in the mid-Lent whence it
avint ainsi que mes prestres me chantoit la messe devant
happened so that my priest for-me sang the mass before
mon lit, en mon paveillon; et avoit la maladie que j'avoie.
my bed in my pavilion and he-had the sickness that I-had
Or avint ainsi que en son sacrement il se pasma. 300
Now happened so that in his sacrament he himself swooned
Quant je vi que il vouloit cheoir, je qui avoie ma cote
When I saw that he was-about to-fall I who had my tunic
vestue, sailli de mon lit touz deschaus, et l'embraçai, et
donned leapt from my bed all unshod and him-embraced and
li deis que il feist tout à trait et tout belement son
to-him said that he should-do all at leisure and all softly his
sacrement; que je ne le lairoie tant que il l'averoit tout
sacrament for I not him would-leave until that he it-would-have all
fait. Il revint à soi, et fist son sacrement, et parchanta
done He came-back to himself and did his sacrament and sang-through
sa messe tout entierement; ne onques puis ne chanta.
his mass all entirely nor ever after not sang

301 Après ces choses, prist li consaus le roy et li consaus
After these things took the council (of-)the king and the council
le soudanc journée d'aus acorder. Li traitiés de l'acorder
(of-)the sultan day of-them to-agree The treaty of the-agreeing
fu teix, que l'on devoit rendre au soudanc Damiete, et
was such that one ought render to-the sultan Damietta and
li soudans devoit rendre au roy le réaume de Jerusalem;
the sultan ought render to-the king the realm of Jerusalem
et li dut garder li soudans les malades qui estoient à
and to-him ought guard the sultan the sick who were at
Damiete, et les chars salées (pour ce que il ne mangoient
Damietta and the meats salted for this that they not ate
point de porc), et les engins le roy, jusques à tant
at-all of pork and the engines (of-)the king until to so-much
que li roys pourroit renvoier querre toutes ces choses.
that the king could send-back to-seek all these things
302 Il demanderent au consoil le roy quel seurtei il donroient
They asked of-the council (of-)the king what surety they would-give
par quoy il reussent Damiete. Li consaus le roy lour
by which they might-have-again Damietta The council (of-)the king to-them
offri que il detenissent un des freres le roy tant que il
offered that they should-detain one of-the brothers (of-)the king until that they
reussent Damiete, ou le conte d'Anjou, ou le conte de
should-have-again Damietta either the count of-Anjou or the count of
Poitiers. Li Sarrazin distrent que il n'en feroient riens, se
Poitiers The Saracens said that they not-thereof would-do anything if
on ne lour lessoit le cors le roy en gaige; dont mes sires
one not to-them left the body (of-)the king in pledge whereof my lord
Geffrois de Sergines, li bons chevaliers, dist que il ameroit
Geoffrey of Sargines the good knight said that he would-love

miex que li Sarrazin les eussent touz mors et pris, que ce que
better that the Saracens them had all killed and taken than this that
il lour fust reprouvei que il eussent lessié le roy en gaige.
it to-them were reproached that they had left the king in pledge
La maladie commença à engregier en l'ost en tel maniere, 303
The sickness began to worsen in the-host in such manner
que il venoit tant de char morte es gencives à nostre
that it came so-much of flesh dead in-the gums to our
gent, que il couvenoit que barbier ostassent la char morte,
people that it behooved that barbers should-remove the flesh dead
pour ce que il peussent la viande maschier et avaler
for this that they could the food chew and swallow
aval. Grans pitiés estoit d'oïr braire les gens parmi l'ost
down Great pity it-was of-hearing bray the people through the-host
ausquiex l'on copoit la char morte; car il bréoient aussi
to-whom one cut the flesh dead for they brayed just
comme femmes qui traveillent d'enfant.
as women who labor with-child

The Retreat, and the King Taken

XXIX

The king orders the retreat to Damietta after the octave of Easter. Joinville sees the Saracens kill the sick, and the sick men's sailors nearly sink his boat. The king, sick with dysentery, will not leave his people. As he told Joinville, Geoffrey of Sargines guarded him as a servant keeps flies from a cup, and he lay near death in a woman's lap. While Philip of Montfort treats with an emir, the traitor Marcel cries that the king orders surrender, and all are taken.

304 Quant li roys vit que il n'avoit pooir d'ilec demourer que
When the king saw that he not-had power from-there to-remain that
mourir ne le couvenist, li et sa gent, il ordena et atira
to-die not him behooved him and his people he ordained and arranged
que il mouveroit le mardi au soir, à l'anuitier, après les
that he would-set-out the Tuesday at-the evening at the-nightfall after the
octaves de Pasques, pour revenir à Damiete. Il fist parler aus
octaves of Easter for to-return to Damietta He had speak to-the
marronniers qui avoient les galies, comment il lour couvenoit
mariners who had the galleys how it them behooved
recueillir tous les malades et les mener à Damiete. Li roys
to-take-up all the sick and them take to Damietta The king
commanda à Josselin de Cornaut et à ses freres et aus
commanded to Jocelin of Cornaut and to his brothers and to-the
autres engingnours, que il copassent les cordes qui tenoient
other engineers that they should-cut the ropes which held
les pons entre nous et les Sarrazins; et riens n'en firent.
the bridges between us and the Saracens and anything not-thereof they-did
305 Nous nous requeillimes le mardi après diner de relevée, et
We ourselves embarked the Tuesday after dinner in afternoon and
dui de mes chevaliers que je avoie de remenant, et ma mesnie.
two of my knights that I had of remnant and my household

Quant ce vint que il commença à anuitier, je dis à mes
When this came that it began to grow-night I said to my
mariniers que il tirassent lour ancre et que nous en alissiens
mariners that they should-draw their anchor and that we thence should-go
aval; et il distrent que il n'oseroient, pour ce que les
downstream and they said that they not-would-dare for this that the
galies au soudanc, qui estoient entre nous et Damiete nous
galleys of-the sultan which were between us and Damietta us
occirroient. Li marinier avoient fait grans feus pour requeillir
would-kill The mariners had made great fires for to-take-up
les malades dedans lour galies, et li malade s'estoient trait
the sick within their galleys and the sick themselves-were drawn
sur la rive dou flum. Tandis que je prioie les mariniers que
on the bank of-the river While that I prayed the mariners that
nous en alissiens, li Sarrazin entrerent en l'ost; et vi à
we thence should-go the Saracens entered into the-host and I-saw by
la clartei dou feu que il occioient les malades sus la rive.
the brightness of-the fire that they killed the sick on the bank
Endementres que il tiroient lour ancre, li marinier qui 306
While that they drew their anchor the mariners who
devoient mener les malades, couperent les cordes de lour
ought take the sick cut the ropes of their
ancres et de lour galies, et acoururent par à coste nostre
anchors and of their galleys and ran by at side our
petit vaissel, et nous enclorrent li un d'une part et li autre
little vessel and us enclosed the ones on-one side and the others
d'autre part, que à pou se ala que il ne nous afondrerent en
on-other side so-that by little itself went that they not us sank in
l'yaue. Quant nous fumes eschapei de ce peril, et nous en
the-water When we were escaped from this peril and we thence
aliens contreval le flum, li roys, qui avoit la maladie de l'ost
went downstream the river the king who had the sickness of the-host

et menoison mout fort, se fust bien garantis es galies,
and dysentery very strong himself would-have well protected in-the galleys
se il vousist; mais il dist que, se Dieu plaisoit, il ne lairoit
if he had-wished but he said that if God pleased he not would-leave
jà son peuple. Le soir, se pasma par plusours foiz; et pour
ever his people The evening he swooned by several times and for
la fort menuison que il avoit, li couvint coper le font de ses
the strong dysentery that he had him behooved to-cut the bottom of his
braies, toutes les foiz que il descendoit pour aler à chambre.
breeches all the times that he went-down for to-go to chamber

307 L'on escrioit à nous qui nagiens par l'yaue, que nous
One cried at us who sailed on the-water that we
attendissiens le roy; et quant nous ne le vouliens atendre,
should-await the king and when we not him wished to-await
l'on traioit à nous de quarriaus: par quoy il nous couvenoit
one shot at us with quarrels by which it us behooved
arester tant que il nous donnoient congié de nagier.
to-stop until that they us gave leave of sailing

308 Or vous lairai ici, si vous dirai comment li roys fu
Now you I-will-leave here so to-you will-tell how the king was
pris, ainsi comme il-meismes le me conta. Il me dist que
taken just as he-himself it me told He me said that
il avoit lessie la seue bataille, et s'estoit mis, entre li
he had left the his battalion and himself-was put between himself
et mon signour Geffroy de Sargines, en la bataille mon
and my lord Geoffrey of Sargines in the battalion (of-)my
signour Gautier de Chasteillon, qui fesoit l'ariere-garde.
lord Walter of Châtillon who made the-rearguard

309 Et me conta li roys que il estoit montez sur un petit
And me told the king that he was mounted on a little
roncin, une houce de soye vestue; et dist que dariere li ne
rouncy a housing of silk donned and said that behind him not

demoura de touz chevaliers ne de touz serjans, que mes sires
remained of all knights nor of all sergeants but my lord
Geffroys de Sergines, liquex amena le roy jusques au quazel
Geoffrey of Sargines which brought the king until to-the village
là où li roys fu pris; en tel maniere que li roys me
there where the king was taken in such manner that the king me
conta que mes sires Geffroys de Sergines le deffendoit des
told that my lord Geoffrey of Sargines him defended from-the
Sarrazins, aussi comme li bons vallez deffent le hanap son
Saracens just as the good varlet defends the goblet (of-)his
signour des mouches; car toutes les foiz que li Sarrazin
lord from-the flies for all the times that the Saracens
l'aprochoient, il prenoit son espié, que il avoit mis entre
him-approached he took his spear that he had put between
li et l'arçon de sa selle, et le metoit desous s'essele,
him and the-saddlebow of his saddle and it put below his-armpit
et lour recouroit sus, et les chassoit en sus dou roy.
and on-them ran upon and them chased in away from-the king
Et ainsi mena le roy jusques au kasel; et le descendirent 310
And thus he-brought the king until to-the village and him set-down
en une maison, et le couchierent ou giron d'une bourjoise
in a house and him laid in-the lap of-a burgher-woman
de Paris aussi comme tout mort, et cuidoient que il ne deust
of Paris just as all dead and they-thought that he not ought
jà veoir le soir. Illec vint mes sires Phelippes de Monfort, et
ever see the evening There came my lord Philip of Montfort and
dist au roy que il véoit l'amiral à qui il avoit traitié de la
said to-the king that he saw the-emir with whom he had treated of the
treve; que se il vouloit, il iroit à li pour la treuve refaire
truce that if he wished he would-go to him for the truce to-remake
en la maniere que li Sarrasin vouloient. Li roys li pria que
in the manner that the Saracens wished The king him prayed that

il y alast, et que il le vouloit bien. Il ala au Sarrazin;
he there should-go and that he it wished well He went to-the Saracen
et li Sarrasins avoit ostée sa touaille de sa teste, et osta
and the Saracen had removed his turban from his head and removed
son anel de son doy pour asseurer que il tenroit la treve.
his ring from his finger for to-assure that he would-hold the truce
311 Dedans ce, avint une si grans meschéance à nostre gent;
Within this happened a so great mischance to our people
que uns traitres serjans, qui avoit à non Marcel, commença
that a traitor sergeant who had to name Marcel began
à crier à nostre gent: «Signour chevalier, rendés-vous, que
to cry to our people Lords knights yield-you for
li roys le vous mande; et ne faites pas occire le roy!»
the king it to-you commands and not make at-all be-killed the king
Tuit cuidierent que li roys lour eust mandei, et rendirent
All thought that the king to-them had commanded and yielded
lour espées aus Sarrasins. Li amiraus vit que li Sarrazin
their swords to-the Saracens The emir saw that the Saracens
amenoient nostre gent prins. Li amiraus dist à mon signour
brought our people taken The emir said to my lord
Phelippe que il n'aferoit pas que il donnast à nostre gent
Philip that it not-befitted at-all that he should-give to our people
treves, car il véoit bien que il estoient pris.
truce for he saw well that they were taken
312 Or avint ainsi à mon signour Phelippe que toute nostre gent
Now happened thus to my lord Philip that all our people
estoient pris, et il ne le fu pas pour ce que il estoit messagiers.
were taken and he not it was at-all for this that he was messenger
Or a une autre mauvaise maniere ou païs en la paiennime,
Now has an other evil manner in-the country in the heathendom
que quant li roys envoie ses messaiges au soudanc, ou li
that when the king sends his messengers to-the sultan or the

soudans au roy, et li roys meurt ou li soudans avant que
sultan to-the king and the king dies or the sultan before that
li messaige revieingnent, li messaige sont prison et esclave,
the messengers come-back the messengers are prisoner and slave
de quelque part que il soient, ou crestien ou sarrazin.
from whatever side that they may-be either Christian or Saracen

Joinville Taken

XXX

A wind robs them of the current, and before dawn Joinville's boat meets the sultan's galleys while Saracens kill the crews of stranded boats. He will not go ashore; his cellarer would have them all die, but they yield to four galleys. He throws his jewels and relics into the river, and a sailor calls him the king's cousin. A Saracen from the emperor's land saves him from the knife at his throat. Water runs from his nose, but a Saracen knight's drink cures him in two days.

Quant celle meschéance avint à nos gens que il furent 313
When that mischance happened to our people that they were
pris à terre, aussi avint à nous qui fumes prins en l'yaue,
taken on land so happened to us who were taken on the-water
ainsi comme vous orrez ci-après; car li vens nous vint de
just as you will-hear here-after for the wind to-us came from
vers Damiete, qui nous toli le courant de l'yaue; et li
toward Damietta which from-us took the current of the-water and the
chevalier que li roys avoit mis en ses courciers pour nos
knights whom the king had put in his swift-boats for our
malades deffendre, s'enfouirent. Nostre marinier perdirent le
sick to-defend themselves-fled Our mariners lost the

cours dou flum et se mistrent en une noe, dont
course of-the river and themselves put into a backwater whence
il nous couvint retourner arieres vers les Sarrasins.
it us behooved to-turn back toward the Saracens

314 Nous qui aliens par l'yaue, venimes un pou devant ce que
We who went by the-water came a little before this that
l'aube crevast, au passaige là où les galies au soudanc
the-dawn broke at-the passage there where the galleys of-the sultan
estoient, qui nous avoient tolu à venir les viandes de
were which us had taken-away to come the foods from
vers Damiete. Là ot grant hutin; car il traioient à nous
toward Damietta There was great fray for they shot at us
et à nostre gent qui estoient sur la rive de l'yaue, à
and at our people who were on the bank of the-water on
cheval, si grant foison de pylés atout le feu grejois, que
horse so great plenty of bolts with the fire Greek that
il sembloit que les estoiles dou ciel chéissent.
it seemed that the stars of-the sky fell

315 Quant nostre marinier nous orent ramenez dou bras dou
When our mariners us had brought-back from-the arm of-the
flum là où il nous orent enbatus, nous trouvames les
river there where they us had driven we found the
courciers le roy, que li roys nous avoit establiz pour
swift-boats (of-)the king which the king for-us had established for
nos malades deffendre, qui s'en venoient fuiant vers
our sick to-defend which themselves-thence came fleeing toward
Damiete. Lors leva uns vens qui venoit de vers Damiete,
Damietta Then rose a wind which came from toward Damietta
si fors que il nous toli le cours de l'yaue.
so strong that it from-us took the course of the-water

A l'une des rives dou flum et à l'autre, avoit si grant 316
At the-one of-the banks of-the river and at the-other there-was so great
foison de vaisselés à nostre gent qui ne pooient aler aval,
plenty of little-vessels of our people who not could go downstream
que li Sarrazin avoient pris et arestez; et tuoient les gens
which the Saracens had taken and stopped and they-killed the people
et les getoient en l'yaue, et traihoient les cofres et les
and them cast into the-water and drew-out the coffers and the
harnois des neis que il avoient gaaingnies à nostre gent.
harness of-the ships that they had won from our people
Li Sarrazin qui estoient à cheval sus la rive traioient à
The Saracens who were on horse on the bank shot at
nous de pylés, pour ce que ne vouliens aler à aus. Ma
us with bolts for this that not we-wished to-go to them My
gent m'orent vestu un haubert à tournoier, pour que li
people me-had clothed-in a hauberk for tourneying for that the
pylet qui chéoient en nostre vessel ne me bleçassent.
bolts which fell into our vessel not me might-wound
En ce point, ma gent, qui estoient en la pointe dou vessel 317
At this point my people who were in the point of-the vessel
aval, m'escrierent: «Sire, sire, vostre marinier, pour ce
downstream me-cried Lord lord your mariners for this
que li Sarrazin les menacent, vous veulent mener à terre.»
that the Saracens them threaten you wish to-take to land
Je me fiz lever par les bras, si febles comme je estoie,
I myself had raised by the arms as feeble as I was
et trais m'espée sur aus, et lour diz que je les occirroie
and drew my-sword upon them and to-them said that I them would-kill
se il me menoient à terre. Et il me respondirent que je
if they me took to land And they me answered that I
preisse lequel que je vourroie: ou il me menroient à terre,
should-take which that I would-wish either they me would-take to land

ou il me ancreroient en mi le flum jusques à tant que
or they me would-anchor in midst the river until to so-much that
li vens fust chois. Et je lour dis que j'amoie miex que il
the wind were fallen And I to-them said that I-loved better that they
m'ancrassent en mi le flum, que ce que il me menassent
me-should-anchor in midst the river than this that they me should-take
à terre, là où je véoie nostre occision; et il m'ancrerent.
to land there where I saw our slaughter and they me-anchored
318 Ne tarda gueres que nous veismes venir quatre galies dou
Not delayed much that we saw come four galleys of-the
soudanc, là où il avoit bien mil homes. Lors j'appelai
sultan there where it had fully thousand men Then I-called
mes chevaliers et ma gent, et lour demandai que il
my knights and my people and them asked what they
vouloient que nous feissiens, ou de nous rendre aus galies
wished that we should-do either of us to-yield to-the galleys
le soudanc, ou de nous rendre à ceus qui estoient à
(of-)the sultan or of us to-yield to those who were on
terre. Nous acordames tuit que nous amiens miex que nous
land We agreed all that we loved better that we
nous randissiens aus galies le soudanc, pour ce que
ourselves should-yield to-the galleys (of-)the sultan for this that
il nous tenroient touz ensemble, que ce que nous nous
they us would-hold all together than this that we ourselves
rendissiens à ceus qui estoient à terre, pour ce que il
should-yield to those who were on land for this that they
nous esparpilleroient et venderoient aus Beduyns.
us would-scatter and would-sell to-the Bedouins
319 Lors dist uns miens celeriers, qui estoit nés de Doulevens:
Then said a my cellarer who was born of Doulevant
«Sire, je ne m'acort pas à cest consoil.» Je li demandai
Lord I not myself-agree at-all to this counsel I him asked

auquel il s'acordoit, et il me dist: «Je m'acort que nous
to-which he himself-agreed and he me said I myself-agree that we
nous lessons touz tuer; si nous en irons tuit en paradis.»
ourselves let all kill so we thence will-go all into paradise
Mais nous ne le creumes pas.
But we not him believed at-all
Quant vi que penre nous escouvenoit, je prins mon escrin 320
When I-saw that to-be-taken us behooved I took my casket
et mes joiaus, et les getai ou flum, et mes reliques
and my jewels and them cast into-the river and my relics
aussi. Lors me dist uns de mes mariniers: «Sire, se vous
also Then me said one of my mariners Lord if you
ne me lessiés dire que vous soiés cousins au roy, l'on vous
not me let say that you are cousin to-the king one you
occira touz, et nous avec.» Et je diz que je vouloie bien que
will-kill all and us with-you And I said that I wished well that
il deist ce que il vourroit. Quant la premiere galie, qui
he should-say that which he would-wish When the first galley which
venoit vers nous pour nous hurter nostre vessel en travers,
came toward us for us to-ram our vessel in crosswise
oyrent ce, il geterent lour ancres près de nostre vessel.
heard this they cast their anchors near of our vessel
Lors m'envoia Diex un Sarrazin qui estoit de la terre 321
Then me-sent God a Saracen who was of the land
l'empereour, vestu de unes brayes de toile escrue; et en
(of-)the-emperor clothed in some breeches of cloth unbleached and thence
vint noant parmi le flum jusques à nostre vessel, et
came swimming across the river until to our vessel and
m'embraça par les flans, et me dist: «Sire, vous estes perdus,
me-embraced by the flanks and me said Lord you are lost
se vous ne metés consoil en vous; car il vous convient saillir
if you not put counsel in yourself for it you behooves to-leap

de vostre vessel sur le bec qui est tisons de celle galie; et
from your vessel on the beak which is keel of that galley and
se vous sailliés, il ne vous regarderont jà; car il entendent
if you leap they not you will-look-at ever for they attend
au gaaing de vostre vessel.» Il me geterent une corde de
to-the gain of your vessel They me cast a rope from
la galie; et je sailli sur l'estoc, ainsi comme Diex vout. Et
the galley and I leapt on the-stem just as God willed And
sachiez que je chancelai tellement que, se il ne fust saillis
know that I staggered so-much that if he not were leapt
après pour moy soustenir, je fusse cheus en l'yaue.
after for me to-support I would-have-been fallen into the-water
322 Il me mistrent en la galie, là où il avoit bien
They me put into the galley there where it had fully
quatorze-vins homes de lour gens, et il me tint touz jours
fourteen-score men of their people and he me held all days
embracié. Et lors il me porterent à terre et me saillirent
embraced And then they me bore to ground and me leapt
sur le cors pour moy coper la gorge; car cil qui m'eust
on the body for me to-cut the throat for he who me-might-have
occis cuidast estre honorez. Et cis Sarrazins me tenoit touz
killed thought to-be honored And this Saracen me held all
jours embracié, et crioit: «Cousin le roi!» En tel maniere
days embraced and cried Cousin (of-)the king In such manner
me porterent dous foiz par terre, et une à genoillons;
me they-bore two times to ground and one on knees
et lor je senti le coutel à la gorge. En cette persecucion,
and then I felt the knife at the throat In this persecution
me sauva Diex par l'aide dou Sarrazin, liquex me mena
me saved God by the-aid of-the Saracen who me led
jusques ou chastel, là où li chevalier sarrazin estoient.
until to-the castle there where the knights Saracen were

Quant je ving entre aus, il m'osterent mon hauberc; et pour 323
When I came among them they me-took-off my hauberk and for
la pitié qu'il orent de moy, il geterent sur moy un mien
the pity that-they had of me they cast over me a my
couvertour de escarlate fourrei de menu vair, que ma dame
coverlet of scarlet furred with small vair which my lady
ma mere m'avoit donnei; et li autres m'aporta une courroie
my mother me-had given and the other me-brought a belt
blanche, et je me ceingny sur mon couvertour, ouquel je
white and I myself girded over my coverlet in-which I
avoie fait un pertuis, et l'avoie vestu; et li autres m'aporta
had made a hole and it-I-had donned and the other me-brought
un chaperon, que je mis en ma teste. Et lors, pour la poour
a hood which I put on my head And then for the fear
que je avoie, je commençai à trembler bien fort, et pour la
that I had I began to tremble very hard and for the
maladie aussi. Et lors je demandai à boire, et l'on m'aporta
sickness also And then I asked to drink and one me-brought
de l'yaue en un pot; et si tost comme je la mis à ma
of the-water in a pot and so soon as I it put to my
bouche pour envoier aval, elle me sailli hors par les narilles.
mouth for to-send down it me leapt out by the nostrils
Quant je vi ce, je envoiai querre ma gent, et lour dis que 324
When I saw this I sent to-seek my people and to-them said that
je estoie mors, que j'avoie l'apostume en la gorge, et il
I was dead for I-had the-abscess in the throat and they
me demanderent comment je le savoie; et je lour moustrai,
me asked how I it knew and I them showed
et tantost que il virent que l'yaue me sailloit par la gorge
and as-soon as they saw that the-water me leapt by the throat
et par les narilles, il pristrent à plorer. Quant li chevalier
and by the nostrils they took to weep When the knights

sarrazin qui là estoient virent ma gent plorer, il demanderent
Saracen who there were saw my people weep they asked
au Sarrazin qui sauvez nous avoit pourquoy il ploroient;
of-the Saracen who saved us had why they wept
et il respondi que il entendoit que j'avoie l'apostume en
and he answered that he understood that I-had the-abscess in
la gorge, par quoy je ne pouoie eschaper. Et lors uns des
the throat by which I not could escape And then one of-the
chevaliers sarrazins dist à celi qui nous avoit garantiz, que
knights Saracen said to him who us had protected that
il nous reconfortast; car il me donroit tel chose à boivre
he us should-comfort for he me would-give such thing to drink
de quoy je seroie gueriz dedans dous jours; et si fist-il.
by which I would-be healed within two days and so did-he
325 Mes sires Raous de Wanou, qui estoit entour moy, avoit
My lord Ralph of Wanou who was about me had
estei esjaretez à la grant bataille dou quaresme-prenant,
been hamstrung at the great battle of-the Shrove-Tuesday
et ne pooit ester sur ses piés; et sachiez que uns viex
and not could stand on his feet and know that an old
Sarrazins chevaliers, qui estoit en la galie, le portoit aus
Saracen knight who was in the galley him carried to-the
chambres privées à son col.
chambers privy on his neck

The Prisoners at Mansourah

XXXI

The emir tells Joinville he did wisely to let the mariner call him the king's cousin. He eats meat on a Friday unknowing and fasts the Fridays of Lent anyway. As the prisoners are landed, his priest and clerk are killed, and the sick who fall are slain. At Mansourah, where those who will not renounce are beheaded, Count Peter refuses the sultan's council any castles. An old man comforts them; the king wins their release.

Li grans amiraus des galies m'envoia querre, et me demanda 326
The great emir of-the galleys me-sent to-seek and me asked
se je estoie cousins le roy; et je li dis que nanin,
if I was cousin (of-)the king and I to-him said that no
et li contai comment et pourquoy li mariniers avoit dit
and to-him told how and why the mariner had said
que je estoie cousins le roy. Et il dist que j'avoie fait
that I was cousin (of-)the king And he said that I-had done
que saiges; car autrement eussiens-nous estei tuit mort! Et
like wise-man for otherwise would-have-we been all dead And
il me demanda se je tenoie riens de lignaige à l'empereour
he me asked if I held anything of lineage to the-emperor
Ferri d'Allemaingne, qui lors vivoit; et je li respondi
Frederick of-Germany who then lived and I to-him answered
que je entendoie que madame ma mere estoit sa cousine
that I understood that my-lady my mother was his cousin
germainne; et il me dist que de tant m'en amoit-il miex.
german and he me said that by so-much me-thereof loved-he better
Tandis que nous mangiens, il fist venir un bourgois de 327
While that we ate he had come a burgher of
Paris devant nous. Quant li bourgois fu venus, il me dist:
Paris before us When the burgher was come he me said

«Sire, que faites-vous? — Que faiz-je donc?» feiz-je. — «En
Lord what do-you What do-I then said-I In
non Dieu, fist-il, vous mangiez char au vendredi!» Quant
name-of God said-he you eat meat on-the Friday When
j'oï ce, je boutai m'escuele arieres. Et il demanda à mon
I-heard this I thrust my-bowl back And he asked of my
Sarrazin pourquoy je avoie ce fait, et il li dist; et
Saracen why I had this done and he to-him said and
li amiraus li respondi que jà Diex ne m'en sauroit
the emir to-him answered that ever God not me-thereof would-know
mal grei, puisque je ne l'avoie fait à escient.
ill gratitude since I not it-had done to knowledge
328 Et sachiez que ceste response me fist li legas, quant nous
And know that this answer me made the legate when we
fumes hors de prison; et pour ce ne lessai-je pas que je ne
were out of prison and for this not left-I at-all that I not
jeunasse touz les vendredis de quaresme après, en pain et en
should-fast all the Fridays of Lent after on bread and on
yaue: dont li legas se courrouça mout forment à moy, pour
water whereof the legate himself angered very strongly at me for
ce que il n'avoit demourei avec le roy de riches homes que moy.
this that he not-had remained with the king of rich men but me
329 Le dymanche après, li amiraus me fist descendre et tous les
The Sunday after the emir me had go-down and all the
autres prisonniers qui avoient estei pris en l'yaue, sur la rive dou
other prisoners who had been taken on the-water on the bank of-the
flum. Endementieres que on trehoit mon signour Jehan, mon
river While that one drew my lord John my
bon prestre, hors de la soute de la galie, il se pausma; et on
good priest out of the hold of the galley he himself swooned and one
le tua et le geta l'on ou flum. Son clerc, qui se pasma
him killed and him cast one into-the river His clerk who himself swooned

aussi pour la maladie de l'ost que il avoit, l'on li geta un
also for the sickness of the-host that he had one on-him cast a
mortier sus la teste; et fu mors, et le geta l'on ou flum.
mortar upon the head and he-was dead and him cast one into-the river
Tandis que l'on descendoit les autres malades des galies 330
While that one brought-down the other sick from-the galleys
où il avoient estei en prison, il y avoit gens sarrasins
where they had been in prison it there had people Saracen
appareilliés, les espées toutes nues, que ceus qui chéoient, il
ready the swords all naked that those who fell they
les occioient et getoient touz ou flum. Je lour fis dire,
them killed and cast all into-the river I to-them had say
à mon Sarrazin, que il me sembloit que ce n'estoit pas bien
by my Saracen that it me seemed that this not-was at-all well
fait; car c'estoit contre les enseignemens Salehadin, qui dit que
done for this-was against the teachings (of-)Saladin who said that
l'on ne devoit nul home occire, puis que on li avoit donnei
one not ought any man kill since that one to-him had given
à mangier de son pain et de son sel. Et il me respondi que
to eat of his bread and of his salt And he me answered that
ce n'estoient pas home qui vausissent riens, pour ce que il
these not-were at-all men who were-worth anything for this that they
ne se pooient aidier pour les maladies que il avoient.
not themselves could help for the sicknesses that they had
Il me fist amener mes mariniers devant moy, et me dist que 331
He me had brought my mariners before me and me said that
il estoient tuit renoié; et je li dis que il n'eust jà
they were all renegade and I to-him said that he not-should-have ever
fiance en aus; car aussi tost comme il nous avoient lessiez,
trust in them for as soon as they us had left
aussi tost les lairoient-il, se il véoient ne lour point ne lour
as soon them would-leave-they if they saw either their point or their

lieu. Et li amiraus me fist response tel, que il s'acordoit à
place And the emir me made answer such that he himself-agreed with
moy; que Salehadins disoit que on ne vit onques de mauvais
me for Saladin said that one not saw ever of bad
crestien bon sarrazin, ne de mauvais sarrazin bon crestien.
Christian good Saracen nor of bad Saracen good Christian
332 Et après ces choses, il me fist monter sus un palefroy, et me
And after these things he me had mount upon a palfrey and me
menoit encoste de li. Et passames un pont de neis, et alames
led beside of him And we-crossed a bridge of ships and went
à la Masourre, là ou li roys et sa gent estoient pris; et
to the Mansourah there where the king and his people were taken and
venimes à l'entrée d'un grant paveillon, là où li escrivain
we-came to the-entry of-a great pavilion there where the scribes
le soudanc estoient; et firent illec escrire mon non. Lors
(of-)the sultan were and they-had there written my name Then
me dist mes Sarrazins: «Sire, je ne vous suivrai plus, car je
me said my Saracen Lord I not you will-follow more for I
ne puis; mais je vous pri, sire, que cest enfant que vous avez
not can but I you pray lord that this child whom you have
avec vous, que vous le tenez touz jours par le poing, que
with you that you him hold all days by the fist so-that
li Sarrazin ne le vous toillent.» Et cis enfes avoit non
the Saracens not him from-you may-take And this child had name
Berthelemin, et estoit fiz au signour de Monfaucon de baat.
Bartholomew and was son to-the lord of Montfaucon of bastardy
333 Quant mes nons fu mis en escrit, si me mena li amiraus
When my name was put in writing so me led the emir
dedans le paveillon là où li baron estoient, et plus de dix
within the pavilion there where the barons were and more than ten
mille personnes avec aus. Quant je entrai léans, li baron firent
thousand persons with them When I entered in-there the barons made

tuit si grant joie que on ne pooit goute oïr, et en louoient
all so great joy that one not could a-whit hear and thereof praised
Nostre Signour, et disoient que il me cuidoient avoir perdu.
Our Lord and said that they me thought to-have lost
Nous n'eumes gueres demourei illec, quant on fist lever l'un 334
We not-had much remained there when one had rise the-one
des plus riches homes qui là fust, et nous mena l'on en un
of-the most rich men who there was and us took one into an
autre paveillon. Mout de chevaliers et d'autres gens tenoient li
other pavilion Many of knights and of-other people held the
Sarrazin pris en une court qui estoit close de mur de terre.
Saracens taken in a court which was enclosed with wall of earth
De ce clos où il les avoient mis, les fesoient traire l'un
From this enclosure where they them had put them they-had drawn the-one
après l'autre, et lour demandoient: «Te veus-tu renoier?» Ceus
after the-other and them asked Thee wishest-thou to-deny Those
qui ne se vouloient renoier, on les fesoit mettre d'une part
who not themselves wished to-deny one them had put on-one side
et coper les testes; et ceus qui se renoioient, d'autre part.
and cut the heads and those who themselves denied on-other side
En ce point, nous envoia li soudans son consoil pour parler à 335
At this point us sent the sultan his council for to-speak to
nous; et demanderent à cui il diroient ce que li soudans
us and they-asked to whom they would-say that which the sultan
nous mandoit. Et nous lour deismes que il le deissent au
us sent-word And we to-them said that they it should-say to-the
bon conte Perron de Bretaingne. Il avoit gens illec qui savoient
good count Peter of Brittany It had people there who knew
le sarrazinnois et le françois, que l'on appele drugemens, qui
the Saracen-tongue and the French whom one calls dragomans who
enromançoient le sarrazinnois au conte Perron. Et furent les
put-into-French the Saracen-tongue to-the count Peter And were the

paroles teix; «Sire, li soudans nous envoie à vous pour savoir
words such Lord the sultan us sends to you for to-know
se vous vourriés estre delivre.» Li cuens respondi: «Oïl.»
if you would-wish to-be delivered The count answered Yes
336 — «Et que vous donrriés au soudanc pour vostre
And what you would-give to-the sultan for your
delivrance? — Ce que nous pourriens faire et souffrir par
deliverance That which we could do and suffer by
raison,» fist li cuens. «Et donriés-vous, firent-il, pour vostre
reason said the count And would-give-you said-they for your
delivrance, nulz des chastiaus aus barons d'outre mer?» Li
deliverance any of-the castles of-the barons of-over sea The
cuens respondi que il n'i avoit pooir; car on les tenoit
count answered that he not-there had power for one them held
de l'empereor d'Alemaingne qui lor vivoit. Il demanderent
from the-emperor of-Germany who then lived They asked
se nous renderiens nulz des chastiaus dou Temple ou de
if we would-render any of-the castles of-the Temple or of
l'Ospital pour nostre delivrance. Et li cuens respondi que
the-Hospital for our deliverance And the count answered that
ce ne pooit estre; que quant l'on y metoit les chastelains,
this not could be for when one there put the castellans
on lour fesoit jurer sur sains, que pour delivrance de cors
one them had swear on relics that for deliverance of body
de home, il ne renderoient nulz des chastiaus. Et il nous
of man they not would-render any of-the castles And they us
respondirent que il lour sembloit que nous n'aviens talent
answered that it to-them seemed that we not-had desire
d'estre delivrez, et que il s'en iroient et nous
of-being delivered and that they themselves-thence would-go and us

envoieroient ceus qui joueroient à nous des espées, aussi
would-send those who would-play with us with-the swords just
comme il avoient fait aus autres. Et s'en alerent.
as they had done to-the others And themselves-thence went
Maintenant que il s'en furent alei, se feri en nostre 337
As-soon as they themselves-thence were gone itself struck into our
paveillon une grans tourbe de joenes Sarrazins, les espées çaintes;
pavilion a great throng of young Saracens the swords girt
et amenoient avec aus un home de grant vieillesce, tout chanu,
and they-brought with them a man of great old-age all hoary
liquex nous fist demander se c'estoit voirs que nous créiens
who us had ask if this-were true that we believed
en un Dieu qui avoit estei pris pour nous, navrez et mors
in a God who had been taken for us wounded and dead
pour nous, et au tiers jour resuscitez. Et nous respondimes:
for us and on-the third day risen And we answered
«Oyl.» Et lors nous dist que nous ne nous deviens pas
Yes And then us he-said that we not ourselves ought at-all
desconforter, se nous aviens soufertes ces persecucions pour
discomfort if we had suffered these persecutions for
li; «car encore, dist-il, n'estes-vous pas mort pour li, ainsi
him for still said-he not-are-you at-all dead for him just
comme il fu mors pour vous; et se il ot pooir de li
as he was dead for you and if he had power of himself
resusciter, soiés certein que il vous deliverra quant li plaira.»
to-raise be certain that he you will-deliver when to-him will-please
Lors s'en ala, et tuit li autre joene gens après li; 338
Then himself-thence went and all the other young people after him
dont je fu mout liés, car je cuidoie certeinnement que il
whereof I was very glad for I thought certainly that they
nous fussent venu les testes tranchier. Et ne tarja gueres
to-us were come the heads to-cut And not delayed much

après quant les gens le soudanc vindrent, qui nous
after when the people (of-)the sultan came who us
distrent que li roys nous avoit pourchacie nostre delivrance.
said that the king for-us had obtained our deliverance
339 Après ce que li viex hom s'en fu alez qui nous ot
After this that the old man himself-thence was gone who us had
reconfortez, revint li consaus le soudanc à nous, et nous
comforted came-back the council (of-)the sultan to us and us
dirent que li roys nous avoit pourchacie nostre delivrance,
said that the king for-us had obtained our deliverance
et que nous envoissiens quatre de nos gens à li pour oyr
and that we should-send four of our people to him for to-hear
comment il avoit fait. Nous y envoiames mon signour Jehan
how he had done We there sent my lord John
de Waleri le preudome, mon signour Phelippe de Monfort, mon
of Valéry the worthy-man my lord Philip of Montfort my
signour Baudouin d'Ibelin, seneschal de Cypre, et mon signour
lord Baldwin of-Ibelin seneschal of Cyprus and my lord
Guion d'Ibelin, conestable de Cypre, l'un des miex entechiez
Guy of-Ibelin constable of Cyprus the-one of-the best endowed
chevaliers que je veisse onques, et qui plus amoit les gens de
knights that I saw ever and who most loved the people of
cest pays. Cist quatre nous raporterent la maniere comment li
this country These four us reported the manner how the
roys nous avoit pourchacie nostre delivrance; et elle fu teix.
king for-us had obtained our deliverance and it was such

The King Threatened

XXXII

The council demands the castles of the Temple, the Hospital, and the barons, and threatens the king with the bernicles. He promises five hundred thousand pounds, paid by the queen, for his people, and Damietta for his own body, since he will not ransom himself with money; the sultan, admiring a Frank who does not haggle, remits a hundred thousand. The barons are put in four galleys for Damietta and anchored before the sultan's lodging.

Li consaus au soudanc essaierent le roy en la maniere 340
The council of-the sultan tried the king in the manner
que il nous avoient essaiés, pour veoir se li roys lour
that they us had tried for to-see if the king to-them
vourroit promettre à delivrer nulz des chastiaus dou Temple
would-wish to-promise to deliver any of-the castles of-the Temple
ne de l'Ospital, ne nulz des chastiaus aus barons dou
or of the-Hospital or any of-the castles of-the barons of-the
païs; et ainsi comme Diex vout, li roys lour respondi
country and just as God willed the king to-them answered
tout en la maniere que nous aviens respondu. Et il le
all in the manner that we had answered And they him
menacierent, et li distrent que puisque il ne le vouloit
threatened and to-him said that since he not it wished
faire, que il le feroient mettre es bernicles.
to-do that they him would-have put in-the bernicles
Bernicles est li plus griez tourmens que l'on puisse soufrir; et 341
Bernicles is the most grievous torment that one may suffer and
sont dui tison ploiant, endentei ou chief; et entrent li uns
are two beams bending toothed at-the end and enter the one
en l'autre, et sont lié à fors corroies de buef ou chief.
into the-other and are bound with strong straps of ox-hide at-the end

Et quant il weulent mettre les gens dedans, si les couchent
And when they wish to-put the people within so them they-lay
sus lour costez et lour mettent les jambes parmi les chevilles
on their sides and to-them put the legs through the pins
dedans; et puis si font asseoir un home sur les tisons; dont il
within and then so make sit a man on the beams whence it
advient ainsi qu'il ne demourra jà demi pié entier de os qu'il
happens so that-it not will-remain ever half foot whole of bone that-it
ne soit touz debrisiés. Et pour faire au pis que il peuent,
not be all broken And for to-do at-the worst that they can
ou chief de trois jours que les jambes sont enflées, si remettent
at-the end of three days when the legs are swollen so they-put-back
les jambes enflées dedans les bernicles, et rebrisent tout
the legs swollen within the bernicles and break-again all
derechief. A ces menaces lour respondi li roys que il estoit
afresh To these threats to-them answered the king that he was
lour prisonniers, et que il pouoient faire de li lour volentei.
their prisoner and that they could do with him their will
342 Quant il virent que il ne pourroient vaincre le bon
When they saw that they not could vanquish the good
roy par menaces, si revindrent à li et li demanderent
king by threats so they-came-back to him and him asked
combien il vourroit donner au soudanc d'argent, et avec
how-much he would-wish to-give to-the sultan of-money and with
ce lour rendist Damiete. Et li roys lour respondi que
this to-them should-render Damietta And the king to-them answered that
se li soudans vouloit penre raisonnable somme de deniers
if the sultan wished to-take reasonable sum of pence
de li, que il manderoit à la royne que elle les paiast
from him that he would-send-word to the queen that she them should-pay
pour lour delivrance. Et il distrent: «Comment est-ce que
for their deliverance And they said How is-it that

vous ne nous voulez dire que vous ferez ces choses?» Et li
you not us wish to-say that you will-do these things And the
roys respondi que il ne savoit se la royne le vourroit faire,
king answered that he not knew if the queen it would-wish to-do
pour ce que elle estoit sa dame. Et lors li consaus s'en
for this that she was his lady And then the council itself-thence
rala parler au soudanc, et raporterent au roy que
went-again to-speak to-the sultan and they-reported to-the king that
se la royne vouloit paier dix cens mile besans d'or, qui
if the queen wished to-pay ten hundred thousand bezants of-gold which
valoient cinc cens mile livres, que il deliverroit le roy.
were-worth five hundred thousand pounds that he would-deliver the king
Et li roys lour demanda par lour sairemens se li soudans 343
And the king them asked by their oaths if the sultan
les deliverroit pour tant, se la royne le vouloit faire. Et il
them would-deliver for so-much if the queen it wished to-do And they
ralerent parler au soudanc, et au revenir firent le sairement
went-again to-speak to-the sultan and at-the returning made the oath
au roy que il le deliverroient ainsi. Et maintenant que
to-the king that they him would-deliver so And as-soon as
il orent jurei, li roys dist et promist aus amiraus que
they had sworn the king said and promised to-the emirs that
il paieroit volentiers les cinc cens mille livres pour la
he would-pay willingly the five hundred thousand pounds for the
delivrance de sa gent, et Damiette pour la delivrance de son
deliverance of his people and Damietta for the deliverance of his
cors; car il n'estoit pas teix que il se deust desraimbre
body for he not-was at-all such that he himself ought ransom
à deniers. Quant li soudans oy ce, il dist: «Par ma foi!
with pence When the sultan heard this he said By my faith
larges est li Frans quant il n'a pas barguignié sur si grant
liberal is the Frank when he not-has at-all bargained over so great

somme de deniers. Or li alés dire, fist li soudans, que
sum of pence Now to-him go to-say said the sultan that
je li doing cent mile livres pour la reançon paier.»
I to-him give a-hundred thousand pounds for the ransom to-pay
344 Lors fist entrer li soudans les riches homes en quatre galies,
Then had enter the sultan the rich men into four galleys
pour mener vers Damiete. En la galie là où je fu mis, fu
for to-take toward Damietta In the galley there where I was put was
li bons cuens Pierres de Bretaingne, li cuens Guillaumes de
the good count Peter of Brittany the count William of
Flandres, li bons cuens Jehans de Soissons, mes sires Imbers
Flanders the good count John of Soissons my lord Imbert
de Biaugeu, connestables de France; li bons chevaliers mes sires
of Beaujeu constable of France the good knight my lord
Baudoins d'Ybelin et mes sires Guis, ses freres, i furent mis.
Baldwin of-Ibelin and my lord Guy his brother there were put
345 Cil qui nous conduisoient en la galie, nous ariverent devant
Those who us conducted in the galley us landed before
une herberge que li soudans avoit fait tendre sur le flum, de
a lodging that the sultan had had pitched on the river in
tel maniere comme vous orrez. Devant celle herberge, avoit
such manner as you will-hear Before that lodging there-was
une tour de parches de sapin et close entour de toille tainte;
a tower of poles of fir and enclosed around with cloth dyed
et la porte estoit de la herberge. Et dedans celle porte, estoit
and the gate was of the lodging And within that gate was
uns paveillons tendus, là où li amiral, quant il aloient
a pavilion pitched there where the emirs when they went
parler au soudanc, lessoient lour espées et lour harnois.
to-speak to-the sultan left their swords and their harness
Après ce paveillon, ravoit une porte comme la premiere,
After this pavilion there-was-again a gate like the first

et par celle porte entroit l'on en un grant paveillon qui estoit
and by that gate entered one into a great pavilion which was
la sale au soudanc. Après la sale, avoit une tel tour comme
the hall of-the sultan After the hall there-was a such tower as
devant, par laquel l'on entroit en la chambre le soudanc.
before by which one entered into the chamber (of-)the sultan
Après la chambre le soudanc, avoit un prael; et enmi 346
After the chamber (of-)the sultan there-was a meadow and amid
le prael, avoit une tour plus haute que toutes les autres,
the meadow there-was a tower more high than all the others
là où li soudans aloit veoir tout le pays et tout l'ost.
there where the sultan went to-see all the country and all the-host
Dou prael movoit une alée qui aloit au flum, là où
From-the meadow set-out an alley which went to-the river there where
li soudans avoit fait tendre en l'yaue un paveillon pour
the sultan had had pitched in the-water a pavilion for
aler baignier. Toutes ces herberges estoient closes de treillis
to-go to-bathe All these lodgings were enclosed with trellis
de fust, et par dehors estoient li treillis couvert de toilles
of wood and by outside were the trellises covered with cloths
yndes, pour ce que cil qui estoient dehors ne peussent veoir
blue for this that those who were outside not could see
dedans; et les tours toutes quatre estoient couvertes de toille.
within and the towers all four were covered with cloth
Nous venimes le jeudi devant l'Ascencion en ce lieu, là 347
We came the Thursday before the-Ascension to this place there
où ces herberges estoient tendues. Les quatre galies là
where these lodgings were pitched The four galleys there
où entre nous estiens en prison, ancra l'on ou devant de
where together we were in prison anchored one in-the front of
la herberge le soudanc. En un paveillon qui estoit assez
the lodging (of-)the sultan In a pavilion which was quite

près des herberges le soudanc descendi-on le roy. Li
near the lodgings (of-)the sultan set-down-one the king The
soudans avoit ainsi atirié: que le samedi devant l'Ascension
sultan had thus arranged that the Saturday before the-Ascension
on li renderoit Damiete, et il renderoit le roy.
one to-him would-render Damietta and he would-render the king

The Sultan Murdered

XXXIII

The displaced emirs plot with the Halca, who attack the sultan after dinner; he flees to his tower, which they burn, then into the river, where Faraquataye cuts out his heart and asks the king what he will give him. Thirty men come to Joinville's galley; he kneels, saying "Thus died Saint Agnes," and absolves Guy of Ibelin. The emirs renew the terms: Damietta for the king and the great men, and two hundred thousand pounds before the king leaves the river.

348 Li amiral que li soudans avoit ostei de son consoil
The emirs whom the sultan had removed from his council
pour mettre les siens que il ot amenez d'estranges terres,
for to-put the his-own whom he had brought from-strange lands
pristrent consoil entre aus; et dist uns saiges hom Sarrazins
took counsel among them and said a wise man Saracen
en tel maniere: «Signour, vous véez la honte et la
in such manner Lords you see the shame and the
deshonour que li soudans nous fait, que il nous oste
dishonor that the sultan us does that he us removes
de l'onnour là où ses peres nous avoit mis. Pour laquel
from the-honor there where his father us had put For which
chose nous devons estre certein que, s'il se treuve dedans
thing we ought be certain that if-he himself finds within

la forteresse de Damiete, il nous fera penre et mourir
the fortress of Damietta he us will-have taken and die
en sa prison, aussi comme ses aious fist aus amiraus
in his prison just as his grandfather did to-the emirs
qui pristrent le conte de Bar et le conte de Monfort. Et
who took the count of Bar and the count of Montfort And
pour ce vaut-il miex, si comme il me semble, que nous
for this is-worth-it better so as it me seems that we
le façons occirre avant qu'il nous parte des mains.»
him make be-killed before that-he us depart from-the hands
Il alerent à ceus de la Halequa, et lour requistrent que 349
They went to those of the Halca and them asked that
il occeissent le soudanc, si tost comme il averoient mangié
they should-kill the sultan so soon as they would-have eaten
avec le soudanc, qui les en avoit semons. Or avint ainsi
with the sultan who them thereof had invited Now happened so
que après ce qu'il orent mangié, et li soudans s'en
that after this that-they had eaten and the sultan himself-thence
aloit en sa chambre et ot pris congié de ses amiraus, uns
went to his chamber and had taken leave of his emirs one
des chevaliers de la Halequa, qui portoit l'espée au soudanc,
of-the knights of the Halca who bore the-sword of-the sultan
feri le soudanc de s'espée meismes parmi la main, entre
struck the sultan with his-sword same through the hand between
les quatre dois, et li fendi la main jusques au bras.
the four fingers and to-him split the hand until to-the arm
Lors li soudans se retourna à ses amiraus, qui ce li 350
Then the sultan himself turned to his emirs who this him
avoient fait faire, et lour dist: «Signour, je me pleing
had had done and to-them said Lords I myself complain
à vous de ceus de la Hauleca, qui me vouloient occirre, si
to you of those of the Halca who me wished to-kill so

comme vous le pouez veoir.» Lors respondirent li chevalier
as you it can see Then answered the knights
de la Haulequa à une voiz au soudanc, et distrent
of the Halca with one voice to-the sultan and said
ainsi: «Puisque tu diz que nous te voulons occirre, il
thus Since thou sayest that we thee wish to-kill it
nous vaut miex que nous t'occions que tu nous occies.»
us is-worth better that we thee-kill than thou us kill
351 Lors firent sonner les nacaires, et touz li os vint demander
Then they-had sounded the kettledrums and all the host came to-ask
que li soudans vouloit. Et il lour respondirent que
what the sultan wished And they to-them answered that
Damiete estoit prise et que li soudans aloit à Damiete,
Damietta was taken and that the sultan went to Damietta
et que il lour mandoit que il alassent après li. Tuit
and that he to-them sent-word that they should-go after him All
s'armerent et ferirent des esperons vers Damiete. Et
themselves-armed and struck with-the spurs toward Damietta And
quant nous veismes que il en aloient vers Damiete, nous
when we saw that they thence went toward Damietta we
fumes à grant meschief de cuer, pour ce que nous cuidiens
were in great hardship of heart for this that we thought
que Damiete fust perdue. Li soudans, qui estoit joenes et
that Damietta were lost The sultan who was young and
legiers, s'enfui en la tour que il avoit fait faire, avec trois de
nimble himself-fled into the tower that he had had made with three of
ses evesques, qui avoient mangié avec li; et estoit la tours
his bishops who had eaten with him and was the tower
dariere sa chambre, aussi comme vous avés oy ci-devant.
behind his chamber just as you have heard here-before

Cil de la Haleca, qui estoient cinq cens à cheval, abatirent 352
Those of the Halca who were five hundred on horse knocked-down
les paveillons au soudanc, et l'assegierent entour et environ
the pavilions of-the sultan and him-besieged around and about
dedans la tour qu'il avoit fait faire, avec trois de ses evesques
within the tower that-he had had made with three of his bishops
qui avoient mangié avec li, et li escrierent qu'il descendist.
who had eaten with him and to-him cried that-he should-come-down
Et lors dist que si feroit-il, mais que il l'asseurassent. Et
And then he-said that so would-do-he provided that they him-should-assure And
il distrent que il le feroient descendre à force, et que
they said that they him would-make come-down by force and that
il n'estoit mie dedans Damiete. Il li lancierent le feu
he not-was at-all within Damietta They at-him hurled the fire
grejois, qui se prist en la tour, qui estoit faite de planches
Greek which itself took in the tower which was made of planks
de sapin et de toille de coton. La tours s'esprist hastivement,
of fir and of cloth of cotton The tower itself-kindled hastily
que onques si biau feu ne vi ne si droit. Quant li soudans
that ever so fair fire not I-saw nor so straight When the sultan
vit ce, il descendi hastivement, et s'en vint fuiant
saw this he came-down hastily and himself-thence came fleeing
vers le flum, toute la voie dont je vous ai avant parlei.
toward the river all the way of-which I to-you have before spoken
Cil de la Halequa avoient toute la voie rompue à lour 353
Those of the Halca had all the way broken with their
espées; et au passer que li soudans fist pour aler vers le
swords and at-the passing that the sultan made for to-go toward the
flum, li uns d'aus li donna d'un glaive parmi les costes,
river the one of-them to-him gave with-a lance through the ribs
et li soudans s'enfui ou flum, le glaive trainant. Et il
and the sultan himself-fled into-the river the lance trailing And they

descendirent là, jusques à nou, et le vindrent occirre ou
went-down there until to swimming and him came to-kill in-the
flum, assez près de nostre galie là où nous estiens. Li uns
river quite near of our galley there where we were The one
des chevaliers, qui avoit à non Faraquataye, le fendi de s'espée
of-the knights who had to name Faraquataye him split with his-sword
et li osta le cuer dou ventre; et lors il en vint au roy,
and to-him took-out the heart from-the belly and then he thence came to-the king
sa main toute ensanglantée, et li dist: «Que me donras-tu?
his hand all bloodied and to-him said What me wilt-thou-give
que je t'ai occis ton ennemi, qui t'eust mort, se
for I for-thee-have killed thy enemy who thee-would-have killed if
il eust vescu.» Et li roys ne li respondi onques riens.
he had lived And the king not to-him answered ever anything
354 Il en vindrent bien trente, les espées toutes nues es
They thence came fully thirty the swords all naked in-the
mains, à nostre galie, et au col les haches danoises. Je
hands to our galley and at-the neck the axes Danish I
demandai à mon signour Baudouin d'Ibelin, qui savoit bien le
asked of my lord Baldwin of-Ibelin who knew well the
sarrazinnois, que celle gent disoient; et il me respondi que il
Saracen-tongue what that people said and he me answered that they
disoient que il nous venoient les testes tranchier. Il y avoit
said that they to-us came the heads to-cut It there had
tout plein de gens qui se confessoient à un frere de la
all full of people who themselves confessed to a brother of the
Trinitei, qui avoit nom Jehan et estoit au conte Guillaume
Trinity who had name John and was to-the count William
de Flandres. Mais endroit de moy, ne me souvint onques de
of Flanders But as of me not me remembered ever of

pechié que j'eusse fait; ainçois m'apensai que quant plus me
sin that I-had done rather I-bethought that the more myself
deffenderoie et plus me ganchiroie, et pis me vauroit.
I-would-defend and more myself would-swerve and worse to-me it-would-be-worth
Et lors me seignai et m'agenoillai aus piés de l'un d'aus, 355
And then myself I-crossed and myself-knelt at-the feet of the-one of-them
qui tenoit une hache danoise à charpentier, et dis: «Ainsi
who held an axe Danish of carpenter and said Thus
mourut sainte Agnès.» Mes sires Guis d'Ybelin, connestables
died saint Agnes My lord Guy of-Ibelin constable
de Chypre, s'agenoilla encoste moy et se confessa à
of Cyprus himself-knelt beside me and himself confessed to
moy; et je li dis: «Je vous asol, de tel pooir que Diex
me and I to-him said I you absolve with such power as God
m'a donnei.» Mais quant je me levai d'ilec, il ne me
me-has given But when I myself rose from-there it not me
souvint onques de chose que il m'eust dite ne racontée.
remembered ever of thing that he me-had said nor told
Il nous firent lever de là où nous estiens, et nous mistrent 356
They us had rise from there where we were and us put
en prison en la sente de la galie; et cuidierent mout de nostre
in prison in the hold of the galley and thought many of our
gent que il l'eussent fait pour ce que il ne nous vouloient pas
people that they it-had done for this that they not us wished at-all
assaillir touz ensemble, mais pour nous tuer l'un après l'autre.
to-assail all together but for us to-kill the-one after the-other
Leans fumes à tel meschief, le soir, tout soir, que nous gisiens
In-there we-were in such hardship the evening all evening that we lay
si à estroit, que mi pié estoient endroit le bon conte Perron
so in narrow that my feet were opposite the good count Peter
de Bretaingne, et li sien estoient endroit le mien visaige.
of Brittany and the his were opposite the my face

357 L'endemain nous firent traire li amiral de la prison là où
The-next-day us had drawn the emirs from the prison there where
nous estiens, et nous dirent ainsi lour messaige que nous
we were and us said thus their message that we
alissiens parler aus amiraus, pour renouveler les couvenances
should-go to-speak to-the emirs for to-renew the covenants
que li soudans avoit eues à nous; et nous dirent que nous
that the sultan had had with us and us said that we
fussiens certein que se li soudans eust vescu, il eust
should-be certain that if the sultan had lived he would-have
fait coper le teste au roy et à nous touz aussi. Cil qui
had cut the head of-the king and of us all also Those who
y porent aler y alerent; li cuens de Bretaingne et li
there could go there went the count of Brittany and the
connestables et je, qui estiens grief malade, demourames. Li
constable and I who were grievously sick remained The
cuens de Flandres, li cuens Jehans de Soissons, li dui frere
count of Flanders the count John of Soissons the two brothers
d'Ibelin, et li autre qui se porent aidier, y alerent.
of-Ibelin and the others who themselves could help there went
358 Il acorderent aus amiraus en tel maniere, que si tost comme
They agreed with-the emirs in such manner that so soon as
on lour averoit delivrée Damiete, il deliverroient le roy et
one to-them would-have delivered Damietta they would-deliver the king and
les autres riches homes qui là estoient; car le menu peuple
the other rich men who there were for the small people
en avoit fait mener li soudans vers Babiloine, fors que ceus
thereof had had taken the sultan toward Babylon except that those
que il avoit fait tuer. Et ceste chose avoit-il faite contre les
whom he had had killed And this thing had-he done against the

couvenances que il avoit au roy: par quoy il semble bien que
covenants that he had with-the king by which it seems well that
il nous eust fait tuer aussi, si tost comme il eust eu Damiete.
he us would-have had killed also so soon as he had had Damietta
Et li roys lour devoit jurer aussi à lour faire grei de dous 359
And the king to-them ought swear also to them make satisfaction of two
cens mille livres avant que il partisist dou flum, et dous
hundred thousand pounds before that he departed from-the river and two
cens mille livres en Acre. Li Sarrazin, par les couvenances
hundred thousand pounds in Acre The Saracens by the covenants
qu'il avoient au roy, devoient garder les malades qui estoient
that-they had with-the king ought keep the sick who were
en Damiete, les arbalestres, les armeures, les chars salées et
in Damietta the crossbows the armors the meats salted and
les angins jusques à tant que li roys les envoieroit querre.
the engines until to so-much that the king them would-send to-seek

The Emirs' Oath, and Damietta Surrendered

XXXIV

The emirs swear to be dishonored as one who eats pork if they break faith. Renegade priests write the king's oath, that he be dishonored like a Christian who spits on the cross; he refuses it though threatened with beheading, and the patriarch begs him to swear. The king is told the emirs thought of making him sultan, and says he would not have refused. Geoffrey of Sargines surrenders Damietta; the Saracens kill the sick and burn the engines and the dead.

Li sairement que li amiral devoient faire au roy furent devisié, 360
The oaths that the emirs ought make to-the king were devised
et furent tel: que se il ne tenoient au roy les couvenances,
and were such that if they not held to-the king the covenants

que il fussent aussi honni comme cil qui par son pechié aloit
that they should-be as shamed as he who for his sin went
en pelerinaige à Mahomet, à Maques, sa teste descouverte; et
in pilgrimage to Muhammad at Mecca his head uncovered and
fussent aussi honni comme cil qui lessoient lour femmes et
should-be as shamed as those who left their wives and
les reprenoient après. De ce cas, ne peuent lessier lour femmes,
them took-back after In this case not can leave their wives
à la loi de Mahommet, que jamais la puissent ravoir, se il ne
by the law of Muhammad that ever her may have-again if he not
voit un autre homme gesir à li avant que il la puisse ravoir.
sees an other man lie with her before that he her can have-again

361 Li tiers sairemens fu teix: que se il ne tenoient les
The third oath was such that if they not held the
couvenances au roy, que il fussent aussi honni comme
covenants to-the king that they should-be as shamed as
li Sarrazins qui manjue la char de porc. Li roys prist
the Saracen who eats the flesh of pork The king took
les sairemens desus diz des amiraus à grei, parce que
the oaths above said of-the emirs in good-part because that
maistres Nicholes d'Acre, qui savoit le sarrazinnois, dist que
master Nicholas of-Acre who knew the Saracen-tongue said that
il ne les pooient plus forz faire selonc lour loi.
they not them could more strong make according-to their law

362 Quant li amiral orent jurei, il firent mettre en escrit le
When the emirs had sworn they had put in writing the
sairement que il vouloient avoir dou roy, qui fut teix, par le
oath that they wished to-have from-the king which was such by the
consoil des proveres qui s'estoient renoié devers aus; et disoit
counsel of-the priests who themselves-were renegade toward them and said
li escris ainsi: que se li roys ne tenoit les couvenances aus
the writing thus that if the king not held the covenants to-the

amiraus, que il fust aussi honnis comme li Crestiens qui renie
emirs that he should-be as shamed as the Christian who denies
Dieu et sa Mere, et privez de la compaingnie de ses douze
God and his Mother and deprived of the company of his twelve
compaingnons, de touz les sains et de toutes les saintes. A ce
companions of all the saints and of all the she-saints To this
s'acordoit bien li roys. Li dareniers poins dou sairement fu teix,
himself-agreed well the king The last point of-the oath was such
que se il ne tenoit les couvenances aus amiraus, que il fust
that if he not held the covenants to-the emirs that he should-be
aussi honnis comme li Crestiens qui renoie Dieu et sa loy,
as shamed as the Christian who denies God and his law
et qui en despit de Dieu crache sur la croiz et marche desus.
and who in despite of God spits on the cross and tramples upon-it
Quant li roys oy ce, il dist que, se Dieu plait, cesti 363
When the king heard this he said that if God pleases this
sairement ne feroit-il jà. Li amiral envoierent maistre
oath not would-make-he ever The emirs sent master
Nichole, qui savoit le sarazinnois, au roy, qui dist au
Nicholas who knew the Saracen-tongue to-the king who said to-the
roy tiex paroles: «Sire, li amiral ont grant despit de ce
king such words Lord the emirs have great spite of this
que il ont jurei quanque vous requeistes, et vous ne
that they have sworn whatever you required and you not
voulez jurer ce que il vous requierent; et soiés certeins
wish to-swear that which they you require and be certain
que se vous ne le jurez, il vous feront la teste coper, et
that if you not it swear they you will-have the head cut and
à toute vostre gent.» Li roys respondi que il en pooient
to all your people The king answered that they thereof could

faire lour volentei; car il amoit miex mourir bons crestiens
do their will for he loved better to-die good Christian
que ce que il vesquist ou courrous Dieu et sa Mere.
than this that he should-live in-the wrath (of-)God and his Mother
364 Li patriarches de Jerusalem, viex hom et anciens de
The patriarch of Jerusalem old man and ancient of
l'aage de quatre-vins ans, avoit pourchacié asseurement des
the-age of fourscore years had obtained safe-conduct from-the
Sarrazins, et estoit venus vers le roy pour li aidier à
Saracens and was come toward the king for him to-help to
pourchacier sa delivrance. Or est teix la coustume entre les
obtain his deliverance Now is such the custom between the
Crestiens et les Sarrazins, que quant li roys ou li soudans
Christians and the Saracens that when the king or the sultan
meurt, cil qui sont en messagerie, soit en paennime ou
dies those who are in embassy be-it in heathendom or
en crestientei, sont prison et esclave; et pour ce que li
in Christendom are prisoner and slave and for this that the
soudans qui avoit donnei la seurtei au patriarche fu mors,
sultan who had given the surety to-the patriarch was dead
li diz patriarches fu prisonniers aussi comme nous fumes.
the said patriarch was prisoner just as we were
Quant li roys ot faite sa response, li uns des amiraus dist
When the king had made his answer the one of-the emirs said
que ce consoil li avoit donnei li patriarches, et dist aus
that this counsel to-him had given the patriarch and said to-the
paiens: «Se vous me voulés croire, je ferai le roy jurer; car
pagans If you me wish to-believe I will-make the king swear for
je li ferai la teste dou patriarche voler en son geron.»
I to-him will-make the head of-the patriarch fly into his lap

Il ne le vorent pas croire, ainçois pristrent le patriarche 365
They not him wished at-all to-believe rather took the patriarch
et le leverent de delez le roy, et le lierent à une perche
and him raised from beside the king and him bound to a pole
d'un paveillon les mains darieres le dos, si estroitement que
of-a pavilion the hands behind the back so tightly that
les mains li furent aussi enflées et aussi grosses comme
the hands to-him were as swollen and as big as
sa teste, et que li sans li sailloit parmi les ongles. Li
his head and that the blood to-him leapt through the nails The
patriarches crioit au roy: «Sire, pour Dieu, jurez seurement;
patriarch cried to-the king Lord for God swear safely
car je en pren tout le pechié sus l'ame de moy dou
for I thereof take all the sin upon the-soul of me of-the
sairement que vous ferez, puisque vous le béez bien à
oath that you will-make since you it intend well to
tenir.» Je ne sai pas comment li sairemens fu atiriez;
keep I not know at-all how the oath was arranged
mais li amiral se tindrent bien apaié dou sairement
but the emirs themselves held well satisfied with-the oath
le roy et des autres riches homes qui là estoient.
(of-)the king and of-the other rich men who there were
Dès que li soudans fu occis, on fist venir les estrumens 366
Since that the sultan was killed one had come the instruments
au soudanc devant la tente le roy, et dist-on au
of-the sultan before the tent (of-)the king and said-one to-the
roy que li amiral avoient eu grant vouloir et consoil de
king that the emirs had had great will and counsel of
li faire soudanc de Babiloine. Et il me demanda se je
him to-make sultan of Babylon And he me asked if I
cuidoie que il eust pris le royaume de Babiloine, se il
thought that he would-have taken the realm of Babylon if they

li eussent presentei. Et je li dis que il eust mout
to-him had presented And I to-him said that he would-have much
fait que fous, à ce que il avoient lour signour occis;
done like fool for this that they had their lord killed
et il me dist que vraiement il ne l'eust mie refusei.
and he me said that truly he not it-would-have at-all refused
367 Et sachiez que on dist que il ne demoura pour autre chose,
And know that one says that it not remained for other thing
que pour ce que il disoient que li roys estoit li plus
but for this that they said that the king was the most
fermes crestiens que on peust trouver. Et cest exemple en
firm Christian that one could find And this example thereof
moustroient, à ce que quant il se partoit de la heberge, il
they-showed in this that when he himself departed from the lodging he
prenoit sa croiz à terre, et seignoit tout son cors. Et disoient
took his cross on ground and crossed all his body And they-said
que se Mahommez lour eust tant de meschief soufert à faire,
that if Muhammad them had so-much of hardship suffered to do
il ne le creussent jamais; et disoient que se celle gent fesoient
they not him would-believe ever and said that if this people made
soudanc de li, il les occirroit touz, ou il devenroient crestien.
sultan of him he them would-kill all or they would-become Christian
368 Après que les couvenances furent acordées dou roy et de
After that the covenants were agreed by-the king and by
amiraus et jurées, fu acordei que il nous deliverroient
emirs and sworn was agreed that they us would-deliver
l'endemain de l'Ascension; et que si tost comme Damiete
the-day-after of the-Ascension and that so soon as Damietta
seroit delivrée aus amiraus, on deliverroit le cors le roy
would-be delivered to-the emirs one would-deliver the body (of-)the king
et les riches hommes qui avec li estoient, aussi comme
and the rich men who with him were just as

il est devant dit. Le jeudi au soir, cil qui menoient
it is before said The Thursday at-the evening those who steered
nos quatre galies vindrent ancrer en mi le flum, devant
our four galleys came to-anchor in midst the river before
le pont de Damiete, et firent tendre un paveillon devant
the bridge of Damietta and had pitched a pavilion before
le pont, là où li roys descendi.
the bridge there where the king went-down

Au soleil levant, mes sires Geffroys de Sergines ala en 369
At-the sun rising my lord Geoffrey of Sargines went into
la ville, et fist rendre la ville aus amiraus. Sur les tours
the town and had rendered the town to-the emirs On the towers
de la ville mistrent les enseignes au soudanc. Li chevalier
of the town they-put the ensigns of-the sultan The knights
sarrazin se mistrent en la ville, et commencierent à
Saracen themselves put into the town and began to
boivre des vins et furent maintenant tuit yvre: dont li uns
drink of-the wines and were at-once all drunk whereof the one
d'aus vint à nostre galie, et trait s'espée toute ensanglantée,
of-them came to our galley and drew his-sword all bloodied
et dist que endroit de li il avoit tuei six de nos gens.
and said that as for himself he had killed six of our people

Avant que Damiete fust rendue, avoit l'on recueilli la royne en 370
Before that Damietta were rendered had one taken-up the queen into
nos neis, et toute nostre gent qui estoient en Damiete, fors que
our ships and all our people who were in Damietta except that
les malades qui estoient en Damiete. Li Sarrazin les devoient
the sick who were in Damietta The Saracens them ought
garder par lour sairement: il les tuerent touz. Les engins
keep by their oath they them killed all The engines
le roy, que il devoient garder aussi, il les decoperent
(of-)the king which they ought keep also they them cut-up

par pieces. Et les chars salées que il devoient garder pour
into pieces And the meats salted which they ought keep for
ce que il ne manjuent point de porc, il ne les garderent
this that they not eat at-all of pork they not them kept
pas; ainçois firent un lit des engins, un lit de bacons et un
at-all rather made a bed of-the engines a bed of bacons and an
autre de gens mors, et mistrent le feu dedans; et y ot si
other of people dead and put the fire within and there had so
grant feu que il dura le vendredi, le samedi et le dymanche.
great fire that it lasted the Friday the Saturday and the Sunday

The Prisoners Freed

XXXV

The prisoners are nearly condemned as the emirs dispute: one emir urges killing the king, and Sebreci answers that the Egyptians would be called the most disloyal people. A hostile emir has the galleys taken a league back toward Babylon. At sunset they are freed and fed cheese fritters. A Genoese galley's eighty crossbowmen scatter the twenty thousand Saracens following the king. The count of Poitiers is held for the ransom, and the counts of Flanders and Soissons sail home.

371 Le roy et nous, que il durent delivrer dès soleil levant,
The king and us whom they ought deliver from sun rising
il nous tindrent jusques à soleil couchant; ne onques ne
they us held until to sun setting nor ever not
mangames, ne li amiral aussi; ainçois furent en desputoison
we-ate nor the emirs also rather they-were in dispute
tout le jour. Et disoit uns amiraus pour ceus qui estoient de
all the day And said an emir for those who were of
sa partie: «Signour, se vous me voulez croire, moy et ceus
his party Lords if you me wish to-believe me and those

qui sont ci de ma partie, nous occirons le roy et ces riches
who are here of my party we will-kill the king and these rich
homes qui ci sont; car de ça quarante ans n'avons mais
men who here are for from here forty years we-not-have more
garde; car lour enfant sont petit, et nous avons Damiete
care for their children are small and we have Damietta
devers nous; par quoy nous le poons faire plus seurement.»
toward us by which we it can do more safely
Uns autres Sarrasins, qui avoit non Sebreci, qui estoit nez de 372
An other Saracen who had name Sebreci who was born of
Morentaigne, disoit encontre et disoit ainsi: «Se nous occions
Mauritania said against-it and said thus If we kill
le roy après ce que nous avons occis le soudanc, on dira
the king after this that we have killed the sultan one will-say
que li Egypcien sont les plus mauvaises gens et les plus
that the Egyptians are the most wicked people and the most
desloiaus qui soient ou monde.» Et cil qui vouloit que on
disloyal who may-be in-the world And he who wished that one
nous occeist, disoit encontre: «Il est bien voirs que nous nous
us should-kill said against-it It is well true that we ourselves
sommes trop malement deffait de nostre soudanc que nous
are very badly rid of our sultan whom we
avons tuei; car nous sommes alei contre le commandemant
have killed for we are gone against the command
Mahommet, qui nous commande que nous gardons le nostre
(of-)Muhammad who us commands that we guard the our
signour aussi comme la prunelle de nostre œil: et vez-ci
lord just as the pupil of our eye and see-here
en cest livre le commandement tout escrit. Or escoutez,
in this book the command all written Now listen
fait-il, l'autre commandemant Mahommet qui vient après.»
says-he the-other command (of-)Muhammad which comes after

373 Il lour tournoit un foillet ou livre que il tenoit, et
He to-them turned a leaf in-the book which he held and
lour moustroit l'autre commandemant Mahommet, qui
to-them showed the-other command (of-)Muhammad which
estoit teix: «En l'asseurement de la foy, occi l'ennemi de
was such In the-assurance of the faith kill the-enemy of
la loy. — Or gardez comment nous avons mesfait contre
the law Now look how we have misdone against
les commandemans Mahommet, de ce que nous avons tuei
the commands (of-)Muhammad in this that we have killed
nostre signour; et encore ferons-nous pis se nous ne tuons
our lord and still will-do-we worse if we not kill
le roy, quelque asseurement que nous li aiens donnei;
the king whatever safe-conduct that we to-him may-have given
car c'est li plus forz ennemis que la loys paiennime ait.»
for this-is the most strong enemy that the law pagan may-have
374 Nostre mors fu presque acordée: dont il avint ainsi, que
Our death was almost agreed whereof it happened so that
uns amiraus qui estoit nostre adversaires, cuida que on nous
an emir who was our adversary thought that one us
deust touz occire, et vint sus le flum, et commença à crier
ought all kill and came on the river and began to cry
en sarrazinnois à ceus qui les galies menoient, et osta sa
in Saracen-tongue to those who the galleys steered and took-off his
touaille de sa teste et lour fist un signe de sa touaille. Et
turban from his head and to-them made a sign with his turban And
maintenant il nous desancrerent, et nous remenerent bien
at-once they us unanchored and us took-back fully
une grant lieue ariere vers Babiloine. Lors cuidames-nous
a great league back toward Babylon Then thought-we
estre tuit perdu, et y ot maintes lermes plorées.
to-be all lost and there had many tears wept

Aussi comme Diex vout, qui n'oublie pas les siens, il fu 375
Just as God willed who not-forgets at-all the his it was
acordei, entour soleil couchant, que nous seriens delivrei. Lors
agreed about sun setting that we would-be delivered Then
nous ramena l'on, et mist l'on nos quatre galies à terre. Nous
us brought-back one and put one our four galleys to land We
requeismes que on nous lessast aler. Il nous dirent que non
asked that one us should-let go They us said that not
feroient jusques à ce que nous eussiens mangié: «Car ce seroit
they-would-do until to this that we had eaten For this would-be
honte aus amiraus, se vous partiés de nos prisons à jeun.»
shame to-the emirs if you departed from our prisons at fast
Et nous requeismes que on nous donnast la viande, et 376
And we asked that one us should-give the food and
nous mangeriens; et il nous distrent que on l'estoit alei
we would-eat and they us said that one it-was gone
querre en l'ost. Les viandes que il nous donnerent, ce
to-seek in the-host The foods that they us gave these
furent begniet de fourmaiges qui estoient roti au soleil
were fritters of cheeses which were roasted in-the sun
pour ce que li ver n'i venissent, et œf dur cuit de
for this that the worms not-there should-come and eggs hard cooked of
quatre jours ou de cinc; et pour honnour de nous, on
four days or of five and for honor of us one
les avoit fait peindre par dehors de diverses colours.
them had had painted by outside with diverse colors
On nous mist à terre; et en alames vers le roy, qu'il 377
One us put to land and thence we-went toward the king whom-they
amenoient, dou paveillon là où il l'avoient tenu, vers le
brought from-the pavilion there where they him-had held toward the
flum; et venoient bien vint mille Sarrazin, les espées ceintes,
river and came fully twenty thousand Saracens the swords girt

tuit après li, à pié. Ou flum, devant le roy, avoit une galie
all after him on foot On-the river before the king there-was a galley
de Genevois, là où il ne paroit que uns seus hom desur.
of Genoese there where it not showed but one sole man above
Maintenant que il vit le roy sur le flum, il sonna un siblet;
As-soon as he saw the king on the river he sounded a whistle
et au son dou siblet saillirent bien de la sente de la galie
and at-the sound of-the whistle leapt fully from the hold of the galley
quatre-vins arbalestrier bien appareillié, les arbalestres montées,
fourscore crossbowmen well equipped the crossbows mounted
et mistrent maintenant les carriaus en coche. Tantost comme li
and put at-once the quarrels in notch As-soon as the
Sarrazin les virent, il touchierent en fuie aussi comme brebis;
Saracens them saw they took to flight just as sheep
que onques n'en demoura avec le roy, fors que dous ou trois.
so-that ever not-thereof remained with the king except that two or three
378 Il geterent une planche à terre pour requeillir le roy,
They cast a plank to land for to-take-up the king
et le conte d'Anjou son frere, et mon signour Geffroy
and the count of-Anjou his brother and my lord Geoffrey
de Sergines, et mon signour Phelipe de Annemos, et le
of Sargines and my lord Philip of Nemours and the
marechal de France que on appeloit dou Meis, et le maistre
marshal of France whom one called of-the Meix and the master
de la Trinitei et moy. Le conte de Poitiers il retindrent
of the Trinity and me The count of Poitiers they kept
en prison jusques à tant que li roys lour eust fait paier
in prison until to so-much that the king to-them had had paid
les dous cent mille livres que il lour devoit faire paier,
the two hundred thousand pounds that he to-them ought make pay
avant que il partisist dou flum, pour lour rançon.
before that he departed from-the river for their ransom

Le samedi après l'Ascension, liquex samedis est l'endemain 379
The Saturday after the-Ascension which Saturday is the-day-after
que nous fumes delivrei, vindrent penre congié dou roys li
that we were delivered came to-take leave of-the king the
cuens de Flandres, et li cuens de Soissons, et plusour des
count of Flanders and the count of Soissons and several of-the
autres riches homes qui furent pris es galies. Li roys lour
other rich men who were taken in-the galleys The king to-them
dist ainsi, que il li sembloit que il feroient bien se il
said thus that it to-him seemed that they would-do well if they
atendoient jusques à ce que li cuens de Poitiers, ses freres,
waited until to this that the count of Poitiers his brother
fust delivrés. Et il distrent que il n'avoient pooir; car les
were delivered And they said that they not-had power for the
galies estoient toutes appareillies. En lour galies monterent et
galleys were all ready Into their galleys they-mounted and
s'en vindrent en France, et en amenerent avec aus
themselves-thence came into France and thence took with them
le bon conte Perron de Bretaingne, qui estoit si malades que
the good count Peter of Brittany who was so sick that
il ne vesqui puis que troiz semainnes, et mourut sus mer.
he not lived after but three weeks and died on sea

The Ransom

XXXVI

The ransom is weighed out at ten thousand pounds a balance, and thirty thousand are lacking. The Templars' commander will not lend; Joinville goes to their galley, and the treasurer refuses the keys until he lifts an axe to make it the king's key. Philip of Nemours boasts that the Saracens were shorted one balance, and the king angrily orders it paid. He will not leave the river until all is paid, and at last his brother of Poitiers is freed, to great joy.

380 L'on commença à faire le paiement le samedi au matin, et
One began to make the payment the Saturday in-the morning and
y mist l'on au paiement faire le samedi et le dymanche
there spent one on-the payment making the Saturday and the Sunday
toute jour jusques à la nuit; que on les paioit à la balance,
all day until to the night for one them paid by the balance
et valoit chascune balance dix mille livres. Quant ce vint
and was-worth each balance ten thousand pounds When this came
le dymanche au vespre, les gens le roy qui fesoient le
the Sunday at-the evening the people (of-)the king who made the
paiement, manderent au roy que il lour failloit bien encore
payment sent-word to-the king that it them lacked fully still
trente mille livres. Et avec le roy n'avoit que le roy de
thirty thousand pounds And with the king not-had but the king of
Sezile et le marechal de France, le menistre de la Trinitei
Sicily and the marshal of France the minister of the Trinity
et moy; et tuit li autre estoient au paiement faire.
and me and all the others were at-the payment making
381 Lors dis-je au roy que il seroit bon que il envoiast querre
Then said-I to-the king that it would-be good that he should-send to-seek
le commandeour et le marechal dou Temple (car li maistres
the commander and the marshal of-the Temple for the master

estoit mors), et que il lour requeist que il li prestassent
was dead and that he them should-ask that they to-him should-lend
les trente mille livres pour delivrer son frere. Li roys
the thirty thousand pounds for to-deliver his brother The king
les envoia querre, et me dist li roys que je lour deisse.
them sent to-seek and me told the king that I to-them should-say
Quant je lour oy dit, freres Estiennes d'Otricourt, qui estoit
When I to-them had said brother Stephen of-Outricourt who was
commanderres dou Temple, me dist ainsi: «Sire de Joinville,
commander of-the Temple me said thus Lord of Joinville
cis consaus que vous donnés au roi n'est ne bons ne
this counsel that you give to-the king not-is neither good nor
raisonnables; car vous savés que nous recevons les commandes
reasonable for you know that we receive the deposits
en tel maniere, que par nos sairemens nous ne les poons
in such manner that by our oaths we not them can
delivrer, mais que à ceus qui les nous baillent.» Assés y
deliver but that to those who them to-us give Plenty there
ot de dures paroles et de felonnesses entre moy et li.
had of hard words and of felonious between me and him
Et lors parla freres Renaus de Vichiers, qui estoit marechaus 382
And then spoke brother Reginald of Vichiers who was marshal
dou Temple, et dist ainsi: «Sire, lessiés ester la tençon
of-the Temple and said thus Lord let be the dispute
dou signour de Joinville et de nostre commandeour; car,
of-the lord of Joinville and of our commander for
aussi comme nostre commanderres dit, nous ne pourriens
just as our commander says we not could
rien baillier que nous ne fussiens parjure. Et de ce que
anything give that we not would-be perjured And of this that
li seneschaus vous loe que, se nous ne vous en voulons
the seneschal you advises that if we not you thereof wish

prester que vous en preigniés, ne dit-il pas mout grans
to-lend that you thereof should-take not says-he at-all very great
merveilles, et vous en ferés vostre volentei; et se vous
marvels and you thereof will-do your will and if you
prenez dou nostre, nous avons bien tant dou vostre en
take of-the ours we have well as-much of-the yours in
Acre que vous nous desdomagerés bien.»
Acre that you us will-indemnify well

383 Je dis au roy que je iroie, se il vouloit; et il le me
I said to-the king that I would-go if he wished and he it me
commenda. Je m'en alai en une des galies dou Temple,
commanded I myself-thence went into one of-the galleys of-the Temple
en la maistre galie; et quant je vouz descendre en la
into the master galley and when I wished to-go-down into the
sente de la galie, là où li tresors estoit, je demandai
hold of the galley there where the treasure was I asked
au commandeour dou Temple que il venist veoir ce que
of-the commander of-the Temple that he should-come to-see that which
je penroie; et il n'i deingna onques venir. Li marechaus
I would-take and he not-there deigned ever come The marshal
dist que il venroit veoir la force que je li feroie.
said that he would-come to-see the force that I to-him would-do

384 Si tost comme je fu avalez là où li tresors estoit, je
So soon as I was gone-down there where the treasure was I
demandai au tresorier dou Temple, qui là estoit, que il me
asked of-the treasurer of-the Temple who there was that he me
baillast les clez d'une huche qui estoit devant moy; et il,
should-give the keys of-a chest which was before me and he
qui me vit megre et descharnei de la maladie, et en l'abit
who me saw lean and fleshless from the sickness and in the-habit
que je avoie estei en prison, dist que il ne m'en bailleroit
that I had been in prison said that he not me-thereof would-give

nulles. Et je regardai une coignie qui gisoit illec; si la levai
any And I looked-at an axe which lay there so it I-raised
et dis que je feroie la clef le roy. Quant li marechaus
and said that I would-make the key (of-)the king When the marshal
vit ce, si me prist par le poing et me dist: «Sire, nous
saw this so me took by the fist and me said Lord we
véons bien que c'est force que vous nous faites, et nous
see well that this-is force that you us do and we
vous ferons baillier les clez.» Lors commanda au tresorier
you will-have given the keys Then he-commanded to-the treasurer
que on les me baillast; ce qu'il fist. Et quant li marechaus
that one them me should-give this which-he did And when the marshal
ot dit au tresorier qui je estoie, il en fu mout esbahis.
had said to-the treasurer who I was he thereof was much dismayed
Je trouvai que celle huche que je ouvri estoit à Nichole de 385
I found that that chest that I opened was to Nicholas of
Choysi, un serjant le roy. Je getai hors ce d'argent que je
Choisy a sergeant (of-)the king I cast out that of-silver which I
y trouvai, et me alay seoir ou chief de nostre vessel qui
there found and myself went to-sit in-the head of our vessel which
m'avoit amenei. Et pris le marechal de France et le lessai
me-had brought And I-took the marshal of France and him left
avec l'argent, et sur la galie mis le menistre de la Trinitei.
with the-silver and on the galley put the minister of the Trinity
Sus la galie li marechaus tendoit l'argent au menistre, et li
On the galley the marshal handed the-silver to-the minister and the
menistres le me bailloit ou vessel là où je estoie. Quant
minister it to-me gave in-the vessel there where I was When
nous venimes vers la galie le roy, je commençai à huchier
we came toward the galley (of-)the king I began to call
au roy: «Sire, sire, esgardés comment je sui garniz.» Et li
to-the king Lord lord look how I am furnished And the

sainz hom me vit mout volentiers et mout liement. Nous
holy man me saw very willingly and very joyfully We
baillames à ceus qui fesoient le paiement ce que j'avoie aportei.
gave to those who made the payment that which I-had brought
386 Quant li paiemens fu fais, li consaus le roy qui le
When the payment was made the council (of-)the king which the
paiement avoit fait vint à li, et li distrent que li
payment had made came to him and to-him said that the
Sarrazin ne vouloient delivrer son frere jusques à tant que
Saracens not wished to-deliver his brother until to so-much that
il eussent l'argent par devers aus. Aucun dou consoil y ot
they had the-silver by toward them Some of-the council there had
qui ne louoient mie le roy que il lour delivrast les deniers
who not advised at-all the king that he them should-deliver the pence
jusques à tant que il reust son frere. Et li roys respondi
until to so-much that he had-again his brother And the king answered
que il lour deliverroit, car il lour avoit couvent; et il li
that he them would-deliver for he to-them had covenant and they him
retenissent les seues couvenances se il cuidoient bien faire.
should-keep the theirs covenants if they thought well to-do
Lors dist mes sires Phelipes de Nemoes au roy que on
Then said my lord Philip of Nemours to-the king that one
avoit forcontei aus Sarrazins une balance de dix mille livres.
had miscounted to-the Saracens a balance of ten thousand pounds
387 Et li roys se courrouça trop fort, et dist que il vouloit que
And the king himself angered very strongly and said that he wished that
on lour rendist les dix mille livres, pour ce que il lour
one to-them should-render the ten thousand pounds for this that he to-them
avoit couvent à paier les dous cens mille livres, avant que
had covenant to pay the two hundred thousand pounds before that
il partisist dou flum. Et lors je passai mon signour Phelipe
he departed from-the river And then I trod my lord Philip

sus le pié, et dis au roy qu'il ne le creust pas, car il ne
on the foot and said to-the king that-he not him should-believe at-all for he not
disoit pas voir; car li Sarrazin estoient li plus saige conteour
said at-all true for the Saracens were the most wise reckoners
qui fussent ou monde. Et mes sires Phelippes dist que je
who were in-the world And my lord Philip said that I
disoie voir, car il ne le disoit que par moquerie. Et li roys dist
said true for he not it said but by mockery And the king said
que male encontre eust teix moquerie: «Et vous commant,
that ill encounter may-have such mockery And you I-command
dist li roys à mon signour Phelippe, sur la foy que me devez
said the king to my lord Philip on the faith that me you-owe
comme mes hom que vous estes, que se les dix mille livres
as my man that you are that if the ten thousand pounds
ne sont païes, que vous les facez paier sans nulle faute.»
not are paid that you them make be-paid without any fault
Mout de gens avoient louei au roy que il se traisist 388
Many of people had advised to-the king that he himself should-draw
en sa nef, qui l'atendoit en mer, pour li oster des
into his ship which him-awaited on sea for him to-take from-the
mains aus Sarrazins. Onques li roys ne vout nullui croire;
hands of-the Saracens Ever the king not wished anyone to-believe
ainçois disoit que il ne partiroit dou flum, aussi comme il
rather said that he not would-depart from-the river just as he
l'avoit couvent, tant que il lour eust paié dous cens mille
it-had covenanted until that he them had paid two hundred thousand
livres. Si tost comme li paiemens fu fais, li roys, sanz
pounds So soon as the payment was made the king without
ce que nulz ne l'en prioit, nous dist que desoremais
this that anyone not him-thereof prayed us said that henceforth

estoit ses sairemens quitiez, et que nous nous partissiens
was his oath acquitted and that we ourselves should-depart
de là, et alissiens en la nef qui estoit en la mer.
from there and should-go into the ship which was on the sea
389 Lors s'esmut nostre galie, et alames bien une grant lieue
Then itself-set-out our galley and we-went fully a great league
avant que li uns ne parlast à l'autre, pour la mesaise que nous
before that the one not spoke to the-other for the unease that we
aviens de la prison dou conte de Poitiers. Lors vint mes sires
had of the prison of-the count of Poitiers Then came my lord
Phelippes de Monfort en un galion, et escria au roy: «Sire,
Philip of Montfort in a galleon and cried to-the king Lord
sire, parlés à vostre frere le conte de Poitiers, qui est en cel
lord speak to your brother the count of Poitiers who is in that
autre vessel.» Lors escria li roys: «Alume, alume!» Et si fist l'on.
other vessel Then cried the king Light light And so did one
Lors fu la joie si grans comme elle pot estre plus entre nous.
Then was the joy as great as it could be most among us
Li roys entra en sa nef, et nous aussi. Uns povres pechierres
The king entered into his ship and we also A poor fisherman
ala dire à la contesse de Poitiers qu'il avoit veu le conte de
went to-tell to the countess of Poitiers that-he had seen the count of
Poitiers delivre; et elle li fist donner vint livres de parisis.
Poitiers delivered and she to-him had given twenty pounds of Paris

The Queen at Damietta

XXXVII

Walter of Châtillon held a village street until he died; the bishop of Soissons spurred alone against the Turks to die a martyr. A renegade who speaks French brings milk; the king will not speak to him, and he tells Joinville he fears poverty and reproach if he returns. At Damietta the queen makes an old knight swear to cut off her head if the Saracens take the town. She bears John Tristan, and keeps the Pisans and Genoese from fleeing by buying all the food in the town.

Je ne vueil pas oublier aucunes besoignes qui avindrent en 390
I not wish at-all to-forget some affairs which happened in
Egypte tandis que nous y estiens. Tout premier je vous
Egypt while that we there were All first I to-you
dirai de mon signour Gauchier de Chasteillon, que uns
will-tell of my lord Walter of Châtillon that a
chevaliers, qui avoit non mon signour Jehan de Monson,
knight who had name my lord John of Monson
me conta que il vit mon signour de Chasteillon en une rue
me told that he saw my lord of Châtillon in a street
qui estoit ou kasel là où li roys fu pris; et passoit
which was in-the village there where the king was taken and passed
celle rue toute droite parmi le kasel, si que on véoit les
that street all straight through the village so that one saw the
chans d'une part et d'autre. En celle rue estoit mes sires
fields on-one side and on-other In that street was my lord
Gauchiers de Chasteillon, l'espée ou poing, toute nue.
Walter of Châtillon the-sword in-the fist all naked
Quant il véoit que li Turc se metoient parmi celle rue, 391
When he saw that the Turks themselves put through that street
il lour couroit sus, l'espée ou poing, et les flatoit hors
he on-them ran upon the-sword in-the fist and them dashed out

dou casel; et au fuir que li Turc faisoient devant li (il
of-the village and at-the fleeing that the Turks made before him they
qui traioient aussi bien devant comme dariere) le couvrirent
who shot as well before as behind him covered
tuit de pylez. Quant il les avoit chaciez hors dou kasel, il
all with bolts When he them had chased out of-the village he
se desflichoit de ces pylés qu'il avoit sur li, et remetoit
himself unfixed of these bolts that-he had on him and put-back
sa cote à armer desus li, et se dressoit sur ses estriers,
his coat for arming over himself and himself drew-up on his stirrups
et estendoit les bras atout l'espée, et crioit: «Chasteillon,
and stretched the arms with the-sword and cried Châtillon
chevalier! où sont mi preudome?» Quant il se retournoit
knights where are my worthy-men When he himself turned
et il véoit que li Turc estoient entrei par l'autre chief,
and he saw that the Turks were entered by the-other end
il lour recouroit sus, l'espée ou poing, et les enchaçoit;
he on-them ran-again upon the-sword in-the fist and them chased
et ainsi fist par trois foiz en la maniere desus dite.
and thus he-did by three times in the manner above said
392 Quant li amiraus des galies m'ot amenei devers ceus qui
When the emir of-the galleys me-had brought toward those who
furent pris à terre, je enquis à ceus qui estoient entour
were taken on land I inquired of those who were around
li; ne onques ne trouvai qui me deist comment il fu
him nor ever not I-found who me might-say how he was
pris, fors que tant que mes sires Jehans Fouinons, li
taken except that so-much that my lord John Fouinon the
bons chevaliers, me dist que, quant on l'amenoit pris vers
good knight me said that when one him-led taken toward
la Massourre, il trouva un Turc qui estoit montez sur le
the Mansourah he found a Turk who was mounted on the

cheval mon signour Gauchier de Chasteillon; et estoit la
horse (of-)my lord Walter of Châtillon and was the
culiere toute sanglante dou cheval. Et il li demanda que il
crupper all bloody of-the horse And he him asked what he
avoit fait de celi à cui li chevaus estoit; et li respondi
had done with him to whom the horse was and to-him answered
que il li avoit copei la gorge tout à cheval, si comme il
that he to-him had cut the throat all on horse so as it
apparut à la culiere qui en estoit ensanglantée dou sanc.
appeared by the crupper which thereof was bloodied with-the blood
Il avoit un mout vaillant home, en l'ost, qui avoit à non 393
It had a very valiant man in the-host who had to name
mon signour Jaque de Castel, evesque de Soissons. Quant
my lord James of Castel bishop of Soissons When
il vit que nos gens s'en revenoient vers Damiete, il
he saw that our people themselves-thence came-back toward Damietta he
qui avoit grant desirier de aler à Dieu, ne s'en vout
who had great desire of going to God not himself-thence wished
pas revenir en la terre dont il estoit nez; ainçois se
at-all to-come-back into the land whence he was born rather himself
hasta d'aler avec Dieu, et feri des esperons, et assembla
hastened of-going with God and struck with-the spurs and engaged
aus Turs touz seus, qui à lour espées l'occistrent et le
with-the Turks all alone who with their swords him-killed and him
mistrent en la compaingnie Dieu, ou nombre des martirs.
put in the company (of-)God in-the number of-the martyrs
Endementres que li roys atendoit le paiement que sa gent 394
While that the king awaited the payment that his people
fesoient aus Turs pour la delivrance de son frere le conte
made to-the Turks for the deliverance of his brother the count
de Poitiers, uns Sarrazins mout bien atiriés et mout biaus
of Poitiers a Saracen very well arrayed and very fair

hom de cors, vint au roy et li presenta lait pris en
man of body came to-the king and to-him presented milk curdled in
pos, et flours de diverses colours et manieres, de par
pots and flowers of diverse colors and manners on behalf-of
les enfans le Nasac, qui avoit estei soudans de Babiloine;
the children (of-)the Nasac who had been sultan of Babylon
et li fist le present en françois.
and to-him made the present in French

395 Et li roys li demanda où il avoit apris françois; et il dist
And the king him asked where he had learned French and he said
que il avoit estei crestians; et li roys li dist: «Alez-vous-en,
that he had been Christian and the king to-him said Go-yourself-away
que à vous ne parlerai-je plus.» Je le trais d'une part et li
for to you not will-speak-I more I him drew to-one side and him
demandai son couvine. Et il me dist qu'il avoit estei nez de
asked his condition And he me said that-he had been born of
Provins, et que il estoit venus en Egypte avec le roy Jehan,
Provins and that he was come into Egypt with the king John
et que il estoit mariez en Egypte et grans riches hom. Et
and that he was married in Egypt and great rich man And
je li diz: «Ne savez-vous pas bien que se vous mouriés
I to-him said Not know-you at-all well that if you died
en ce point, que vous seriez damnez et iriez en enfer?»
in this point that you would-be damned and would-go to hell

396 Et il dist: «Oyl (car il estoit certeins que nulle loys n'estoit
And he said Yes for he was certain that any law not-was
si bone comme la crestienne); mais je dout, se je aloie vers
so good as the Christian but I fear if I went toward
vous, la povretei là ou je seroie et le reproche. Toute jour
you the poverty there where I would-be and the reproach All day
me diroit l'on: Véez ci le renoié! Si aim miex vivre riche et
me would-say one See here the renegade So I-love better to-live rich and

aise, que je me meisse en tel point comme je voi.» Et je li
at-ease than I myself should-put in such point as I see And I to-him
dis que li reproches seroit plus grans ou jour dou jugement,
said that the reproach would-be more great on-the day of-the judgment
là où chascuns verroit son mesfait, que ne seroit ce que il
there where each would-see his misdeed than not would-be this which he
me contoit. Mout de bones paroles li diz qui gueres ne
me told Many of good words to-him I-said which much not
valurent. Ainsi se departy de moy, n'onques plus ne le vi.
availed Thus himself departed from me nor-ever more not him I-saw
Or avez oy ci-devant les grans persecucions que li roys et 397
Now have-you heard here-before the great persecutions that the king and
nous souffrimes; lesquiex persecucions, la royne n'en eschapa
we suffered which persecutions the queen not-thereof escaped
pas, si comme vous orrez ci-après. Car trois jours devant ce
at-all so as you will-hear here-after For three days before this
que elle acouchast, li vindrent les nouvelles que li roys estoit
that she lay-in to-her came the tidings that the king was
pris; desquiex nouvelles elle fu si effrée, que toutes les fois
taken by-which tidings she was so affrighted that all the times
que elle se dormoit en son lit, il li sembloit que toute sa
that she herself slept in her bed it to-her seemed that all her
chambre fust pleinne de Sarrazins; et s'escrioit: «Aidiés, aidiés!»
chamber were full of Saracens and herself-cried Help help
Et pour ce que li enfes ne fust periz dont elle estoit grosse,
And for this that the child not should-be perished of-which she was big
elle fesoit gesir devant son lit un chevalier ancien de l'aage de
she had lie before her bed a knight ancient of the-age of
quatre-vins ans, qui la tenoit par la main. Toutes les fois que
fourscore years who her held by the hand All the times that
la royne s'escrioit, il disoit: «Dame, n'aiés garde; car je suis ci.»
the queen herself-cried he said Lady not-have fear for I am here

398 Avant qu'elle fust accouchie, elle fist vuidier hors toute sa
Before that-she were delivered she had emptied out all her
chambre, fors que le chevalier, et s'agenoilla devant li
chamber except that the knight and herself-knelt before him
et li requist un don; et li chevaliers li otroia par son
and him asked a boon and the knight to-her granted by his
sairement. Et elle li dist: «Je vous demant, fist-elle, par
oath And she to-him said I you ask said-she by
la foy que vous m'avez baillie, que se li Sarrazin prennent
the faith that you me-have given that if the Saracens take
ceste ville, que vous me copez la teste avant qu'il me
this town that you me cut the head before that-they me
preignent.» Et li chevaliers respondi: «Soiés certeinne que
take And the knight answered Be certain that
je le ferai volentiers; car je l'avoie jà bien enpensei, que
I it will-do willingly for I it-had already well intended that
vous occiroie avant qu'il nous eussent pris.»
you I-would-kill before that-they us had taken

399 La royne acoucha d'un fil qui ot non Jehan; et l'appeloit
The queen was-delivered of-a son who had name John and him-called
l'on Tritant, pour la grant dolour là où il fu nez.
one Tristan for the great grief there where he was born
Le jour meismes que elle fu acouchie, li dist l'on que
The day same that she was delivered to-her said one that
cil de Pise et de Genes s'en vouloient fuir, et
those of Pisa and of Genoa themselves-thence wished to-flee and
les autres communes. L'endemain que elle fu acouchie, elles
the other communes The-day-after that she was delivered she
les manda touz devant son lit, si que la chambre fu toute
them summoned all before her bed so that the chamber was all
pleinne, et lour dist: «Signour, pour Dieu merci, ne laissiés
full and to-them said Lords for God mercy not leave

pas ceste ville; car vous véés que mes sires li roys seroit
at-all this town for you see that my lord the king would-be
perdus, et tuit cil qui sont pris, se elle estoit perdue. Et
lost and all those who are taken if it were lost And
s'i ne vous plait, si vous preigne pitié de ceste chietive
if-it not you pleases so you may-seize pity of this wretched-woman
qui ci gist, que vous atendés tant que je soie relevée.»
who here lies that you wait until that I be risen
Et il respondirent: «Dame, comment ferons-nous ce? Que 400
And they answered Lady how will-we-do this For
nous mourons de fain en ceste ville.» Et elle lour dist
we die of hunger in this town And she to-them said
que jà par famine ne s'en iroient: «Car je ferai
that ever by famine not themselves-thence would-go For I will-have
acheter toutes les viandes en ceste ville, et vous reteing touz
bought all the foods in this town and you retain all
desorendroit aus despens dou roy.» Il se conseillierent
henceforth at-the expense of-the king They themselves took-counsel
et revindrent à li, et li otroierent que il demourroient
and came-back to her and to-her granted that they would-remain
volentiers; et la royne (que Diex absoille!) fist acheter toutes
willingly and the queen whom God absolve had bought all
les viandes de la ville, qui li cousterent trois cens et
the foods of the town which to-her cost three hundred and
soixante mille livres et plus. Avant son terme la couvint
sixty thousand pounds and more Before her term her behooved
relever, pour la citei que il couvenoit rendre aus Sarrazins.
to-rise for the city that it behooved to-render to-the Saracens
En Acre s'en vint la royne pour atendre le roy.
To Acre herself-thence came the queen for to-await the king

The Crossing to Acre

XXXVIII

The king protests the broken truce to the emir Faracataie, who warns him to show no anger. Aboard, the king lies on the sultan's mattresses; Joinville sits beside him six days, and the king throws the count of Anjou's dice and tables into the sea. At Acre Joinville faints mounting a palfrey; a varlet from Oiselay takes his service; he dines with the king in a coat. The Temple's commander denies holding his money, until the master replaces him and it is found.

401 Tandis que li roys atendoit la delivrance son frere, envoia
While that the king awaited the deliverance (of-)his brother sent
li roys frere Raoul, le frere preescheour, à un amiral qui
the king brother Ralph the friar preacher to an emir who
avoit à non Faracataie, l'un des plus loiaus Sarrazins que
had to name Faracataie the-one of-the most loyal Saracens that
je veisse onques. Et li manda que il se merveilloit
I saw ever And to-him sent-word that he himself marveled
mout comment il et li autre amiral soufrirent comment
much how he and the other emirs suffered how
on li avoit ses treves si villeinnement rompues; car on
one to-him had his truces so churlishly broken for one
li avoit tuei les malades que il devoient garder, et fait
to-him had killed the sick whom they ought guard and made
dou merrien de ses engins, et avoient ars les malades
of-the timber of his engines and had burned the sick
et les chars salées de porc que il devoient garder aussi.
and the meats salted of pork which they ought guard also
402 Faracataie respondi à frere Raoul et dist: «Freres Raous,
Faracataie answered to brother Ralph and said Brother Ralph
dites au roy que par ma loy je n'i puis mettre consoil;
say to-the king that by my law I not-there can put counsel

et ce poise moy. Et li dites de par moy que il
and this weighs-on me And to-him say on behalf-of me that he
ne face nul semblant que il li anuie, tandis que il est
not may-make any semblance that it him troubles while that he is
en nostre main; car mors seroit.» Et il loa que si tost
in our hand for dead he-would-be And he advised that so soon
comme il venroit en Acre, que il li en souvieigne.
as he would-come to Acre that he to-him thereof should-remember
Quant li roys vint en sa nef, il ne trouva onques que 403
When the king came into his ship he not found ever that
sa gent li eussent riens appareillié, ne lit, ne robes;
his people to-him had anything prepared neither bed nor robes
ainçois li couvint gesir, tant que nous fumes en Acre, sur
rather him behooved to-lie until that we were in Acre on
les materas que li soudans li avoit bailliez, et vestir
the mattresses that the sultan to-him had given and to-wear
les robes que li soudans li avoit fait baillier et taillier,
the robes that the sultan to-him had had given and cut
qui estoient de samit noir, forrei de vair et de griz;
which were of samite black furred with vair and with gray
et y avoit grant foison de noiaus touz d'or.
and there had great plenty of buttons all of-gold
Tandis que nous fumes en la mer, par six jours, je qui 404
While that we were on the sea for six days I who
estoie malades, me séoie touz jours decoste le roy. Et lors
was sick myself sat all days beside the king And then
me conta il comment il avoit estei pris, et comment il avoit
me told he how he had been taken and how he had
pourchacie sa reançon et la nostre, par l'aide de Dieu. Et me
obtained his ransom and the ours by the-aid of God And me
fist conter comment je avoie estei pris en l'yaue; et après il
he-had tell how I had been taken on the-water and after he

me dist que je devoie grant grei savoir à Nostre Signour,
me said that I ought great gratitude know to Our Lord
quant il m'avoit delivrei de si granz perilz. Mout regretoit
when he me-had delivered from so great perils Much he-regretted
la mort dou conte d'Artois son frere, et disoit que, mout
the death of-the count of-Artois his brother and said that very
envis, se fust tant souffers de li venir veoir comme
unwillingly himself would-have so-long forborne from him to-come to-see as
li cuens de Poitiers, que il ne le fust venus veoir es galies.
the count of Poitiers that he not him were come to-see in-the galleys
405 Dou conte d'Anjou, qui estoit en sa nef, se pleingnoit aussi
Of-the count of-Anjou who was in his ship himself complained also
à moy que nulle compaignie ne li tenoit. Un jour, demanda
to me that any company not to-him he-kept One day he-asked
que li cuens d'Anjou faisoit; et on li dist que il jouoit
what the count of-Anjou did and one to-him said that he played
aus tables à mon signour Gautier d'Anemoes. Et il ala là
at-the tables with my lord Walter of-Nemours And he went there
touz chancelans pour la flebesce de sa maladie; et prist les
all staggering for the feebleness of his sickness and took the
dez et les tables et les geta en la mer; et se courouça
dice and the tables and them cast into the sea and himself angered
mout fort à son frere de ce que il s'estoit si tost pris
very strongly at his brother for this that he himself-was so soon taken
à jouer aus deiz. Mais mes sires Gautiers en fu li miex
to play at-the dice But my lord Walter thereof was the best
paiez; car il geta touz les deniers qui estoient sus le tablier
paid for he cast all the pence which were on the board
(dont il y avoit grant foison) en son geron, et les emporta.
whereof it there had great plenty into his lap and them carried-off

Ci après orrez de plusours persecucions et tribulacions que 406
Here after you-will-hear of several persecutions and tribulations that
j'oy en Acre, desquiex Diex, à cui je m'attendoie et à cui je
I-had in Acre from-which God to whom I myself-trusted and to whom I
m'atent, me delivra. Et ces choses ferai-je escrire, pour ce que
myself-trust me delivered And these things will-have-I written for this that
cil qui les orront aient fiance en Dieu en lour persecucions
those who them will-hear may-have trust in God in their persecutions
et tribulacions; et Diex lour aidera aussi comme il fist moy.
and tribulations and God them will-aid just as he did me
Or disons donc que quant li roys vint en Acre, toutes les 407
Now let-us-say then that when the king came to Acre all the
processions d'Acre li vindrent à l'encontre recevoir jusques
processions of-Acre to-him came to the-meeting to-receive until
à la mer, à mout grant joie. L'on me amena un palefroi.
to the sea with very great joy One me brought a palfrey
Si tost comme je fu montez sus, li cuers me failli; et
So soon as I was mounted upon-it the heart me failed and
je dis à celi qui le palefroy m'avoit amenei, que il me
I said to him who the palfrey me-had brought that he me
tenist que je ne chéisse. A grant peinne me monta
should-hold that I not should-fall With great pain me took-up
l'on les degrez de la sale le roy. Je me assis à une
one the steps of the hall (of-)the king I myself sat at a
fenestre, et uns enfes delez moi (et avoit entour dix ans
window and a child beside me and he-had about ten years
de aage), qui avoit à non Berthelemin, et estoit fiz bertars
of age who had to name Bartholomew and was son bastard
à mon signour Ami de Monbeliart, signour de Monfaucon.
to my lord Ami of Montbéliard lord of Montfaucon

408 Endementres que je séoie illec, là où nus ne se
While that I sat there there where anyone not himself
prenoit garde de moy, là me vint uns vallez en une
took heed of me there to-me came a varlet in a
cote vermeille à dous roies jaunes; et me salua, et me
tunic red with two stripes yellow and me greeted and me
demanda se je le cognoissoie; et je li dis nanin. Et
asked if I him knew and I to-him said no And
il me dist que il estoit d'Oiselair, le chastel mon oncle.
he me said that he was of-Oiselay the castle (of-)my uncle
Et je li demandai à cui il estoit; et il me dist que
And I him asked to whom he was and he me said that
il n'estoit à nullui, et que il demourroit avec moy, se
he not-was to anyone and that he would-remain with me if
je vouloie; et je dis que je le vouloie mout bien. Il m'ala
I wished and I said that I it wished very well He me-went
maintenant querre coifes blanches, et me pingna mout bien.
at-once to-seek coifs white and me combed very well
409 Et lors m'envoia querre li roys pour mangier avec li; et je
And then me-sent to-seek the king for to-eat with him and I
y alai atout le corcet que l'on m'avoit fait en la prison
there went with the jerkin that one me-had made in the prison
des rongnures de mon couvertour; et mon couvertour
from-the parings of my coverlet and my coverlet
lessai à Berthelemin l'enfant, et quatre aunes de camelin que
I-left to Bartholomew the-child and four ells of camlet which
l'on m'avoit donnei pour Dieu en la prison. Guillemins mes
one me-had given for God in the prison William my
nouviaus varlez, vint trenchier devant moy, et pourchassa
new varlet came to-carve before me and procured
de la viande à l'enfant tant comme nous mengames.
of the food for the-child as-long as we ate

Mes vallez noviaus me dist que il m'avoit pourchacié un 410
My varlet new me said that he me-had procured a
hostel tout delez les bains, pour moy laver de l'ordure
lodging all beside the baths for me to-wash of the-filth
et de la suour que j'avoie aportée de la prison. Quant ce
and of the sweat that I-had brought from the prison When this
vint le soir que je fu ou baing, li cuers me failli et
came the evening that I was in-the bath the heart me failed and
me pasmai; et à grant peinne m'en trait l'on hors dou
myself swooned and with great pain me-thence drew one out of-the
baing jusques à mon lit. L'endemain, uns viex chevaliers
bath until to my bed The-next-day an old knight
qui avoit non mon signour Perron de Bourbonne, me vint
who had name my lord Peter of Bourbonne me came
veoir, et je le reting entour moy: il m'apleja en la
to-see and I him retained around me he me-stood-surety in the
ville ce qu'il me failli pour vestir et pour moy atourner.
town that which-he me lacked for to-clothe and for me to-array
Quant je me fu aréez, bien quatre jours après ce que 411
When I myself was arrayed fully four days after this that
nous fumes venu, je alai veoir le roy; et m'enchoisonna,
we were come I went to-see the king and he-me-rebuked
et me dist que je n'avoie pas bien fait quant je avoie
and me said that I not-had at-all well done when I had
tant tardei à li veoir; et me commenda, si chiere comme
so-long delayed to him to-see and me commanded as dear as
j'avoie s'amour, que mangasse avec li adès et au soir
I-held his-love that I-should-eat with him always both at-the evening
et au main, jusques à tant que il eust aréei que nous
and at-the morning until to so-much that he had arranged what we
feriens, ou d'aler en France ou de demourer.
would-do either of-going to France or of remaining

412 Je dis au roy que mes sires Pierres de Courtenay me
I said to-the king that my lord Peter of Courtenay me
devoit quatre cens livres de mes gaiges, lesquiex il ne me
owed four hundred pounds of my wages which he not me
vouloit paier. Et li roys me respondi que il me feroit
wished to-pay And the king me answered that he me would-have
bien paier des deniers que il devoit au signour de
well paid from-the pence that he owed to-the lord of
Courtenay; et si fist-il. Par le consoil mon signour Perron
Courtenay and so did-he By the counsel (of-)my lord Peter
de Bourbone, nous preismes quarante livres pour nos despens,
of Bourbonne we took forty pounds for our expenses
et le remenant commendames à garder au commandeour
and the rest we-entrusted to keep to-the commander
dou palais dou Temple. Quant ce vint que j'oi despendu
of-the palace of-the Temple When this came that I-had spent
les quarante livres, je envoiai le pere Jehan Caym de
the forty pounds I sent the father (of-)John Caym of
Sainte-Manehost, que je avoie retenu outre mer, pour querre
Sainte-Menehould whom I had retained over sea for to-seek
autres quarante livres. Li commenderres li respondi que
other forty pounds The commander to-him answered that
il n'avoit denier dou mien, et que il ne me congnoissoit.
he not-had penny of-the mine and that he not me knew
413 Je alai à frere Renaut de Vichiers, qui estoit maistres dou
I went to brother Reginald of Vichiers who was master of-the
Temple par l'aide dou roy, pour la courtoisie que il avoit faite
Temple by the-aid of-the king for the courtesy that he had done
au roy en la prison (dont je vous ai parlei), et me plainz
to-the king in the prison of-which I to-you have spoken and myself complained
à li dou commandeour dou palais, qui mes deniers ne me
to him of-the commander of-the palace who my pence not me

vouloit rendre que je li avoie commandez. Quant il oy ce,
wished to-render which I to-him had entrusted When he heard this
il s'esfréa fort, et me dist: «Sire de Joinville, je vous aim
he himself-frightened hard and me said Lord of Joinville I you love
mout; mais soiés certeins que se vous ne vous voulez soufrir
much but be certain that if you not yourself wish to-forbear
de ceste demande, je ne vous amerai jamais; car vous voulés
from this demand I not you will-love ever for you wish
faire entendant aus gens que nostre frere sont larron.»
to-make understand to-the people that our brothers are thieves
Et je li dis que je ne me soufferroie jà, se Dieu plait.
And I to-him said that I not myself would-forbear ever if God pleases
En ceste mesaise de cuer je fu quatre jours, comme cil 414
In this unease of heart I was four days as he
qui n'avoit plus de touz deniers pour despendre. Après ces
who not-had more of all pence for to-spend After these
quatre jours, li maistres vint vers moy touz rians, et me
four days the master came toward me all laughing and me
dist que il avoit retrouvei mes deniers. La maniere comment
said that he had found-again my pence The manner how
il furent trouvei, ce fu pour ce que il avoit changié le
they were found this was for this that he had changed the
commendeour dou palais, et l'avoit envoié à un cazel que
commander of-the palace and him-had sent to a village which
on appelle le Saffran; et cil me rendi mes deniers.
one calls the Saffran and this-one me rendered my pence

The Council at Acre

XXXIX

Lodged at Acre, Joinville and all his household fall sick, and from his bed he hears Libera me sung over twenty dead a day. His new squire cheats him. The king's brothers play at dice. The king tells his barons that his mother asks him to return, and gives them a week to advise. The legate asks Joinville to sail home with him; he refuses, remembering his cousin's word that no knight comes home without shame who leaves the Lord's little people to the Saracens.

415 Li evesques d'Acre qui lors estoit (qui avoit estei nez
The bishop of-Acre who then was who had been born
de Provins), me fist prester la maison au curei de
of Provins me had lent the house of-the curate of
Saint-Michiel. Je avoie retenu Caym de Sainte-Manehot, qui
Saint-Michael I had retained Caym of Sainte-Menehould who
mout bien me servi dous ans, miex que hom que j'eusse
very well me served two years better than man that I-had
onques entour moy ou pays; et plusours gens avoie
ever around me in-the country and several people I-had
retenus avecques moy. Or estoit ainsi que il avoit une
retained with me Now was so that it had a
logete, à mon chevet, par où l'on entroit ou moustier.
little-lodge at my bed-head by where one entered into-the minster
416 Or avint ainsi que une contenue me prist, par quoy j'alai au
Now happened so that a fever me took by which I-went to-the
lit, et toute ma mesnie aussi. Ne onques un jour toute jour je
bed and all my household also Nor ever one day all day I
n'oy onques qui me peust aidier ne lever; ne je n'atendoie que
not-had ever who me could help nor raise nor I not-awaited but
la mort, par un signe qui m'estoit delez l'oreille: car il n'estoit
the death by a sign which to-me-was beside the-ear for it not-was

nus jours que l'on n'aportast bien vingt mors ou plus ou
any day that one not-brought fully twenty dead or more into-the
moustier; et de mon lit, toutes les foiz que on les aportoit,
minster and from my bed all the times that one them brought
je ouoie chanter, Libera me, Domine. Lors je plorai et rendi
I heard sing Free me Lord Then I wept and rendered
graces à Dieu, et li dis ainsi: «Sire, aourez soies-tu de ceste
thanks to God and to-him said thus Lord adored be-thou for this
soufraite que tu me fais; car mains bobans ai eus à moy
want that thou me makest for many pomps I-have had at me
couchier et à moy lever. Et te pri, Sire, que tu m'aides, et
lying-down and at me rising And thee I-pray Lord that thou me-help and
me delivres de ceste maladie.» Et aussi fist-il, moy et ma gent.
me deliver from this sickness And so did-he me and my people
Après ces choses, je requis à Guillemin, mon nouvel escuier, 417
After these things I asked of William my new squire
qu'il me rendist conte; et si fist-il; et trouvai que il m'avoit
that-he me should-render account and so did-he and I-found that he me-had
bien doumagié de dix livres de tournois et de plus. Et me
well damaged by ten pounds of Tours and by more And me
dist, quant je li demandai, que il les me renderoit quant
he-said when I him asked that he them me would-render when
il pourroit. Je li donnai congié, et li dis que je li
he could I to-him gave leave and to-him said that I to-him
donnoie ce que il me devoit, car il l'avoit bien deservi. Je
gave that which he me owed for he it-had well deserved I
trouvai par les chevaliers de Bourgoingne, quant il revindrent
found by the knights of Burgundy when they came-back
de prison (que il l'avoient amenei en lour compaignie), que
from prison that they him-had brought in their company that
c'estoit li plus courtois lierres qui onques fust: car quant il
this-was the most courteous thief who ever were for when it

failloit à aucun chevalier coutel ou courroie, gans ou esperons,
lacked to some knight knife or belt gloves or spurs
ou autre chose, il l'aloit enbler, et puis si li donnoit.
or other thing he it-went to-steal and then so to-him gave
418 En ce point que li roys estoit en Acre, se prirent li frere
At this point that the king was in Acre themselves took the brothers
le roy à jouer aus deiz; et jouoit li cuens de Poitiers si
(of-)the king to play at-the dice and played the count of Poitiers so
courtoisement, que quant il avoit gaingnié, il fesoit ouvrir la
courteously that when he had won he had opened the
sale et fesoit appeler les gentis homes et les gentis femmes,
hall and had called the gentle men and the gentle women
se nulz en y avoit, et donnoit à poingnies aussi bien les
if any thereof there had and gave by handfuls as well the
siens deniers comme il fesoit ceus que il avoit gaingniés. Et
his pence as he did those that he had won And
quant il avoit perdu, il achetoit par esme les deniers à
when he had lost he bought by reckoning the pence from
ceus à cui il avoit joué, et à son frere le conte d'Anjou
those with whom he had played and from his brother the count of-Anjou
et aus autres; et donnoit tout, et le sien et l'autrui.
and from-the others and gave all both the his and the-others'
419 En ce point que nous estiens en Acre, envoia li roys
At this point that we were in Acre sent the king
querre ses freres et le conte de Flandres, et les autres
to-seek his brothers and the count of Flanders and the other
riches homes, à un dymanche, et lour dist ainsi: «Signour,
rich men on a Sunday and to-them said thus Lords
ma dame la royne ma mere m'a mandei et prié, tant
my lady the queen my mother me-has sent-word and prayed as-much
comme elle puet, que je m'en voise en France; car mes
as she can that I myself-thence should-go into France for my

royaumes est en grant peril: car je n'ai ne paiz ne treves
realm is in great peril for I not-have neither peace nor truces
au roy d'Angleterre. Cil de ceste terre à cui j'en ai
with-the king of-England Those of this land to whom I-thereof have
parlei, m'ont dit que se je m'en voi, ceste terre est
spoken me-have said that if I myself-thence go this land is
perdue; car il s'en venront tuit en Acre après moy
lost for they themselves-thence will-come all into Acre after me
pour ce que nulz n'i osera demourer à si pou de gent.
for this that anyone not-there will-dare remain with so little of people
Si vous pri, fist-il, que vous y pensez; et pour ce que la
So you I-pray said-he that you there think and for this that the
besoingne est grosse, je vous donne respit, de moy respondre
business is great I you give respite of me to-answer
ce que bon vous semblera, jusques à d'ui en huit jours.»
that which good to-you will-seem until to today in eight days
Dedans ces huit jours vint li legas à moy, et me dist ainsi, 420
Within these eight days came the legate to me and me said thus
que il n'entendoit mie comment li roys eust pooir de
that he not-understood at-all how the king might-have power to
demourer; et me proia mout à certes que je m'en vousisse
remain and me prayed very in earnest that I myself-thence wished
revenir en sa nef. Et je li respondi que je n'en avoie
to-come-back in his ship And I to-him answered that I not-thereof had
pooir; car je n'avoie riens, ainsi comme il le savoit, pour ce
power for I not-had anything just as he it knew for this
que j'avoie tout perdu en l'yaue, là où j'avoie estei pris.
that I-had all lost in the-water there where I-had been taken
Et ceste response ne li fis-je pas pour ce que je ne 421
And this answer not to-him made-I at-all for this that I not
fusse mout volentiers alez avec li, mais que pour une
would-have very willingly gone with him but that for a

parole que mes sires de Bollainmont, mes cousins germains
word that my lord of Bourlémont my cousin german
(que Diex absoille!) me dist quant je m'en alai outre
whom God absolve me said when I myself-thence went over
mer: «Vous en alez outre mer, fist-il; or vous prenés
sea You thence go over sea said-he now yourself take
garde au revenir; car nulz chevaliers, ne povres ne
heed at-the returning for any knight neither poor nor
riches, ne puet revenir que il ne soit honniz, se il laisse
rich not can return that he not be shamed if he leaves
en la main des Sarrazins le peuple menu Nostre Signour,
in the hand of-the Saracens the people small (of-)Our Lord
en laquel compaingnie il est alez.» Li legas se courouça
in whose company he is gone The legate himself angered
à moy, et me dist que je ne le deusse pas avoir refusei.
at me and me said that I not it ought at-all have refused

Joinville Speaks for Staying

XL

Guy Malvoisin speaks for the barons: the king should go home. The count of Jaffa says staying would honor the king if he could hold the field a year; Joinville agrees: let the king spend his money. William of Beaumont agrees, his uncle John shouts him down, and only the lord of Chatenay sides with Joinville. At a window Joinville plans to go to Antioch if the king leaves; the king leans on him and asks if leaving would be wicked, and whether Joinville will stay if he does.

422 Le dymanche après, revenimes devant le roy; et lors
The Sunday after we-came-back before the king and then
demanda li roys à ses freres, et aus autres barons et
asked the king of his brothers and of-the other barons and

au conte de Flandres, quel consoil il li donroient, ou
of-the count of Flanders what counsel they him would-give either
de s'alée ou de sa demourée. Il respondirent tuit que il
of his-going or of his staying They answered all that they
avoient chargié à mon signour Guion Malvoisin le consoil
had charged to my lord Guy Malvoisin the counsel
que il vouloient donner au roy. Li roys li commanda que
that they wished to-give to-the king The king him commanded that
il deist ce que il li avoient chargié; et il dist ainsi:
he should-say that which they him had charged and he said thus
«Sire, vostre frere et li riche home qui ci sont, ont regardei à 423
Lord your brothers and the rich men who here are have looked at
vostre estat, et ont veu que vous n'avez pooir de demourer en
your state and have seen that you not-have power to remain in
cest païs à l'onnour de vous ne de vostre regne; que de touz
this country to the-honor of you nor of your reign for of all
les chevaliers qui vindrent en vostre compaingnie (dont vous
the knights who came in your company whereof you
en amenates en Cypre dous mille et huit cens), il n'en
thence brought into Cyprus two thousand and eight hundred it not-thereof
a pas en ceste ville cent de remenant. Si vous loent-il, sire,
has at-all in this town a-hundred of remnant So you advise-they lord
que vous en alez en France, et pourchaciés gens et deniers,
that you thence go into France and gather people and pence
par quoy vous puissés hastivement revenir en cest païs, vous
by which you may hastily return to this country you
vengier des ennemis Dieu qui vous ont tenu en lour prison.»
to-avenge on-the enemies (of-)God who you have held in their prison
Li roys ne se vout pas tenir à ce que mes sires 424
The king not himself wished at-all to-hold to that which my lord
Guis Malvoisin avoit dit; ains demanda au conte d'Anjou,
Guy Malvoisin had said rather asked of-the count of-Anjou

au conte de Poitiers et au conte de Flandres, et à
of-the count of Poitiers and of-the count of Flanders and of
plusours autres riches homes qui séoient emprès aus; et
several other rich men who sat beside them and
tuit s'acorderent à mon signour Guion Malvoisin. Li legas
all themselves-agreed with my lord Guy Malvoisin The legate
demanda au conte Jehan de Japhe, qui séoit emprès aus,
asked of-the count John of Jaffa who sat beside them
que il li sembloit de ces choses. Li cuens de Japhe li
what it him seemed of these things The count of Jaffa him
proia qu'il se soufrist de celle demande, «pour ce, fist-il,
prayed that-he himself should-forbear from that demand for this said-he
que mes chastiaus est en marche; et se je looie au roy
that my castle is in march and if I advised to-the king
la demourée, l'on cuideroit que ce fust pour mon proufit.»
the staying one would-think that this were for my profit
425 Lors li demanda li roys, si à certes comme il pot, que il
Then him asked the king as in earnest as he could that he
deist ce que il li en sembloit. Et il li dist que
should-say that which it to-him thereof seemed And he to-him said that
se il pooit tant faire que il peust herberge tenir aus chans
if he could so-much do that he could lodging hold in-the fields
dedans un an, que il feroit sa grant honnour se il demouroit.
within a year that he would-do his great honor if he remained
Lors demanda li legas à ceus qui séoient après le conte de
Then asked the legate of those who sat after the count of
Japhe; et tuit s'acorderent à mon signour Guion Malvoisin.
Jaffa and all themselves-agreed with my lord Guy Malvoisin
426 Je estoie bien li quatorziemes assis encontre le legat. Il
I was well the fourteenth seated opposite the legate He
me demanda que il m'en sembloit; et je li respondi
me asked what it me-thereof seemed and I to-him answered

que je m'acordoie bien au conte de Japhe. Et li legas
that I myself-agreed well with-the count of Jaffa And the legate
me dist, touz courouciez, comment ce pourroit estre que
me said all angered how this could be that
li roys peust tenir heberges à si pou de gens comme
the king could hold lodgings with so little of people as
il avoit. Et je li respondi aussi comme courouciez, pour
he had And I to-him answered also as angered for
ce que il me sembloit que il le disoit pour moy atteinner:
this that it me seemed that he it said for me to-vex
«Sire, et je le vous dirai, puisque il vous plait.
Lord and I it to-you will-say since it you pleases
«L'on dit, sire (je ne sai ce c'est voirs), que li roys n'a 427
One says lord I not know if this-is true that the king not-has
encore despendu nulz de ses deniers, ne mais que des
yet spent any of his pence nor but that of-the
deniers aus clers. Si mette li roys ses deniers en despense,
pence of-the clerks So may-put the king his pence into expense
et envoit li roys querre chevaliers en la Morée et outre
and may-send the king to-seek knights into the Morea and over
mer; et quant l'on orra nouvelle que li roys donne bien
sea and when one will-hear tidings that the king gives well
et largement, chevalier li venront de toutes pars, par
and liberally knights to-him will-come from all sides by
quoy il pourra tenir heberges dedans un an, se Dieu plait.
which he will-be-able hold lodgings within a year if God pleases
Et par sa demourée seront delivrei li povre prisonnier qui
And by his staying will-be delivered the poor prisoners who
ont estei pris ou servise Dieu et ou sien, qui jamais
have been taken in-the service (of-)God and in-the his who ever
n'en istront se li roys s'en va.» Il n'avoit nul
not-thence will-come-out if the king himself-thence goes It not-had anyone

illec qui n'eust de ses prochains amis en la prison; par quoy
there who not-had of his near friends in the prison by which
nulz ne me reprist, ainçois se pristrent tuit à plorer.
anyone not me reproved rather themselves took all to weep
428 Après moy, demanda li legas à mon signour Guillaume de
After me asked the legate of my lord William of
Biaumont, qui lors estoit marechaus de France, son semblant; et
Beaumont who then was marshal of France his opinion and
il dist que j'avoie mout bien dit; «et vous dirai, dist-il, raison
he said that I-had very well said and to-you I-will-say said-he reason
pourquoy.» Mes sires Jehans de Biaumont, li bons chevaliers,
why My lord John of Beaumont the good knight
qui estoit ses oncles et avoit grant talent de retourner en
who was his uncle and had great desire of returning to
France, l'escria mout felonnessement, et li dist: Orde
France him-cried-at very feloniously and to-him said Filthy
longaingne, que voulez-vous dire? Raséez-vous touz quoys!»
dung what wish-you to-say Sit-yourself-down all quiet
429 Li roys li dist: «Mes sires Jehans, vous faites mal,
The king to-him said My lord John you do ill
lessiés-li dire. — Certes, sire, non ferai.» Il le couvint
let-him say Certainly lord not I-will-do It him behooved
taire; ne nulz ne s'acorda onques puis à moy, ne
to-be-silent nor anyone not himself-agreed ever after with me nor
mais que li sires de Chatenai. Lors nous dist li roys:
but that the lord of Chatenay Then us said the king
«Signour, je vous ai bien oys, et je vous responderai de
Lords I you have well heard and I you will-answer of
ce que il me plaira à faire, de hui en huit jours.»
this that it me will-please to do from today in eight days

Quant nous fumes parti d'illec, et li assaus me commença 430
When we were departed from-there and the assault me began
de toutes pars: «Or est fous, sire de Joinville, li roys, se il
from all sides Now is mad lord of Joinville the king if he
ne vous croit contre tout le consoil dou royaume de France.»
not you believes against all the council of-the realm of France
Quant les tables furent mises, li roys me fist seoir delez li au
When the tables were set the king me had sit beside him at-the
mangier, là où il me fesoit touz jours seoir se sui frere n'i
eating there where he me had all days sit if his brothers not-there
estoient. Onques ne parla à moy tant comme li mangiers
were Ever not he-spoke to me as-long as the eating
dura: ce que il n'avoit pas acoustumei, que il ne gardast touz
lasted which that he not-had at-all accustomed that he not looked all
jours à moy en mangant. Et je cuidoie vraiement que il fust
days at me in eating And I thought truly that he were
courrouciez à moy, pour ce que je dis que il n'avoit encore
angered at me for this that I said that he not-had yet
despendu nulz de ses deniers, et que il despendist largement.
spent any of his pence and that he should-spend liberally
Tandis que li roys oy ses graces, je alai à une fenestre ferrée 431
While that the king heard his graces I went to a window barred
qui estoit en une reculée devers le chevet dou lit le roy; et
which was in a recess toward the head of-the bed (of-)the king and
tenoie mes bras parmi les fers de la fenestre, et pensoie que
held my arms through the bars of the window and thought that
se li roys s'en venoit en France, que je m'en iroie
if the king himself-thence came into France that I myself-thence would-go
vers le prince d'Antioche (qui me tenoit pour parent, et qui
toward the prince of-Antioch who me held for kinsman and who
m'avoit envoyé querre), jusques à tant que une autre alée
me-had sent to-seek until to so-much that an other passage

me venist ou pays, par quoy li prisonnier fussent delivre,
to-me should-come into-the country by which the prisoners should-be delivered
selonc le consoil que li sires de Boulaincourt m'avoit donnei.
according-to the counsel that the lord of Bourlémont me-had given
432 En ce point que je estoie illec, li roys se vint apuier à
At this point that I was there the king himself came to-lean on
mes espaules, et me tint ses dous mains sur la teste. Et je
my shoulders and me held his two hands on the head And I
cuidai que ce fust mes sires Phelippes d'Anemos, qui trop
thought that this were my lord Philip of-Nemours who too-much
d'ennui m'avoit fait le jour pour le consoil que je li
of-annoyance me-had done the day for the counsel that I to-him
avoie donnei; et dis ainsi: «Lessiés-moy en paiz, mes sires
had given and said thus Leave-me in peace my lord
Phelippes.» Par male avanture, au tourner que je fiz ma
Philip By ill chance at-the turning that I made my
teste, la mains le roy me chéi parmi le visaige; et cognu
head the hand (of-)the king to-me fell across the face and I-knew
que c'estoit li roys à une esmeraude que il avoit en son
that this-was the king by an emerald that he had on his
doy. Et il me dist: «Tenez-vous touz quoys; car je vous vueil
finger And he me said Hold-yourself all quiet for I you wish
demander comment vous fustes si hardis que vous, qui estes
to-ask how you were so bold that you who are
uns joennes hons, m'osastes loer ma demourée, encontre touz
a young man me-dared advise my staying against all
les grans homes et les saiges de France qui me looient m'alée.»
the great men and the wise of France who me advised my-going
433 «Sire, fis-je, se j'avoie la mauvestié en mon cuer, si ne vous
Lord said-I if I-had the wickedness in my heart so not you
loeroie-je à nul fuer que vous la feissiés. — Dites-vous,
would-advise-I at any price that you it should-do Say-you

fist-il, que je feroie que mauvaiz se je m'en aloie? —
said-he that I would-do like wicked-man if I myself-thence went
Si m'aïst Diex, sire, fis-je, oyl.» Et il me dist: «Se je
So me-help God lord said-I yes And he me said If I
demeur, demourrez-vous?» Et je li dis que oyl, «se je
remain will-remain-you And I to-him said that yes if I
puis ne dou mien ne de l'autruy. — Or soiés touz aises,
can either of-the mine or of the-others' Now be all at-ease
dist-il, car je vous sai mout bon grei de ce que vous
said-he for I you know very good gratitude for this that you
m'avez loei; mais ne le dites à nullui toute celle semainne.»
me-have advised but not it say to anyone all that week
Je fu plus aises de celle parole, et me deffendoie plus 434
I was more at-ease from that word and myself defended more
hardiement contre ceus qui m'asailloient. On appelle les
boldly against those who me-assailed One calls the
païsans dou païs, poulains; dont mes sires Pierres d'Avallon,
peasants of-the country colts whereof my lord Peter of-Avallon
qui demeuroit à Sur, oy dire que on me appeloit poulain
who dwelt at Tyre heard say that one me called colt
pour ce que j'avoie conseillié au roy sa demourée avecques
for this that I-had counseled to-the king his staying with
les poulains. Si me manda mes sires Pierres d'Avalon que
the colts So me sent-word my lord Peter of-Avallon that
je me deffendisse vers ceus qui m'apeloient poulain, et
I myself should-defend against those who me-called colt and
lour deisse que j'amoie miex estre poulains que roncins
to-them should-say that I-loved better to-be colt than rouncy
recreus, aussi comme il estoient.
worn-out just as they were

The King Stays Overseas

XLI

The next Sunday the king says he will stay rather than lose Jerusalem; his brothers, it is said, go home. When his council hires no knights he calls the seneschal, who has hired Peter of Pontmolain and two knights; the king counts on his fingers and retains him. The emperor Frederick's envoys come too late. The sultan of Damascus offers Jerusalem for help against the emirs, and Brother Yves meets a woman with fire to burn paradise and water to quench hell.

435 A l'autre dymanche, revenimes tuit devant le roy; et quant li
On the-other Sunday we-came-back all before the king and when the
roys vit que nous fumes tuit venu, si seigna sa bouche et nous
king saw that we were all come so he-crossed his mouth and us
dist ainsi (après ce que il ot appelei l'aide dou Saint-Esperit,
said thus after this that he had called-on the-aid of-the Holy-Spirit
si comme je l'entent; car ma dame ma mere me dist que
so as I it-understand for my lady my mother me said that
toute fois que je vourroie dire aucune chose, que je appelasse
every time that I would-wish to-say any thing that I should-call-on
l'aide dou Saint-Esperit, et que je seignasse ma bouche).
the-aid of-the Holy-Spirit and that I should-cross my mouth
436 La parole le roy fut teix: «Signour, fist-il, je vous merci
The speech (of-)the king was such Lords said-he I you thank
mout à touz ceus qui m'ont loei m'alée en France, et si rent
much to all those who me-have advised my-going into France and so I-render
graces aussi à ceus qui m'ont loei ma demourée; mais je me
thanks also to those who me-have advised my staying but I myself
sui avisiez que se je demeur je n'i voy point de peril que
am bethought that if I remain I not-there see at-all of peril that
mes royaumes se perde; car ma dame la royne a bien gent
my realm itself may-lose for my lady the queen has well people

pour le deffendre. Et ai regardei aussi que li baron de cest
for it to-defend And I-have looked also that the barons of this
païs dient, se je m'en voi, que li royaumes de Jerusalem
country say if I myself-thence go that the realm of Jerusalem
est perdus; que nulz n'i osera demourer après moy.
is lost for anyone not-there will-dare remain after me
«Si ai regardei que à nul fuer je ne lairoie le royaume de 437
So I-have looked that at any price I not would-let the realm of
Jerusalem perdre, lequel je sui venuz pour garder et pour
Jerusalem be-lost which I am come for to-guard and for
conquerre; si est mes consaus teix, que je sui demourez,
to-conquer so is my counsel such that I am remained
comme à orendroit. Si di-je à vous, riche home qui ci
as for now So say-I to you rich men who here
estes, et à touz autres chevaliers qui vourront demourer avec
are and to all other knights who will-wish to-remain with
moy, que vous veigniez parler à moy hardiement; et je vous
me that you should-come to-speak to me boldly and I you
donrai tant, que la coulpe n'iert pas moie, mais vostre, se
will-give so-much that the fault not-will-be at-all mine but yours if
vous ne voulez demourer.» Mout en y ot qui oïrent ceste
you not wish to-remain Many thereof there had who heard this
parole, qui furent esbahi; et mout en y ot qui plorerent.
word who were dismayed and many thereof there had who wept
Li roys ordena, si comme l'on dist, que sui frere retourneroient 438
The king ordained so as one says that his brothers would-return
en France. Je ne sai se ce fu à lour requeste, ou par la
to France I not know if this was at their request or by the
volentei dou roy. Ceste parole que li roys dist de sa demourée,
will of-the king This word that the king said of his staying
ce fu entour la saint-Jehan. Or avint ainsi que le jour de la
this was about the Saint-John Now happened so that the day of the

saint-Jaque, quel pelerins je estoie et qui mainz biens m'avoit
Saint-James whose pilgrim I was and who many benefits me-had
fait, li roys fu revenus en sa chambre de la messe, et appela
done the king was returned into his chamber from the mass and called
son consoil qui estoit demourez avec li: c'est à savoir mon
his council which was remained with him this-is to know my
signour Perron le Chamberlain, qui fu li plus loiaus hom et
lord Peter the Chamberlain who was the most loyal man and
li plus droituriers que je veisse onques en hostel de roy; mon
the most righteous that I saw ever in household of king my
signour Geffroy de Sergines, le bon chevalier et le preudome;
lord Geoffrey of Sargines the good knight and the worthy-man
mon signour Gilon le Brun, et bon chevalier et preudome,
my lord Giles the Brown and good knight and worthy-man
cui li roys avoit donnei la connestablie de France, après
to-whom the king had given the constableship of France after
la mort mon signour Hymbert de Biaugeu le preudome.
the death (of-)my lord Imbert of Beaujeu the worthy-man
439 A ceus parla li roys en tel maniere tout haut, aussi
To these spoke the king in such manner all loud just
comme en couroussant: «Signour, il a jà un moys que
as in angering Lords it has already a month that
l'on sait ma demourée, ne je n'ai encore oy nouvelles
one knows my staying nor I not-have yet heard tidings
que vous m'aiés retenu nulz chevaliers. — Sire, firent-il,
that you me-have retained any knights Lord said-they
nous n'en poons mais; car chascuns se fait si chier,
we not-thereof can more for each himself makes so dear
pour ce que il s'en vuelent aler en lour païs, que
for this that they themselves-thence wish to-go to their country that
nous ne lour oseriens donner ce que il demandent. —
we not to-them would-dare give that which they ask

Et qui, fist li roys, trouverés-vous à meillour marchié? —
And whom said the king will-find-you at better bargain
Certes, sire, firent-il, le seneschal de Champaingne; mais
Certainly lord said-they the seneschal of Champagne but
nous ne li oseriens donner ce qu'il demande.»
we not to-him would-dare give that which-he asks
Je estoie à l'instant enmi la chambre le roy, et oy ces 440
I was at the-instant amid the chamber (of-)the king and heard these
paroles. Lors dist li roys: «Appelez-moy le seneschal.» Je alai
words Then said the king Call-me the seneschal I went
à li et m'agenoillai devant li; et il me fist seoir, et me
to him and myself-knelt before him and he me had sit and me
dist ainsi: «Senechaus, vous savés que je vous ai mout amei,
said thus Seneschal you know that I you have much loved
et ma gent me dient que il vous treuvent dur. Comment
and my people me say that they you find hard How
est-ce? — Sire, fis-je, je n'en puis mais; car vous savez
is-it Lord said-I I not-thereof can more for you know
que je fu pris en l'yaue, et ne me demoura onques riens
that I was taken on the-water and not to-me remained ever anything
que je ne perdisse tout ce que j'avoie.» Et il me demanda
that I not lost all that which I-had And he me asked
que je demandoie; et je dis que je demandoie dous mille
what I asked and I said that I asked two thousand
livres jusques à Pasques pour les dous pars de l'année.
pounds until to Easter for the two parts of the-year
«Or me dites, fist-il, avez-vous barguignié nulz chevaliers?» Et 441
Now me tell said-he have-you bargained-for any knights And
je dis: «Oyl, mon signour Perron de Pontmolain, li tiers à
I said Yes my lord Peter of Pontmolain himself third with
baniere, qui coustent quatre cens livres jusques à Pasques.»
banner who cost four hundred pounds until to Easter

Et il conta par ses doiz. «Ce sont, fist-il, douze cens livres
And he counted on his fingers These are said-he twelve hundred pounds
que vostre nouvel chevalier cousteront. — Or regardez, sire,
that your new knights will-cost Now look lord
fis-je, se il me couvenra bien huit cens livres pour moy
said-I if it me will-behoove well eight hundred pounds for me
monter et pour moy armer, et pour mes chevaliers donner
to-mount and for me to-arm and for my knights to-give
à mangier: car vous ne voulés pas que nous mangiens en
to eat for you not wish at-all that we eat in
vostre ostel.» Lors dist à sa gent: «Vraiement, fist-il, je ne
your household Then he-said to his people Truly said-he I not
voi ci point d'outraige; et je vous retieng,» fist-il à moy.
see here at-all of-excess and I you retain said-he to me
442 Après ces choses, atirierent li frere au roy lour navie, et
After these things arrayed the brothers of-the king their fleet and
li autre riche home qui estoient en Acre. Au partir que il
the other rich men who were in Acre At-the departing that they
firent d'Acre, li cuens de Poitiers empronta joiaus à ceus
made from-Acre the count of Poitiers borrowed jewels from those
qui ralerent en France; et à nous, qui demourames, en
who went-back to France and to us who remained thereof
donna bien et largement. Mout me prierent li uns freres et
gave well and liberally Much me prayed the one brother and
li autres que je me preisse garde dou roy; et me disoient
the other that I myself should-take heed of-the king and me said
que il n'i demouroit nullui en cui il s'atendissent tant.
that it not-there remained anyone in whom they themselves-trusted so-much
Quant li cuens d'Anjou vit que requeillir le couvenroit en
When the count of-Anjou saw that to-embark him would-behoove into

la nef, il mena tel duel que tuit s'en merveillierent;
the ship he made such grief that all themselves-thence marveled
et toutevoiz s'en vint-il en France.
and all-the-same himself-thence came-he to France
Il ne tarda pas grantmant après ce que li frere le roy furent 443
It not delayed at-all greatly after this that the brothers (of-)the king were
parti d'Acre, que li messaige l'empereour Ferri vindrent au
departed from-Acre that the messengers (of-)the-emperor Frederick came to-the
roy et li apporterent lettres de créance, et dirent au roy
king and to-him brought letters of credence and said to-the king
que li emperieres les avoit envoiés pour nostre delivrance.
that the emperor them had sent for our deliverance
Au roy moustrerent lettres que li emperieres envoioit au
To-the king they-showed letters that the emperor sent to-the
soudanc, qui mors estoit (ce que li emperieres ne cuidoit pas);
sultan who dead was this which the emperor not thought at-all
et li mandoit li emperieres que il creust ses messaiges
and to-him sent-word the emperor that he should-believe his messengers
de la delivrance le roy. Mout de gens distrent que il ne
of the deliverance (of-)the king Many of people said that it not
nous fust pas mestier que li messaige nous eussent trouvez
to-us were at-all need that the messengers us had found
en la prison; car l'on cuidoit que li emperieres eust envoié ses
in the prison for one thought that the emperor had sent his
messaiges plus pour nous encombrer que pour nous delivrer.
messengers more for us to-encumber than for us to-deliver
Li messaige nous trouverent delivres; si s'en alerent.
The messengers us found delivered so themselves-thence went
Tandis que li roys estoit en Acre, envoia li soudans de 444
While that the king was in Acre sent the sultan of
Damas ses messaiges au roy, et se plainst mout à li des
Damascus his messengers to-the king and himself complained much to him of-the

amiraus de Egypte, qui avoient son cousin le soudanc tuei;
emirs of Egypt who had his cousin the sultan killed
et promist au roy que se il li vouloit aidier, que il li
and promised to-the king that if he him wished to-help that he to-him
deliverroit le royaume de Jerusalem, qui estoit en sa main. Li
would-deliver the realm of Jerusalem which was in his hand The
roys ot consoil que il feroit response au soudanc de Damas
king had counsel that he would-make answer to-the sultan of Damascus
par ses messaiges propres, lesquiex il envoya au soudanc.
by his messengers own which he sent to-the sultan
Avec les messaiges qui là alerent, ala freres Yves li Bretons,
With the messengers who there went went brother Yves the Breton
de l'ordre des freres Preescheours, qui savoit le sarrazinnois.
of the-order of-the friars Preachers who knew the Saracen-tongue
445 Tandis que il aloient de lour hostel à l'ostel dou soudanc,
While that they went from their lodging to the-lodging of-the sultan
freres Yves vit une femme vieille qui traversoit parmi la
brother Yves saw a woman old who crossed through the
rue, et portoit en sa main destre une escuellée pleinne de
street and bore in her hand right a bowl full of
feu, et en la senestre une phiole pleinne d'yaue. Freres Yves
fire and in the left a phial full of-water Brother Yves
li demanda: «Que veus-tu de ce faire?» Elle li respondi
her asked What wishest-thou of this to-do She to-him answered
qu'elle voulait dou feu ardoir paradis, que jamais n'en
that-she wished with-the fire to-burn paradise so-that ever not-thereof
fust point, et de l'yaue esteindre enfer, que jamais
were at-all and with-the water to-quench hell so-that ever
n'en fust point. Et il li demanda: «Pourquoy veus-tu
not-thereof were at-all And he her asked Why wishest-thou
ce faire? — Pour ce que ce je ne vueil que nulz face
this to-do For this that this I not wish that anyone may-do

jamais bien pour le guerredon de paradis avoir, ne pour la
ever good for the reward of paradise to-have nor for the
poour d'enfer; mais proprement pour l'amour de Dieu avoir,
fear of-hell but properly for the-love of God to-have
qui tant vaut, et qui tout le bien nous puet faire.»
who so-much is-worth and who all the good us can do

John the Armenian, and the Old Man of the Mountain

XLII

In Damascus an old Saracen tells the king's artilleryman, John the Armenian, that the leper king Baldwin once beat Saladin with three hundred men, and that God judges a Christian's little sin more harshly than a Saracen's great one. Later John rebukes a man. The Old Man of the Mountain's envoys ask the king to buy his friendship or free him of his tribute to the Temple and the Hospital; the masters threaten to drown them and order them back with gifts.

Jehans li Ermins, qui estoit artilliers le roy, ala lors à 446
John the Armenian who was artillerer (of-)the king went then to
Damas pour acheter cornes et glu pour faire arbalestres;
Damascus for to-buy horns and glue for to-make crossbows
et vit un vieil home, mout ancien, seoir sur les estaus de
and saw an old man very ancient sit on the stalls of
Damas. Cis viex hom l'appela et li demanda se il estoit
Damascus This old man him-called and him asked if he was
crestiens; et il li dist oyl. Et il li dist: «Mout vous
Christian and he to-him said yes And he to-him said Much you
devez haïr entre vous crestiens; que j'ai veu tel fois que
ought hate among you Christians for I-have seen such time that
li roys Baudouins de Jerusalem, qui fu mesiaus, desconfist
the king Baldwin of Jerusalem who was leprous discomfited

Salehadin; et n'avoit que trois cens homes à armes, et
Saladin and not-had but three hundred men at arms and
Salehadins trois milliers: or estes tel menei par vos pechiés,
Saladin three thousands now are-you such brought by your sins
que nous vous prenons aval les chans comme bestes.»
that we you take down the fields like beasts
447 Lors li dist Jehans li Ermins que il se devoit bien
Then to-him said John the Armenian that he himself ought well
taire des pechiez aus crestiens, pour les pechiez que li
be-silent of-the sins of-the Christians for the sins that the
Sarrazin fesoient, qui mout sont plus grant. Et li Sarrazins
Saracens did which much are more great And the Saracen
respondi que folement avoit respondu. Et Jehans li demanda
answered that foolishly he-had answered And John him asked
pourquoy. Et il li dist que il li diroit, mais il li
why And he to-him said that he to-him would-say but he to-him
feroit avant une demande. Et il demanda se il avoit nul
would-make first a question And he asked if he had any
enfant. Et il li dist: «Oyl, un fil.» Et il li demanda
child And he to-him said Yes a son And he him asked
douquel il li anuieroit plus, se on lui donnoit une bufe,
of-which it him would-grieve more if one him gave a slap
ou de li ou de son fil. Et il li dist que il seroit
either of him or of his son And he to-him said that he would-be
plus courouciez de son fil, se il le feroit, que de li.
more angered for his son if he it would-do than for himself
448 «Ore te faiz, dist li Sarrazins, ma response en tel
Now to-thee I-make said the Saracen my answer in such
maniere: que entre vous cretiens estes fil de Dieu, et de
manner that among you Christians you-are sons of God and from
son non de Crist estes appelei crestian; et tel courtoisie
his name of Christ you-are called Christian and such courtesy

vous fait que il vous a bailliez enseignours, par quoy vous
you does that he you has given teachers by which you
congnoissiés quant vous faites le bien et quant vous faites
know when you do the good and when you do
le mal. Dont Diex vous sait pejor grei d'un petit pechié,
the evil Whence God to-you knows worse gratitude for-a little sin
quant vous le faites, que il ne fait à nous d'un grant, qui
when you it do than he not does to us for-a great who
n'en congnoissons point, et qui soumes si aveugle que
not-thereof know at-all and who are so blind that
nous cuidons estre quite de tous nos pechiez se nous nous
we think to-be quit of all our sins if we ourselves
poons laver en yaue avant que nous mouriens, pour ce que
can wash in water before that we die for this that
Mahommez nous dit à la mort que par yaue seriens sauf.»
Muhammad us says at the death that by water we-would-be saved
Jehans li Ermins estoit en ma compaingnie, puis que je 449
John the Armenian was in my company since that I
reving d'outre mer, que je m'en aloie à Paris. Aussi
came-back from-over sea when I myself-thence went to Paris Just
comme nous mangiens en paveillon, une grans tourbe de
as we ate in pavilion a great throng of
povres gens nous demandoient pour Dieu, et fesoient grant
poor people us asked for God and made great
noise. Uns de nos gens, qui là estoit, commanda et dist
noise One of our people who there was commanded and said
à un de nos vallez: «Lieve sus, et chace hors ces povres.»
to one of our varlets Rise up and chase out these poor
— «A! fist Jehans li Ermins, vous avez trop mal dit; car se 450
Ah said John the Armenian you have very ill said for if
li roys de France nous envoioit maintenant par ses messaiges
the king of France us sent now by his messengers

à chascun cent mars d'argent, nous ne les chaceriens pas
to each a-hundred marks of-silver we not them would-chase at-all
hors; et vous chaciés ceus envoiez qui vous offrent qu'i
out and you chase those sent who to-you offer that-they
vous dourront quanque l'on vous puet donner: c'est à savoir
to-you will-give whatever one to-you can give this-is to know
que il vous demandent que vous lour donnez pour Dieu,
that they you ask that you to-them give for God
c'est à entendre que vous lour donnez dou vostre, et il
this-is to understand that you to-them give of-the yours and they
vous dourront Dieu. Et Diex le dist de sa bouche, que il
to-you will-give God And God it said with his mouth that they
ont pouoir de li donner à nous; et dient li saint que li
have power of him to-give to us and say the saints that the
povre nous peuent acorder à li, en tel maniere que, ainsi
poor us can reconcile to him in such manner that just
comme l'yaue estaint le feu, l'aumosne estaint le pechié.
as the-water quenches the fire the-alms quenches the sin
Si ne vous avieigne jamais, dist Jehans, que vous chaciés
So not to-you may-it-happen ever said John that you chase
les povres ainsi; mais donnés-lour, et Diex vous donra.»
the poor thus but give-them and God to-you will-give

451 Tandis que li roys demouroit en Acre, vindrent li messaige
While that the king dwelt in Acre came the messengers
au Vieil de la Montaingne à li. Quant li roys revint de
of-the Old-Man of the Mountain to him When the king came-back from
sa messe, il les fist venir devant li. Li roys les fist asseoir
his mass he them had come before him The king them had sit
en tel maniere, que il avoit un amiral devant, bien vestu et
in such manner that it had an emir in-front well clothed and
bien atournei; et darieres son amiral avoit un bachelier bien
well arrayed and behind his emir there-was a bachelor well

atournei, qui tenoit trois coutiaus en son poing, dont li uns
arrayed who held three knives in his fist of-which the one
entroit ou manche de l'autre; pour ce que se li amiraus eust
entered into-the haft of the-other for this that if the emir had
estei refusez, il eust presentei au roy ces trois coutiaus
been refused he would-have presented to-the king these three knives
pour li deffier. Dariere celi qui tenoit les trois coutiaus, avoit
for him to-defy Behind him who held the three knives there-was
un autre qui tenoit un bouqueran entorteillié entour son bras,
an other who held a buckram wound around his arm
que il eust aussi presentei au roy pour li ensevelir,
which he would-have also presented to-the king for him to-shroud
se il eust refusée la requeste au Vieil de la Montaigne.
if he had refused the request of-the Old-Man of the Mountain
Li roys dist à l'amiral que il li deist sa volentei; et 452
The king said to the-emir that he to-him should-say his will and
li amiraus li bailla unes lettres de créance, et dist ainsi:
the emir to-him gave some letters of credence and said thus
«Mes sires m'envoie à vous demander se vous le cognoissiés.»
My lord me-sends to you to-ask if you him know
Et li roys respondi que il ne le cognoissoit point, car il
And the king answered that he not him knew at-all for he
ne l'avoit onques veu; mais il avoit bien oy parler de li.
not him-had ever seen but he had well heard speak of him
«Et, quant vous avez oy parler de mon signour, dist li
And since you have heard speak of my lord said the
amiraus, je me merveil mout que vous ne li avez envoié
emir I myself marvel much that you not to-him have sent
tant dou vostre que vous l'eussiez retenu à ami, aussi
so-much of-the yours that you him-would-have retained as friend just
comme l'emperieres d'Alemaingne, li roys de Honguerie, li
as the-emperor of-Germany the king of Hungary the

soudans de Babiloinne et li autre li font touz les ans;
sultan of Babylon and the others to-him do all the years
pour ce que il sont certein que il ne peuent vivre mais
for this that they are certain that they not can live more
que tant comme il plaira à mon signour.»
but so-long as it will-please to my lord
453 «Et se ce ne vous plait à faire, si le faites aquitier dou
And if this not you pleases to do so him make be-acquitted of-the
tréu que il doit à l'Ospital et au Temple, et il se tenra
tribute that he owes to the-Hospital and to-the Temple and he himself will-hold
apaiez de vous.» Au Temple et à l'Ospital il rendoit lors
satisfied with you To-the Temple and to the-Hospital he rendered then
tréu, pour ce que il ne doutoient riens les Assacis, pour ce
tribute for this that they not feared at-all the Assassins for this
que li Viex de la Montaingne n'i puet riens gaaignier
that the Old-Man of the Mountain not-there can anything gain
se il fesoit tuer le maistre dou Temple ou de l'Ospital; car
if he had killed the master of-the Temple or of the-Hospital for
il savoit bien que se il en feist un tuer, l'on y remeist
he knew well that if he thereof had one killed one there would-put-back
tantost un autre aussi bon. Et pour ce ne vouloit-il pas
at-once an other as good And for this not wished-he at-all
perdre les Assacis en lieu là où il ne puet riens gaaingnier.
to-lose the Assassins in place there where he not can anything gain
Li rois respondi à l'amiral que il revenist à la relevée.
The king answered to the-emir that he should-come-back at the afternoon
454 Quant li amiraus fu revenus, il trouva que li rois séoit en tel
When the emir was come-back he found that the king sat in such
maniere, que li maistres de l'Ospital li estoit d'une part,
manner that the master of the-Hospital to-him was on-one side
et li maistres dou Temple d'autre. Lors li dist li roys que
and the master of-the Temple on-other Then to-him said the king that

il li redeist ce que il li avoit dit au matin; et il
he to-him should-say-again that which he to-him had said in-the morning and he
dist que il n'avoit pas consoil dou redire, mais que devant
said that he not-had at-all counsel of-the saying-again but that before
ceus qui estoient au matin avec le roy. Lors li distrent li
those who were in-the morning with the king Then to-him said the
dui maistre: «Nous vous commandons que vous le dites.» Et
two masters We you command that you it say And
il lour dist que il le diroit, puis que il le commandoient.
he to-them said that he it would-say since that they it commanded
Lors li firent dire li dui maistre en sarrazinnois, que il
Then him had say the two masters in Saracen-tongue that he
venist l'endemain parler à aus en l'Ospital; et il si fist.
should-come the-next-day to-speak to them at the-Hospital and he so did
Lors li firent dire li dui maistre que mout estoit hardis ses 455
Then him had say the two masters that very was bold his
sires, quant il avoit osei mander au roy si dures paroles;
lord when he had dared send-word to-the king such hard words
et li firent dire que, se ne fust pour l'honour dou roy, en
and him had say that if not were for the-honor of-the king in
quel messaige il estoient venu, que il les feissent noier
whose message they were come that they them would-have drowned
en l'orde mer d'Acre, en despit de lour signour. «Et vous
in the-filthy sea of-Acre in despite of their lord And you
commandons que vous en ralez vers vostre signour, et
we-command that you thence go-back toward your lord and
dedens quinzainne vous soiés ci-ariere, et apportez au roy tiex
within a-fortnight you be here-back and bring to-the king such
lettres et tiex joiaus, de par vostre signour, dont li roys
letters and such jewels on behalf-of your lord whereof the king
se tieingne apaiez et que il vous en sache bon grei.»
himself may-hold satisfied and that he you thereof may-know good gratitude

Brother Yves, and the Captives Freed

XLIII

The Old Man sends his shirt, as sign that he holds the king nearest in love, his ring, to wed him. The king sends back Brother Yves the Breton, who finds the Old Man following Ali and believing that Abel's soul passed through Noah and Abraham into Saint Peter. A crier goes before him calling to make way for him who carries kings' death. John of Valenciennes wins from the emirs two hundred knights and Count Walter's bones, which the lady of Sidon buries at Acre.

456 Dedans la quinzeinne revindrent, li messaige le Vieil
Within the fortnight came-back the messengers (of-)the Old-Man
en Acre, et apporterent au roy la chemise dou Vieil; et
to Acre and brought to-the king the shirt of-the Old-Man and
distrent au roy, de par le Viel, que c'estoit senefiance
said to-the king on behalf-of the Old-Man that this-was sign
que aussi comme la chemise est plus près dou cors que
that just as the shirt is more near to-the body than
nus autres vestemens aussi veut li Viex tenir le roy plus
any other garment so wishes the Old-Man to-hold the king more
près à amour que nul autre roy. Et il li envoia son
near in love than any other king And he to-him sent his
anel, qui estoit de mout fin or, là où ses nons estoit
ring which was of very fine gold there where his name was
escris; et li manda que par son anel respousoit-il le
written and to-him sent-word that by his ring wedded-he the
roy; que il vouloit que dès lors en avant fussent tuit un.
king for he wished that from then on forward should-be all one
457 Entre les autres joiaus que il envoia au roy, li envoia un
Among the other jewels that he sent to-the king to-him he-sent an
oliphant de cristal mout bien fait, et une beste que l'on appelle
elephant of crystal very well made and a beast which one calls

orafle, de cristal aussi, pommes de diverses manieres de cristal,
giraffe of crystal also apples of diverse manners of crystal
et jeuz de table et de eschiez; et toutes ces choses estoient
and games of tables and of chess and all these things were
fleuretées de ambre, et estoit li ambres liez sur le cristal à
flowered with amber and was the amber bound on the crystal with
beles vignetes de bon or fin. Et sachiez que si tost comme li
fair vinework of good gold fine And know that so soon as the
messaige ouvrirent lour escrins là où ces choses estoient, il
messengers opened their caskets there where these things were it
sembla que toute la chambre fust embausmée, si souef floroient.
seemed that all the chamber were embalmed so sweetly they-smelled
Li roys renvoia ses messaiges au Vieil, et li renvoia 458
The king sent-back his messengers to-the Old-Man and to-him sent-back
grant foison de joiaus, escarlates, coupes d'or et frains
great plenty of jewels scarlets cups of-gold and bridles
d'argent; et avecques les messaiges y envoia frere Yve le
of-silver and with the messengers there sent brother Yves the
Breton, qui savoit le sarrazinnois. Et trouva que li Viex
Breton who knew the Saracen-tongue And he-found that the Old-Man
de la Montaingne ne créoit pas en Mahommet, ainçois
of the Mountain not believed at-all in Muhammad rather
créoit en la loy de Haali, qui fu oncles Mahommet.
believed in the law of Ali who was uncle (of-)Muhammad
Cis Haalis mist Mahommet en l'onnour là où il fu; et 459
This Ali put Muhammad in the-honor there where he was and
quant Mahommez se fu mis en la signourie dou peuple,
when Muhammad himself was put in the lordship of-the people
si despita son oncle, et l'esloingna de li. Et Haalis, quant
so despised his uncle and him-put-far from himself And Ali when
il vit ce, si trait à li dou peuple ce que il pot avoir, et
he saw this so drew to himself of-the people that which he could have and

lour aprist une autre créance que Mahommez n'avoit enseignie:
them taught an other belief than Muhammad not-had taught
dont encore il est ainsi, que tuit cil qui croient en la loy
whence still it is so that all those who believe in the law
Haali, dient que cil qui croient en la loy Mahommet sont
(of-)Ali say that those who believe in the law (of-)Muhammad are
mescréant; et aussi tuit cil qui croient en la loy Mahommet,
misbelieving and also all those who believe in the law (of-)Muhammad
dient que tuit cil qui croient en la loy Haali sont mescréant.
say that all those who believe in the law (of-)Ali are misbelieving
460 Li uns des poins de la loy Haali est que, quant uns hom se
The one of-the points of the law (of-)Ali is that when a man himself
fait tuer pour le commandemant son signour, que l'ame de
makes be-killed for the command (of-)his lord that the-soul of
li en va en plus aisié cors qu'elle n'estoit devant; et pour
him thence goes into more at-ease body than-it not-was before and for
ce ne font force li Assacis d'aus faire tuer quant lour
this not make force the Assassins of-themselves to-make be-killed when their
sires lour commande, pour ce que il croient que il seront
lord them commands for this that they believe that they will-be
assez plus aise, quant il seront mort, que il n'estoient devant.
much more at-ease when they will-be dead than they not-were before
461 Li autres poins si est teix, que il croient que nulz ne puet
The other point so is such that they believe that anyone not can
mourir que jeusques au jour que il li est jugié; et ce
die but until to-the day that it to-him is adjudged and this
ne doit nulz croire, car Diex a pooir d'alongier nos vies et
not ought anyone believe for God has power of-lengthening our lives and
d'acourcir. Et en cesti point croient li Beduin; et pour ce
of-shortening And in this point believe the Bedouins and for this
ne se weulent armer quant il vont es batailles, car
not themselves wish to-arm when they go into-the battles for

il cuideroient faire contre le commendemant de lour loy. Et
they would-think to-do against the command of their law And
quant il maudient lour enfans, si lour dient: «Ainsi maudis
when they curse their children so to-them they-say Thus cursed
soies-tu comme li Frans, qui s'arme pour paour de mort!»
be-thou as the Frank who himself-arms for fear of death
Freres Yves trouva un livre, ou chevet dou lit au Vieil, 462
Brother Yves found a book at-the head of-the bed of-the Old-Man
là où il avoit escrit plusours paroles que Nostre Sires dist
there where he had written several words that Our Lord said
à saint Pere, quant il aloit par terre. Et freres Yves li
to saint Peter when he went on earth And brother Yves to-him
dist: «Ha! pour Dieu, sire, lisiés souvent ce livre; car ce
said Ah for God lord read often this book for these
sont trop bones paroles.» Et il dist que si fesoit-il: «Car j'ai
are very good words And he said that so did-he For I-hold
mout chier mon signour saint Pere; car en l'encommencement
very dear my lord saint Peter for in the-beginning
dou monde, l'ame de Abel, quant il fu tuez, vint ou
of-the world the-soul of Abel when he was killed came into-the
cors de Noé; et quant Noés fu mors, si revint ou cors
body of Noah and when Noah was dead so came-back into-the body
de Habraham; et dou cors Habraham, quant il morut,
of Abraham and from-the body (of-)Abraham when he died
vint ou cors saint Pere quant Diex vint en terre.»
came into-the body (of-)saint Peter when God came on earth
Quant freres Yves oi ce, il li moustra que sa créance 463
When brother Yves heard this he to-him showed that his belief
n'estoit pas bonne, et li enseigna mout de bones paroles;
not-was at-all good and him taught many of good words
mais il ne le vout croire. Et ces choses moustra freres
but he not him wished to-believe And these things showed brother

Yves au roy, quand il fu revenus à nous. Quant li Viex
Yves to-the king when he was come-back to us When the Old-Man
chevauchoit, il avoit un criour devant li qui portoit une
rode he had a crier before him who bore an
hache danoise à lonc manche couvert tout d'argent, atout
axe Danish with long haft covered all with-silver with
plein de coutiaus ferus ou manche, et crioit: «Tournés-vous
full of knives struck in-the haft and cried Turn-yourselves
de devant celi qui porte la mort des roys entre ses mains.»
from before him who bears the death of-the kings between his hands
464 Je vous avoie oublié à dire la response que li roys fist au
I to-you had forgotten to say the answer that the king made to-the
soudanc de Damas, qui fu teix: que il n'avoit consoil d'aler
sultan of Damascus which was such that he not-had counsel of-going
à li, jusques à tant que il seust se li amiral de Egypte
to him until to so-much that he might-know if the emirs of Egypt
li adresseroient sa treve que il avoient rompue; et il en
to-him would-redress his truce that they had broken and he thereof
envoieroit à aus, et se il ne vouloient adrecier la treve que il
would-send to them and if they not wished to-redress the truce that they
li avoient rompue, il li aideroit à vengier volentiers de son
to-him had broken he him would-help to avenge willingly of his
cousin, le soudanc de Babiloinne, que il li avoient tuei.
cousin the sultan of Babylon whom they to-him had killed
465 Tandis que li roys estoit en Acre, il envoia mon signour Jehan
While that the king was in Acre he sent my lord John
de Valenciennes en Egypte, liquex requist aux amiraus que
of Valenciennes into Egypt which requested of-the emirs that
les outraiges que il avoient faiz au roy et les doumaiges,
the outrages that they had done to-the king and the harms
que il les rendissent. Et il li distrent que si feroient-il
that they them should-make-good And they to-him said that so would-do-they

mout volentiers, mais que li roys se vousist alier à aus
very willingly provided that the king himself wished to-ally to them
contre le soudanc de Damas. Mes sires Jehans de Valenciennes
against the sultan of Damascus My lord John of Valenciennes
les blasma mout des grans outraiges que il avoient faiz au
them blamed much for-the great outrages that they had done to-the
roy, qui sont devant nommei; et lour loa que bon seroit
king which are before named and them advised that good it-would-be
que, pour le cuer le roy adebonnairir devers aus, que il
that for the heart (of-)the king to-soften toward them that they
li envoiassent touz les chevaliers que il tenoient en prison.
to-him should-send all the knights that they held in prison
Et il si firent; et d'abondant li envoierent touz les os
And they so did and besides to-him sent all the bones
le conte Gautier de Brienne, pour mettre en terre benoite.
(of-)the count Walter of Brienne for to-put in ground blessed
Quant mes sires Jehans de Valenciennes fu revenus en Acre 466
When my lord John of Valenciennes was come-back to Acre
atout dous cens chevaliers que il ramena de prison, sanz
with two hundred knights that he brought-back from prison without
l'autre peuple, ma dame de Soiete, qui estoit cousine le
the-other people my lady of Sidon who was cousin (of-)the
conte Gautier et suer mon signour Gautier signour de Rinel
count Walter and sister (of-)my lord Walter lord of Reynel
(cui fille Jehans, sires de Joinville, prist puis à femme
whose daughter John lord of Joinville took afterward to wife
que il revint d'outre-mer); laquex dame de Soiette prist
after he came-back from-over-sea which lady of Sidon took
les os au conte Gautier, et les fist ensevelir à l'Ospital
the bones of-the count Walter and them had buried at the-Hospital
en Acre. Et fist faire le servise en tel maniere, que
in Acre And she-had made the service in such manner that

chascuns chevaliers offri un cierge et un denier d'argent,
each knight offered a candle and a penny of-silver
et li roys offri un cierge et un besant d'or, tout des
and the king offered a candle and a bezant of-gold all from-the
deniers ma dame de Soiete. Dont l'on se merveilla
pence (of-)my lady of Sidon Whereof one himself marveled
mout quant li roys fist ce, car l'on ne l'avoit onques veu
much when the king did this for one not him-had ever seen
offrir que de ses deniers; mais il le fist par sa courtoisie.
offer but of his pence but he it did by his courtesy

How the Tartars Chose a Chief

XLIV

Joinville clothes forty freed knights of Champagne and asks the king to keep them; the king grants it. The king demands of Egypt the Christians' heads on the walls of Cairo, the renegade children, and remission of his debt. His envoys reach the Tartars' great king after a year's riding and learn how the Tartars rose from tribute to Prester John: a child's draw of arrows made king the wise man who had taught them, and he gave them laws.

467 Entre les chevaliers que mes sires Jehans de Valenciennes
Among the knights whom my lord John of Valenciennes
ramena, je en y trouvai bien quarante de la cort de
brought-back I thereof there found fully forty of the court of
Champaingne. Je lour fiz taillier cotes et hargaus de vert,
Champagne I them had cut tunics and cloaks of green
et les menai devant le roy, et li priai que il lour
and them led before the king and him prayed that he for-them

vousist tant faire que il demourassent avec li. Li roys
wished so-much to-do that they should-remain with him The king
oy que il demandoient, et il se tut.
heard what they asked and he himself was-silent
Et uns chevaliers de son consoil dist que je ne fesoie pas 468
And a knight of his council said that I not did at-all
bien quant je aportoie tiex nouvelles au roy, là où il
well when I brought such tidings to-the king there where it
avoit bien sept mille livrées d'outraige. Et je li dis que
had fully seven thousand librates of-excess And I to-him said that
par male avanture en peust-il parler; et que entre nous de
by ill chance thereof could-he speak and that among us of
Champaingne aviens bien perdu trente-cinq chevaliers, touz
Champagne we-had fully lost thirty-five knights all
baniere portans, de la cort de Champaingne; et je dis: «Li
banner bearing of the court of Champagne and I said The
roys ne fera pas bien, se il vous en croit, ou besoing que
king not will-do at-all well if he you thereof believes in-the need that
il a de chevaliers.» Après celle parole, je commensai mout
he has of knights After that word I began very
forment à plorer; et li roys me dist que je me teusse, et
strongly to weep and the king me said that I myself should-be-silent and
il lour donroit quant que je li avoie demandei. Li roys les
he them would-give what that I to-him had asked The king them
retint tout aussi comme je voz, et les mist en ma bataille.
retained all just as I wished and them put in my battalion
Li roys respondi aus messagiers d'Egipte que il ne feroit 469
The king answered to-the messengers of-Egypt that he not would-make
nulles treves à aus, se il ne li envoioient toutes les testes
any truces with them if they not to-him sent all the heads
des Crestiens qui pendoient entour les murs dou Kaire, dès
of-the Christians which hung around the walls of-the Cairo from

le tens que li cuens de Bar et li cuens de Monfort furent
the time that the count of Bar and the count of Montfort were
pris; et se il ne li envoioient encore touz les enfans qu'il
taken and if they not to-him sent further all the children that-they
avoient, qui avoient estei pris petit et estoient renoié; et se il
had who had been taken small and were renegade and if they
ne li quitoient les dous cens mille livres que il lour devoit
not to-him remitted the two hundred thousand pounds that he to-them owed
encore. Avec les messaiges aus amiraus d'Egypte, envoia li roys
still With the messengers of-the emirs of-Egypt sent the king
mon signour Jehan de Valenciennes, vaillant home et saige.
my lord John of Valenciennes valiant man and wise
470 A l'entrée de quaresme, s'atira li roys, atout ce que il
At the-entry of Lent himself-arrayed the king with that which he
ot de gent, pour aler fermer Sezaire, que li Sarrazin avoient
had of people for to-go to-fortify Caesarea which the Saracens had
abatue, qui estoit à douze lieues d'Acre par devers Jerusalem.
pulled-down which was at twelve leagues from-Acre by toward Jerusalem
Mes sires Raous de Soissons, qui estoit demourez en Acre
My lord Ralph of Soissons who was remained in Acre
malades, fu avec le roy fermer Cesaire. Je ne sai comment ce
sick was with the king to-fortify Caesarea I not know how this
fu, ne mais que par la volontei Dieu, que onques ne nous firent
was nor but that by the will (of-)God that ever not us did
li Sarrazin nul doumaige toute l'année. Tandis que li roys
the Saracens any harm all the-year While that the king
fermoit Cesaire, nous revindrent li messagier des Tartarins,
fortified Caesarea to-us came-back the messengers of-the Tartars
et les nouvelles que il nous aporterent vous dirons-nous.
and the tidings that they us brought to-you will-tell-we

Aussi comme je vous diz devant, tandis que li roys sejornoit 471
Just as I to-you said before while that the king sojourned
en Cypre, vindrent li messaige des Tartarins à li, et li
in Cyprus came the messengers of-the Tartars to him and him
firent entendant que il li aideroient à conquerre le royaume
made understand that they him would-help to conquer the realm
de Jerusalem sur les Sarrazins. Li roys lour renvoia ses
of Jerusalem from the Saracens The king to-them sent-back his
messaiges, et par ses messaiges que il lour envoia, lour
messengers and by his messengers whom he to-them sent to-them
envoia une chapelle que il lour fist faire d'escarlate (et
sent a chapel which he for-them had made of-scarlet and
pour aus atraire à nostre créance, il lour fist entaillier, en
for them to-draw to our belief he for-them had carved in
la chapelle, toute nostre créance, l'Annonciation de l'angre,
the chapel all our belief the-Annunciation of the-angel
la Nativitei, le bauptesme dont Diex fu baptiziez, et toute
the Nativity the baptism wherewith God was baptized and all
la Passion et l'Ascension et l'avenement dou Saint-Esperit);
the Passion and the-Ascension and the-coming of-the Holy-Spirit
calices, livres, et tout ce que il couvint à messe chanter, et
chalices books and all that which it behooved for mass to-sing and
dous freres Preescheours pour chanter les messes devant aus.
two friars Preachers for to-sing the masses before them
Li messagier le roy ariverent au port d'Anthioche; et 472
The messengers (of-)the king arrived at-the port of-Antioch and
dès Anthyoche jusques à lour grant roy trouverent bien
from Antioch until to their great king found fully
un an d'aleure, à chevauchier dix lieues le jour. Toute la
a year of-going in riding ten leagues the day All the

terre trouverent sougiette à aus, et plusours citez que il
land they-found subject to them and several cities that they
avoient destruites, et grans monciaus d'os de gens mors.
had destroyed and great heaps of-bones of people dead
473 Il enquistrent comme il estoient venu en tel auctoritei, par
They inquired how they were come into such authority by
quoy il avoient tant de gens mors et confondus; et la
which they had so-many of people killed and confounded and the
maniere fu teix, aussi comme il le raporterent au roy: que
manner was such just as they it reported to-the king that
il estoient venu et concréei d'une grant berrie de sablon, là
they were come and engendered from-a great plain of sand there
où il ne croissoit nul bien. Cette berrie commençoit à unes
where it not grew any good This plain began at some
très-grans roches merveillouses, qui sont en la fin dou monde
very-great rocks marvelous which are at the end of-the world
devers Orient, lesquiex roches nulz hons ne passa onques,
toward Orient which rocks any man not passed ever
si comme li Tartarin le tesmoignent; et disoient que léans
so as the Tartars it witness and they-said that in-there
estoit enclos li peuples Got et Margoth, qui doivent venir en
was enclosed the people Gog and Magog who ought come at
la fin dou monde, quant Antecriz venra pour tout destruire.
the end of-the world when Antichrist will-come for all to-destroy
474 En celle berrie estoit li peuples des Tartarins, et estoient
In that plain was the people of-the Tartars and they-were
sougiet à prestre Jehan et à l'empereour de Perce, cui terre
subject to Prester John and to the-emperor of Persia whose land
venoit après la seue, et à plousours autres roys mescréans,
came after the his and to several other kings misbelieving
à cui il rendoient tréu et servaige chascun an, pour
to whom they rendered tribute and servitude each year for

raison dou pasturaige de lour bestes; car il ne vivoient
reason of-the pasturage of their beasts for they not lived
d'autre chose. Cis prestres Jehans et li emperieres de Perce,
on-other thing This Prester John and the emperor of Persia
et li autre roy, tenoient en tel despit les Tartarins, que
and the other kings held in such despite the Tartars that
quant il lour aportoient lour rentes, il ne les vouloient
when they to-them brought their rents they not them wished
recevoir devant aus, ains lour tournoient les dos.
to-receive before them rather to-them turned the backs
Entre aus out un saige home qui cercha toutes les 475
Among them there-was a wise man who searched all the
berries, et parla aus saiges homes des berries et des
plains and spoke to-the wise men of-the plains and of-the
lieus, et lour moustra le servaige là où il estoient,
places and to-them showed the servitude there where they were
et lour pria à touz que il meissent consoil comment il
and them prayed to all that they should-put counsel how they
ississent dou servaige là où on les tenoit. Tant fist
might-come-out of-the servitude there where one them held So-much he-did
que il les assembla trestous ou chief de la berrie, endroit
that he them assembled all at-the end of the plain opposite
la terre prestre Jehan, et lour moustra ces choses; et il
the land (of-)Prester John and to-them showed these things and they
li respondirent que il devisast, et il feroient. Et il dist
to-him answered that he should-devise and they would-do And he said
ainsi, que il n'avoient pooir de esploitier se il n'avoient
thus that they not-had power to achieve if they not-had
un roy et un signour sur aus; et il lour enseigna la
a king and a lord over them and he them taught the
maniere comment il averoient roy, et il le creurent.
manner how they would-have king and they him believed

476 Et la maniere fu teix, que de cinquante-dous generacions
And the manner was such that of fifty-two generations
que il y avoit, chascune generacions li aportast une
that it there had each generation to-him should-bring an
saiete qui fussent seignies de lour nons; et par l'acort
arrow which should-be marked with their names and by the-accord
de tout le peuple, fu ainsi acordei que l'on meteroit ces
of all the people was so agreed that one would-put these
cinquante-dous devant un enfant de cinc ans; et celle que
fifty-two before a child of five years and that which
li enfes penroit premier, de celle generacion feroit l'on
the child would-take first of that generation would-make one
roy. Quant li enfes ot levée une des seetes, li saiges
king When the child had raised one of-the arrows the wise
hons fist traire ariere toutes les autres generacions; et fu
man had draw back all the other generations and was
establi en tel maniere, que la generacions dont l'on devoit
established in such manner that the generation whence one ought
faire roy, esliroient entre lour cinquante-dous des plus saiges
make king would-choose among them fifty-two of-the most wise
homes et des meillours que il averoient. Quant il furent
men and of-the best that they would-have When they were
esleu, chascuns y porta une saiete seignie de son non.
chosen each there brought an arrow marked with his name
477 Lors fu acordei que la saiete que li enfes leveroit, de celle
Then was agreed that the arrow that the child would-raise of that-one
feroit l'on roy. Et li enfes en leva une, d'icelui saige
would-make one king And the child thereof raised one of-that wise
home qui ainsi les avoit enseigniez; et li peuples en furent
man who thus them had taught and the people thereof were
si lié que chascuns en fist grant joie. Il les fist taire, et
so glad that each thereof made great joy He them had be-silent and

lour dist: «Signour, se vous voulez que je soie vostre roys,
to-them said Lords if you wish that I be your king
vous me jurerez par Celi qui a fait le ciel et la terre,
you me will-swear by Him who has made the sky and the earth
que vous tenrés mes commandemens.» Et il le jurerent.
that you will-hold my commands And they it swore
Li establissement que il lour donna, ce fu pour tenir le peuple 478
The ordinances that he them gave these were for to-hold the people
en paiz; et furent tel, que nus n'i ravist autrui chose,
in peace and were such that anyone not-there should-seize others' thing
ne que li uns ne ferist l'autre, se il ne vouloit le poing
nor that the one not should-strike the-other if he not wished the fist
perdre; ne que nulz n'eust compaingnie à autrui femme
to-lose nor that anyone not-should-have company with others' wife
ne à autrui fille, se il ne vouloit perdre le poing ou la vie.
nor with others' daughter if he not wished to-lose the fist or the life
Mout d'autres bons establissemens lour donna pour pais avoir.
Many of-other good ordinances to-them he-gave for peace to-have

The Tartars

XLV

Their chief leads them against Prester John and kills all found in arms, sparing the religious. A lost prince tells of a king on a golden throne who sends him home with George; his people are baptized, and with three hundred men he routs the emperor of Persia. Their great king shows the king's chapel-tent to other kings, and his letter bids the king send gold and silver yearly or be destroyed; the king repents having sent envoys.

479 Après ce que il les ot ordenez et aréez, il lour dist:
After this that he them had ordered and arrayed he to-them said
«Signour, li plus forz ennemis que nous aiens, c'est prestres
Lords the most strong enemy that we may-have this-is Prester
Jehans. Et je vous commant que vous soiés demain tuit
John And I you command that you be tomorrow all
appareillié pour li courre sus; et se il est ainsi que il nous
ready for him to-run upon and if it is so that he us
desconfise (dont Diex nous gart!), face chascuns le miex que
may-discomfit whence God us guard let-do each the best that
il porra. Et se nous le desconfisons, je commant que la
he will-be-able And if we him discomfit I command that the
chose dure trois jours et trois nuis, et que nulz ne soit
thing last three days and three nights and that anyone not be
si hardis que il mette main à nul gaaing, mais que à gens
so bold that he may-put hand to any gain but that to people
occirre; car après ce que nous averons eue victoire, je vous
killing for after this that we will-have had victory I to-you
departirai le gaing si bien et si loialment, que chascuns
will-divide the gain so well and so loyally that each
s'en tenra apaiez.» A ceste chose il s'acorderent tuit.
himself-thence will-hold satisfied To this thing they themselves-agreed all

L'endemain coururent sus lour ennemis, et ainsi comme Diex 480
The-next-day they-ran upon their enemies and just as God
vout, les desconfirent. Touz ceus que il trouverent en armes
willed them discomfited All those whom they found in arms
deffendables, occistrent touz; et ceus que il trouverent en
able-to-defend they-killed all and those whom they found in
abit de religion, les prestres et les autres religious, n'occistrent
habit of religion the priests and the other religious not-they-killed
pas. Li autre peuple de la terre prestre Jehan, qui ne furent
at-all The other people of the land (of-)Prester John who not were
pas en la bataille, se mistrent tuit en lour subjection.
at-all in the battle themselves put all in their subjection
Li uns des princes de l'un des peuples devant nommez fu 481
The one of-the princes of the-one of-the peoples before named was
bien perdus trois moys, que onques l'on n'en sot nouvelles;
well lost three months so-that ever one not-thereof knew tidings
et quant il revint, il n'ot ne fain ne soif; que il ne
and when he came-back he not-had neither hunger nor thirst for he not
cuidoit avoir demourei que un soir au plus. Les nouvelles
thought to-have remained but one evening at-the most The tidings
que il en raporta furent tiex, que il avoit montei à un trop
that he thereof reported were such that he had climbed to a very
haut tertre, et là-sus avoit trouvei grant nombre de gens,
high hill and there-above had found great number of people
les plus beles gens que il eust onques veues, les miex vestus,
the most fair people that he had ever seen the best clothed
les miex parés; et ou bout dou tertre vit seoir un roy plus
the best adorned and at-the end of-the hill he-saw sit a king more
bel des autres, miex vestu et miex parei, en un throne d'or.
fair than-the others better clothed and better adorned on a throne of-gold

482 A sa destre séoient six roy couronnei, bien parei à
At his right sat six kings crowned well adorned with
pierres preciouses, et à sa senestre autant. Près de li, à
stones precious and at his left as-many Near of him at
sa destre main, avoit une royne agenoillie, qui li disoit
his right hand there-was a queen kneeling who to-him said
et prioit que il pensast de son peuple. A sa senestre,
and prayed that he should-think of his people At his left
avoit agenoillié un mout bel home, qui avoit dous eles
there-was kneeling a very fair man who had two wings
resplendissans aussi comme li solaus; et entour le roy,
shining just as the sun and around the king
avoit grant foison de beles gens à eles.
there-was great plenty of fair people with wings

483 Li roys appela celi prince, et li dist: «Tu es venuz de
The king called that prince and to-him said Thou art come from
l'ost des Tartarins.» Et il respondi: «Sire, ce sui mon. —
the-host of-the Tartars And he answered Lord this am indeed
Tu en iras à ton roy, et li diras que tu m'as veu,
Thou thence wilt-go to thy king and to-him wilt-say that thou me-hast seen
qui sui Sires dou ciel et la terre; et li diras que il me
who am Lord of-the sky and the earth and to-him wilt-say that he me
rende graces de la victoire que je li ai donnée sus
should-render thanks for the victory that I to-him have given over
prestre Jehan et sur sa gent. Et li diras encore, de par
Prester John and over his people And to-him wilt-say further on behalf-of
moy, que je li doing poissance de mettre en sa subjection
me that I to-him give power to put in his subjection
toute la terre. — Sire, fist li princes, comment me croira-il?»
all the earth Lord said the prince how me will-believe-he

— «Tu li diras que il te croie, à tiex enseignes que 484
Thou to-him wilt-say that he thee should-believe by such tokens that
tu iras combatre à l'empereour de Perse atout trois cens
thou wilt-go to-fight with the-emperor of Persia with three hundred
homes sanz plus de ta gent; et pour ce que vostre grans
men without more of thy people and for this that your great
roys croit que je sui poissans de faire toutes choses, je te
king may-believe that I am mighty to do all things I thee
donrai victoire de desconfire l'empereour de Perse, qui se
will-give victory to discomfit the-emperor of Persia who himself
combatera à toy atout trois cens mille hommes et plus
will-fight with thee with three hundred thousand men and more
à armes. Avant que tu voises combatre à li, tu requerras
at arms Before that thou go to-fight with him thou wilt-ask
à vostre roy que il te doint les provaires et les gens de
of your king that he thee give the priests and the people of
religion que il a pris en la bataille; et ce que cil te
religion whom he has taken in the battle and that which these to-thee
tesmoingneront, tu croiras fermement et touz tes peuples.»
will-witness thou wilt-believe firmly and all thy peoples
— «Sire, fist-il, je ne m'en saurai aler se tu ne me faiz 485
Lord said-he I not myself-thence will-know go if thou not me makest
conduire.» Et li roys se tourna devers grant foison de
be-conducted And the king himself turned toward great plenty of
chevaliers, si bien armez que c'estoit merveille dou regarder; et
knights so well armed that this-was marvel of-the looking and
appela l'un, et dist: «Georges, vien çà.» Et cil i vint et
called the-one and said George come here And this-one there came and
s'agenoilla. Et li roys li dist: «Lieve sus, et me meinne cesti
himself-knelt And the king to-him said Rise up and me lead this-one
à sa herberge sauvement.» Et si fist-il en un point dou jour.
to his lodging safely And so did-he in one point of-the day

486 Si tost comme ses peuples le virent, il firent si grant joie,
So soon as his peoples him saw they made so great joy
et touz li os aussi, que nulz ne le pourroit raconter. Il
and all the host also that anyone not it could recount He
demanda les provaires au grant roy, et il les li donna; et
asked the priests of-the great king and he them to-him gave and
cis princes et touz ses peuples reçurent lour enseignemens si
this prince and all his peoples received their teachings so
debonnairement, que il furent tuit baptizié. Après ces choses,
graciously that they were all baptized After these things
il prist trois cenz homes à armes, et les fist confesser
he took three hundred men at arms and them had confess
et appareillier, et s'en ala combatre à l'empereour de
and make-ready and himself-thence went to-fight with the-emperor of
Perse, et le desconfist et chassa de son royaume; liquex
Persia and him discomfited and chased from his realm which
s'en vint fuyant jusques ou royaume de Jerusalem;
himself-thence came fleeing until into-the realm of Jerusalem
et ce fu cil emperieres qui desconfist nostre gent et prist
and this was that emperor who discomfited our people and took
le conte Gautier de Brienne, si comme vous orrez après.
the count Walter of Brienne so as you will-hear after
487 Li peuples à ce prince crestien estoit si grans, que li
The people of this prince Christian was so great that the
messagier le roy nous conterent que il avoient en lour ost
messengers (of-)the king us told that they had in their host
huit cens chapelles sus chers. La maniere de lour vivre estoit
eight hundred chapels on carts The manner of their living was
teix, car il ne mangeoient point de pain, et vivoient de char
such for they not ate at-all of bread and lived on meat
et de lait. La mieudre chars que il aient, c'est de cheval,
and on milk The best meat that they may-have this-is of horse

et la mettent gesir en souciz et sechier après, tant que il
and it put to-lie in brine and to-dry after so-much that they
la trenchent aussi comme pain noir. Li mieudres bevraiges
it cut just as bread black The best drink
que il aient et li plus forz, c'est de lait de jument
that they may-have and the most strong this-is of milk of mare
confit en herbes. L'on presenta au grant roy des Tartarins
steeped in herbs One presented to-the great king of-the Tartars
un cheval chargié de farine, qui estoit venus de trois mois
a horse loaded with flour which was come from three months
d'aleure loing; et il la donna aus messagiers le roy.
of-going far and he it gave to-the messengers (of-)the king
Il ont mout de peuples crestiens qui croient en la loy des 488
They have many of peoples Christian who believe in the law of-the
Griex, et cil dont nous avons parlei et d'autres. Ceus envoient
Greeks and those of-whom we have spoken and of-others Those they-send
sur les Sarrazins quant il veulent guerroier à aus; et les
upon the Saracens when they wish to-make-war with them and the
Sarrazins envoient sus les crestiens quant il ont afaire à aus.
Saracens they-send upon the Christians when they have business with them
Toutes manieres de femmes qui n'ont enfans vont en la bataille
All manners of women who not-have children go into the battle
avec aus; aussi bien donnent-il soudées aus femmes comme aus
with them as well give-they pay to-the women as to-the
homes, selonc ce que elles sont plus viguerouses. Et conterent
men according-to this that they are more vigorous And told
li messagier le roy que li soudaier et les soudaieres
the messengers (of-)the king that the soldiers and the soldier-women
manjuent ensemble es hostiex des riches homes à cui il
eat together in-the lodgings of-the rich men to whom they

estoient; et n'osoient li home touchier aus femmes en nulle
were and not-dared the men touch to-the women in any
maniere, pour la loy que lour premiers roys lour avoit donnée.
manner for the law that their first king them had given
489 Toutes manieres de chars qui meurent en lour ost, il
All manners of meats which die in their host they
manjuent toutes. Les femmes qui ont lour enfans les conroient,
eat all The women who have their children them dress
les gardent, et atournent la viande à ceus qui vont en la
them guard and prepare the food for those who go into the
bataille. Les chars crues il mettent entre lour selles et lour
battle The meats raw they put between their saddles and their
paniaus; quant li sans en est bien hors, si la manjuent toute
saddle-cloths when the blood thereof is well out so it they-eat all
crue. Ce que il ne peuent mangier jetent en un sac de cuir;
raw That which they not can eat they-cast into a sack of leather
et quant il ont fain, si oevrent le sac, et manguent touz
and when they have hunger so they-open the sack and eat all
jours la plus vieille devant. Dont je vi un Coremyn qui fu
days the most old first Whence I saw a Khorasmian who was
des gens l'empereour de Perse, qui nous gardoit en la prison,
of-the people (of-)the-emperor of Persia who us guarded in the prison
que quant il ouvroit son sac nous nous bouchiens; que nous
that when he opened his sack we ourselves stopped-our-noses for we
ne pouiens durer, pour la puneisie qui issoit dou sac.
not could last for the stench which came-out from-the sack
490 Or revenons à nostre matiere et disons ainsi, que quant
Now let-us-return to our matter and let-us-say thus that when
li grans roys des Tartarins ot receu les messaiges et les
the great king of-the Tartars had received the messengers and the
presens, il envoia querre par asseurement plusours roys qui
presents he sent to-seek by safe-conduct several kings who

n'estoient pas encore venu à sa merci; et lour fist tendre
not-were at-all yet come to his mercy and to-them had pitched
la chapelle, et lour dist en tel maniere: «Signour, li
the chapel and to-them said in such manner Lords the
roys de France est venus en nostre merci et sugestion, et
king of France is come into our mercy and subjection and
vez-ci le tréu que il nous envoie; et se vous ne venez en
see-here the tribute that he us sends and if you not come into
nostre merci, nous l'envoierons querre pour vous confondre.»
our mercy we him-will-send to-seek for you to-confound
Assés en y ot de ceus qui, pour la poour dou roy
Plenty thereof there had of those who for the fear of-the king
de France, se mistrent en la merci de celi roy.
of France themselves put in the mercy of that king
Avec les messaiges le roy vindrent li lour; et aporterent 491
With the messengers (of-)the king came the theirs and brought
lettres de lour grant roy au roy de France, qui disoient
letters from their great king to-the king of France which said
ainsi: «Bone chose est de pais; quar en terre de pais manguent
thus Good thing is of peace for in land of peace eat
cil qui vont à quatre piez, l'erbe pesiblement; cil qui vont à
those who go on four feet the-grass peaceably those who go on
dous, labourent la terre (dont li bien viennent) paisiblement.
two till the earth whence the goods come peaceably
«Et ceste chose te mandons-nous pour toy avisier: car tu ne 492
And this thing thee send-we for thee to-advise for thou not
peus avoir pais se tu ne l'as à nous. Car prestres Jehans
canst have peace if thou not it-hast with us For Prester John
se leva encontre nous, et teix roys et teix (et mout
himself rose against us and such king and such and many
en nommoient); et touz les avons mis à l'espée. Si te
thereof they-named and all them we-have put to the-sword So thee

mandons que tu nous envoies tant de ton or et de ton
we-send-word that thou us send so-much of thy gold and of thy
argent chascun an, que tu nous retieignes à amis; et se
silver each year that thou us retain as friends and if
tu ne le fais, nous destruirons toy et ta gent aussi comme
thou not it do we will-destroy thee and thy people just as
nous avons fait ceus que nous avons devant nommez.» Et
we have done those whom we have before named And
sachiez que li rois se repenti fort quant il y envoia.
know that the king himself repented strongly when he there sent

The Knights from Norway, and the Cumans

XLVI

Alenard of Senaingan, who sailed from Norway around Spain, tells of summer nights with no darkness. Narjot of Toucy tells how the emperor of Constantinople allied with the Cumans by mingling their blood, and of a Cuman knight buried sitting with a living horse and squire. Asked what he will take to stay a year, Joinville asks only that the king not be angry at his requests, and the king laughs. Joinville tells how he ordered his household.

493 Or revenons à nostre matiere et disons ainsi, que tandis
Now let-us-return to our matter and let-us-say thus that while
que li roys fermoit Cezaire, vint en l'ost mes sires Alenars
that the king fortified Caesarea came into the-host my lord Alenard
de Senaingan, qui nous conta que il avoit fait sa nef ou
of Senaingan who us told that he had made his ship in-the
réaume de Noroe, qui est en la fin dou monde devers
realm of Norway which is at the end of-the world toward
Occident; et au venir que il fist vers le roy, environna
Occident and at-the coming that he made toward the king he-went-around

toute Espaingne, et le couvint passer par les destroiz de
all Spain and him behooved to-pass by the straits of
Marroch. En grant peril passa avant qu'il venist à nous. Li
Morocco In great peril he-passed before that-he came to us The
roys le retint, li disiesme de chevaliers. Et nous conta
king him retained himself tenth of knights And us he-told
que en la terre de Noroe que les nuiz estoient si courtes
that in the land of Norway that the nights were so short
en l'estei, que il n'estoit nulle nuis que l'on ne veist la
in the-summer that it not-was any night that one not saw the
clartei dou jour à l'anuitier et la clartei de l'ajournée.
brightness of-the day at the-nightfall and the brightness of the-dawning
Il se prist, il et sa gent, à chacier aus lyons, et 494
He himself took he and his people to hunt at-the lions and
plusours en pristrent mout perillousement; car il aloient
several thereof took very perilously for they went
traire aus lyons en ferant des esperons tant comme il
to-shoot at-the lions in striking with-the spurs as-much as they
pooient. Et quant il avoient trait, li lyons mouvoit à aus;
could And when they had shot the lion moved at them
et maintenant les eussent attains et devorez, se ne fust ce
and at-once them would-have reached and devoured if not were this
que il lassoient cheoir aucune piesce de drap mauvais; et li
that they let fall some piece of cloth bad and the
lyons s'arestoit desus, et dessiroit le drap et devoroit; que
lion himself-stopped upon-it and tore the cloth and devoured for
il cuidoit tenir un home. Tandis que il dessiroit ce drap,
he thought to-hold a man While that he tore this cloth
et li autres raloit traire à li; et li lyons lessoit le drap
and the other went-again to-shoot at him and the lion left the cloth
et li aloit courre sus; et si tost comme cil lessoit
and at-him went to-run upon and so soon as this-one let

cheoir une piesce de drap, li lyons rentendoit au drap.
fall a piece of cloth the lion attended-again to-the cloth
Et en ce faisant, il occioient les lyons de lour saietes.
And in this doing they killed the lions with their arrows
495 Tandis que li roys fermoit Cezaire, vint à li mes sires
While that the king fortified Caesarea came to him my lord
Nargoes de Toci. Et disoit li roys que il estoit ses
Narjot of Toucy And said the king that he was his
cousins, car il estoit descendus d'une des serours le
cousin for he was descended from-one of-the sisters (of-)the
roy Phelippe, que li emperieres meismes ot à femme.
king Philip whom the emperor himself had to wife
Li roys le retint, li disiesme de chevaliers, un an; et
The king him retained himself tenth of knights a year and
lors s'en parti, si s'en rala en Constantinnoble,
then himself-thence departed so himself-thence went-back to Constantinople
dont il estoit venus. Il conta au roy que li emperieres
whence he was come He told to-the king that the emperor
de Constantinnoble, il et li autre riche home qui estoient
of Constantinople he and the other rich men who were
en Constantinnoble lors, s'estoient alié à un peuple que
in Constantinople then themselves-were allied to a people which
l'on appeloit Commains, pour ce que il eussent lour aide
one called Cumans for this that they might-have their help
encontre Vatache, qui lors estoit emperieres des Griex.
against Vatatzes who then was emperor of-the Greeks
496 Et pour ce que li uns aidast l'autre de foy, couvint que
And for this that the one should-aid the-other in faith it-behooved that
li emperieres et li autre riche home qui estoient avec li,
the emperor and the other rich men who were with him
se seingnissient et meissent de lour sanc en un grant
themselves should-bleed and should-put of their blood into a great

hanap d'argent. Et li roys des Commains et li autre
goblet of-silver And the king of-the Cumans and the other
riche home qui estoient avec li, refirent ainsi, et mellerent
rich men who were with him did-again so and mingled
lour sanc avec le sang de nostre gent, et tremperent en
their blood with the blood of our people and steeped in
vin et en yaue, et en burent, et nostre gent aussi; et
wine and in water and thereof drank and our people also and
lors si distrent que il estoient frere de sanc. Encore firent
then so said that they were brothers of blood Further they-had
passer un chien entre nos gens et la lour, et descoperent
pass a dog between our people and the theirs and cut-up
le chien de lour espées, et nostre gent aussi; et distrent
the dog with their swords and our people also and said
que ainsi fussent-il decopei se il failloient li uns à l'autre.
that so should-be-they cut-up if they failed the one to the-other
Encore nous conta une grant merveille, qu'il vit tandis que il 497
Further us he-told a great marvel that-he saw while that he
estoit en lour ost: que uns riches chevaliers estoit mors, et li
was in their host that a rich knight was dead and to-him
avoit l'on fait une grant fosse et large en terre, et l'avoit l'on
had one made a great ditch and wide in ground and him-had one
assis mout noblement et parei en une chaere; et li mist l'on
seated very nobly and adorned in a chair and to-him put one
avec li le meillour cheval que il eust et le meillour sergent,
with him the best horse that he had and the best sergeant
tout vif. Li serjans, avant que il fust mis en la fosse avec son
all alive The sergeant before that he was put in the ditch with his
signour, il print congié au roy des Commains et aus autres
lord he took leave of-the king of-the Cumans and of-the other
riches signours; et au penre congié que il fesoit à aus, il li
rich lords and at-the taking leave that he made of them they to-him

metoient en escharpe grant foison d'or et d'argent, et li
put in scrip great plenty of-gold and of-silver and to-him
disoient: «Quant je venrai en l'autre siecle, si me rendras
said When I will-come into the-other world so me thou-wilt-render
ce que je te bail.» Et il disoit: «Si ferai-je bien volentiers.»
that which I thee give And he said So will-do-I very willingly
498 Li grans roys des Commains li bailla unes lettres qui
The great king of-the Cumans to-him gave some letters which
aloient à lour premier roi, que il li mandoit que cil preudom
went to their first king that he to-him sent-word that this worthy-man
avoit mout bien vescu et que il l'avoit mout bien servi, et
had very well lived and that he him-had very well served and
que il li guerredonnast son servise. Quant ce fu fait, il le
that he him should-reward his service When this was done they him
mistrent en la fosse avec son signour et avec le cheval tout
put in the ditch with his lord and with the horse all
vif; et puis lancierent sus le pertuis de la fosse planches
alive and then hurled upon the opening of the ditch planks
bien chevillies, et touz li os courut à pierres et à terre;
well pegged and all the host ran to stones and to earth
et avant que il dormissent, orent-il fait, en remembrance de
and before that they slept had-they made in remembrance of
ceus que il avoient enterrei, une grant montaingne sur aus.
those whom they had buried a great mountain over them
499 Tandis que li roys fermoit Cezaire, j'alai en sa heberge pour
While that the king fortified Caesarea I-went to his lodging for
le veoir. Maintenant que il me vit entrer en sa chambre,
him to-see As-soon as he me saw enter into his chamber
là où il parloit au legat, il se leva et me trait
there where he spoke to-the legate he himself rose and me drew
d'une part, et me dist: «Vous savez, fist li roys, que je ne
to-one side and me said You know said the king that I not

vous reting que jusques à Pasques; si vous pri que vous
you retained but until to Easter so you I-pray that you
me dites que je vous donrai pour estre avecques moy de
me tell what I you will-give for to-be with me from
Pasques en un an.» Et je li dis que je ne vouloie que
Easter in a year And I to-him said that I not wished that
il me donnast plus de ses deniers que ce que il m'avoit
he me should-give more of his pence than this that he me-had
donnei; mais je vouloie faire un autre marchié à li.
given but I wished to-make an other bargain with him
«Pour ce, fis-je, que vous vous courrouciés quant l'on 500
For this said-I that you yourself anger when one
vous requiert aucune chose, si vueil-je que vous m'aiés
you asks any thing so wish-I that you me-may-have
couvenant, que se je vous requier aucune chose toute ceste
covenant that if I you ask any thing all this
année, que vous ne vous courrouciés pas; et se vous me
year that you not yourself anger at-all and if you me
refusés, je ne me courroucerai pas.» Quant il oy ce, si
refuse I not myself will-anger at-all When he heard this so
commença à rire mout clerement, et me dist que il me
he-began to laugh very clearly and me said that he me
retenoit par tel couvenant; et me prist par la main, et
retained by such covenant and me took by the hand and
me mena par devers le legat et vers son consoil, et lour
me led by toward the legate and toward his council and to-them
recorda le marchié que nous aviens fait; et en furent mout
recounted the bargain that we had made and thereof they-were very
lié, pour ce que je estoie li plus riches qui fust en l'ost.
glad for this that I was the most rich who was in the-host

501 Ci après vous dirai comment je ordenai et atirai mon
Here after to-you I-will-tell how I ordered and arranged my
afaire en quatre ans que je y demourai, puis que li frere
affair in four years that I there remained since that the brothers
le roy en furent venu. Je avoie dous chapelains avec
(of-)the king thence were come I had two chaplains with
moy, qui me disoient mes hores; li uns me chantoit ma
me who me said my hours the one me sang my
messe si tost comme l'aube dou jour apparoit, et li autres
mass so soon as the-dawn of-the day appeared and the other
atendoit tant que mi chevalier et li chevalier de ma bataille
waited until that my knights and the knights of my battalion
estoient levei. Quant je avoie oy ma messe, je m'en aloie
were risen When I had heard my mass I myself-thence went
avec le roy. Quant li roys vouloit chevauchier, je li fesoie
with the king When the king wished to-ride I him made
compaingnie. Aucune foiz estoit que li messaige venoient
company Some time it-was that the messengers came
à li, par quoy il nous couvenoit besoignier à la matinée.
to him by which it us behooved to-work in the morning
502 Mes lis estoit fais en mon paveillon en tel maniere, que
My bed was made in my pavilion in such manner that
nus ne pooit entrer ens, que il ne me veist gesir en
anyone not could enter within that he not me should-see lie in
mon lit; et ce fesoie-je pour oster toutes mescréances de
my bed and this did-I for to-remove all suspicions of
femmes. Quant ce vint contre la saint-Remy, je fesoie acheter
women When this came toward the Saint-Remy I had bought
ma porcherie de pors et ma bergerie de mes chastris, et
my piggery of pigs and my sheepfold of my wethers and
farine et vin pour la garnison de l'ostel tout yver; et
flour and wine for the provision of the-household all winter and

ce fesoie-je pour ce que les danrées enchierissent en yver,
this did-I for this that the wares grow-dear in winter
pour la mer qui est plus felonnesce en yver que en estei.
for the sea which is more cruel in winter than in summer
Et achetoie bien cent tonniaus de vin, et fesoie touz 503
And I-bought fully a-hundred casks of wine and had all
jours boire le meillour avant; et fesoie tremprer le vin
days drunk the best first and had tempered the wine
aus vallez d'yaue, et ou vin des escuiers moins d'yaue.
of-the varlets with-water and in-the wine of-the squires less of-water
A ma table, servoit l'on, devant mes chevaliers, d'une grant
At my table served one before my knights with-a great
phiole de vin et d'une grant phiole d'yaue; si le temproient
phial of wine and with-a great phial of-water so it they-tempered
si comme il vouloient.
so as they wished
Li roys m'avoit baillié en ma bataille cinquante chevaliers: 504
The king me-had given in my battalion fifty knights
toutes les foiz que je mangoie, je avoie dix chevaliers à ma
all the times that I ate I had ten knights at my
table avec les miens dix; et mangoient li uns devant l'autre,
table with the mine ten and they-ate the one before the-other
selonc la coustume dou païs, et séoient sur nates à terre.
according-to the custom of-the country and sat on mats on ground
Toutes les fois que l'on crioit aus armes, je y envoioie
All the times that one cried to-the arms I there sent
cinquante-quatre chevaliers que on appeloit diseniers, pour
fifty-four knights whom one called captains-of-ten for
ce que il estoient lour disiesmes. Toutes les fois que nous
this that they were their tenths All the times that we
chevauchiens armei, tuit li cinquante chevalier manjoient en
rode armed all the fifty knights ate in

mon ostel au revenir. Toutes les festes annex, je semonnoie
my lodging at-the returning All the feasts yearly I invited
touz les riches homes de l'ost; dont il couvenoit que li
all the rich men of the-host whereof it behooved that the
roys empruntast aucune foiz de ceus que j'avoie semons.
king borrowed some time from those whom I-had invited

Judgments at Caesarea

XLVII

A knight caught in a brothel chooses to lose his horse and arms rather than be led through the camp by a harlot; the king refuses Joinville the horse. Hospitallers who struck Joinville's knights eat on their mantles until Joinville sits down with them. The king's sergeant the Glutton, who laid hands on a knight, kneels barefoot and offers his sword. Brother Hugh of Jouy, marshal of the Temple, who made a treaty with Damascus without the king, sees it undone and is banished.

505 Ci après, orrez les justices et les jugemens que je vis
Here after you-will-hear the justices and the judgments that I saw
faire à Cezaire, tandis que li roys y sejournoit. Tout premier
make at Caesarea while that the king there sojourned All first
vous dirons d'un chevalier qui fu pris ou bordel, auquel l'on
to-you we-will-tell of-a knight who was taken in-the brothel to-whom one
parti un jeu, selonc les usaiges dou païs. Li jeus partis fut
offered a choice according-to the usages of-the country The choice offered was
teix: ou que la ribaude le menroit par l'ost, en chemise,
such either that the harlot him would-lead through the-host in shirt
une corde liée aus genetaires; ou il perderoit son cheval et
a rope bound to-the privy-parts or he would-lose his horse and

s'armeure, et le chaceroit l'on de l'ost. Li chevaliers lessa
his-armor and him would-chase one from the-host The knight left
son cheval au roy et s'armeure, et s'en ala de l'ost.
his horse to-the king and his-armor and himself-thence went from the-host
Je alai prier au roy que il me donnast le cheval pour un 506
I went to-pray to-the king that he me should-give the horse for a
povre gentil home qui estoit en l'ost. Et li roys me respondi
poor gentle man who was in the-host And the king me answered
que ceste priere n'estoit pas raisonnable, que li chevaus valoit
that this prayer not-was at-all reasonable for the horse was-worth
encore quatre-vins livres. Et je li respondi: «Comment
still fourscore pounds And I to-him answered How
m'avés-vous les couvenances rompues, quant vous vous
me-have-you the covenants broken when you yourself
courrouciés de ce que vous ai requis?» Et il me dist tout en
anger at this that you I-have asked And he me said all in
riant: «Dites quant que vous vourrez, je ne me courouce pas.»
laughing Say how-much that you will-wish I not myself anger at-all
Et toute voies n'oi-je pas le cheval pour le povre gentil home.
And all the-same not-had-I at-all the horse for the poor gentle man
La seconde justice fu teix, que li chevalier de nostre bataille 507
The second justice was such that the knights of our battalion
chassoient une beste sauvaige que l'on appelle gazel, qui est
hunted a beast wild which one calls gazelle which is
aussi comme uns chevreus. Li frere de l'Ospital s'embatirent
just as a roebuck The brothers of the-Hospital themselves-thrust
sur aus, et bouterent et chacierent nos chevaliers. Et je
upon them and pushed and chased our knights And I
me pleinz au maistre de l'Ospital; et li maistres de
myself complained to-the master of the-Hospital and the master of
l'Ospital me respondi que il m'en feroit le droit à l'usaige
the-Hospital me answered that he me-thereof would-do the right by the-usage

de la Terre sainte, qui estoit teix, que il feroit les freres
of the Land holy which was such that he would-make the brothers
qui l'outraige avoient faite, mangier sur lour mantiaus, tant
who the-outrage had done eat on their mantles until
que cil les en leveroient à cui l'outraige avoit estei faite.
that those them thence would-raise to whom the-outrage had been done
508 Li maistres lour en tint bien couvenant; et quant nous
The master to-them thereof held well covenant and when we
veismes que il orent mangié une piesce sur lour mantiaus,
saw that they had eaten a while on their mantles
je alai au maistre et le trouvai manjant, et li priai
I went to-the master and him found eating and him prayed
que il feist lever les freres qui manjoient sur lour
that he should-have rise the brothers who ate on their
mantiaus devant li; et li chevalier aussi ausquiex l'outraige
mantles before him and the knights also to-whom the-outrage
avoit estei faite, l'en prierent. Et il me respondi que
had been done him-thereof prayed And he me answered that
il n'en feroit nient; car il ne vouloit pas que li frere
he not-thereof would-do anything for he not wished at-all that the brothers
feissent vileinnie à ceus qui venoient en pelerinaige en la
should-do villainy to those who came in pilgrimage into the
Terre sainte. Quant je oy ce, je m'assis avec les freres et
Land holy When I heard this I myself-sat with the brothers and
commençai à mangier avec aus; et li dis que je ne me
began to eat with them and to-him said that I not myself
leveroie tant que li frere se leveroient. Et me dist
would-rise so-long that the brothers themselves would-rise And me he-said
que c'estoit force, et m'otroia ma requeste; et me fist, moy
that this-was force and me-granted my request and me had me

et mes chevaliers qui estoient avec moy, mangier avec li;
and my knights who were with me eat with him
et li frere alerent mangier avec les autres à haute table.
and the brothers went to-eat with the others at high table
Li tiers jugemens que je vi rendre à Cezaire si fu teix, que 509
The third judgment that I saw render at Caesarea so was such that
uns serjans le roy, qui avoit à non le Goulu, mist main à
a sergeant (of-)the king who had to name the Glutton put hand on
un chevalier de ma bataille. Je m'en alai pleindre au roy.
a knight of my battalion I myself-thence went to-complain to-the king
Li roys me dist que je m'en pooie bien souffrir, ce li
The king me said that I myself-thence could well forbear this to-him
sembloit; que il ne l'avoit fait que bouter. Et je li dis que
seemed that he not it-had done but push And I to-him said that
je ne m'en soufferroie jà; et se il ne m'en fesoit droit, je
I not myself-thence would-forbear ever and if he not me-thereof did right I
lairoie son servise, puisque sui serjant boutoient les chevaliers.
would-leave his service since his sergeants pushed the knights
Il me fist faire droit, et li drois fu teix, selonc les usaiges 510
He me had done right and the right was such according-to the usages
dou païs, que li serjans vint en ma herberge deschaus,
of-the country that the sergeant came to my lodging unshod
en chemise et en braies, sanz pluz, une espée toute nue
in shirt and in breeches without more a sword all naked
en sa main, et s'agenoilla devant le chevalier, print l'espée
in his hand and himself-knelt before the knight took the-sword
par la pointe et tendi le plommel au chevalier, et li
by the point and held-out the pommel to-the knight and to-him
dist: «Sire, je vous ament ce que je mis main à vous;
said Lord I to-you make-amends this that I put hand on you
et vous ai aportée ceste espée pour ce que vous me
and to-you I-have brought this sword for this that you me

copez le poing, se il vous plait.» Et je priai au chevalier
may-cut the fist if it you pleases And I prayed to-the knight
que il li pardonnast son maltalent; et si fist-il.
that he to-him should-pardon his ill-will and so did-he

511 La quarte amende fu teix, que freres Hugues de Joy, qui estoit
The fourth amends was such that brother Hugh of Jouy who was
marechaus dou Temple, fu envoiez au soudanc de Damas de
marshal of-the Temple was sent to-the sultan of Damascus on
par le maistre dou Temple, pour pourchacier commant li
behalf-of the master of-the Temple for to-negotiate how the
soudans de Damas s'acordast que une grant terre que li
sultan of Damascus himself-should-agree that a great land which the
Temples soloit tenir, que li soudans vousist que li Temples
Temple was-wont to-hold that the sultan would-wish that the Temple
en eust la moitié et il l'autre. Ces couvenances furent
thereof should-have the half and he the-other These covenants were
faites en tel maniere, se li roys s'i acordoit. Et amena
made in such manner if the king himself-there agreed And brought
freres Hugues un amiral de par le soudanc de Damas, et
brother Hugh an emir on behalf-of the sultan of Damascus and
apporta les couvenances en escrit que on appeloit montefoy.
brought the covenants in writing which one called montefoy

512 Li maistres dist ces choses au roy; dont li roys fu forment
The master told these things to-the king whereof the king was greatly
effraez, et li dist que mout estoit hardis quant il avoit tenu
alarmed and to-him said that very was-he bold when he had held
nulles couvenances ne paroles au soudanc, sanz parler à li;
any covenants or words with-the sultan without speaking to him
et vouloit li roys que il li fust adrecié. Et li adrecemens
and wished the king that it to-him should-be redressed And the redress
fu teix, que li roys fist lever les pans de trois de ses paveillons,
was such that the king had raised the flaps of three of his pavilions

et là fu touz li communs de l'ost qui venir y vout; et
and there was all the commons of the-host who to-come there wished and
là vint li maistres dou Temple et touz li couvenz, touz
there came the master of-the Temple and all the convent all
deschaus, parmi l'ost, pour ce que lour heberge estoit dehors
unshod through the-host for this that their lodging was outside
l'ost. Li roys fist asseoir le maistre dou Temple devant li et
the-host The king had sit the master of-the Temple before him and
le messaige au soudanc, et dist li roys au maistre tout haut:
the messenger of-the sultan and said the king to-the master all loud
«Maistres, vous direz au messaige le soudanc que ce vous 513
Master you will-say to-the messenger (of-)the sultan that this you
poise que vous avez fait nulles treves à li sanz parler à
weighs that you have made any truces with him without speaking to
moy; et pour ce que vous n'en aviés parlei à moy; vous
me and for this that you not-thereof had spoken to me you
le quitiés de quanque il vous ot couvent et li rendés
him acquit of whatever he you had covenanted and to-him render
toutes ses couvenances.» Li maistres prist les couvenances et
all his covenants The master took the covenants and
les bailla à l'amiral; et lors dist li maistres: «Je vous rent
them gave to the-emir and then said the master I to-you render
les couvenances que j'ay mal faites; dont ce poise moy.» Et
the covenants that I-have ill made whereof this weighs-on me And
lors dist li roys au maistre que il se levast et que il
then said the king to-the master that he himself should-raise and that he
feist lever touz ses freres; et si fist-il. «Or, vous agenoilliés,
should-have rise all his brothers and so did-he Now yourself kneel
et m'amendés ce que vous y estes alei contre ma volontei.»
and me-amend this that you there are gone against my will

514 Li maistres s'agenoilla et tendi le chief de son mantel au
The master himself-knelt and held-out the end of his mantle to-the
roy, et abandonna au roy quanque il avoient, à penre
king and gave-over to-the king whatever they had to take
pour s'amende tel comme il la vourroit devisier: «Et je di,
for his-amends such as he it would-wish to-devise And I say
fist li roys, tout premier, que freres Hugues, qui a faites les
said the king all first that brother Hugh who has made the
couvenances, soit bannis de tout le royaume de Jerusalem.»
covenants be banished from all the realm of Jerusalem
Li maistres, qui estoit comperes le roy dou conte
The master who was co-godfather (of-)the king of-the count
d'Alençon, qui fu nez à Chastel-Pelerin, ne onques la royne,
of-Alençon who was born at Château-Pèlerin nor ever the queen
ne autre, ne porent aidier frere Hue, que il ne li couvenist
nor other not could help brother Hugh that it not to-him behooved
vuidier la Terre sainte et dou royaume de Jerusalem.
to-quit the Land holy and from-the realm of Jerusalem

Jaffa Fortified

XLVIII

By the truce the king is to be at Jaffa and the emirs at Gaza to hand over Jerusalem, but four thousand Damascene Turks hold Gaza and the emirs dare not come; they send the Christians' heads from Cairo and the renegade children. The count of Jaffa decks his battlements with five hundred shields, and the king walls a new town, carrying the hod. The young prince of Antioch asks the king to press his mother, his guardian, for men and money, and quarters the arms of France.

Tandis que li roys fermoit la citei de Cezaire, revindrent li 515
While that the king fortified the city of Caesarea came-back the
messaige d'Egypte à li, et li aporterent la treve, tout ainsi
messengers of-Egypt to him and to-him brought the truce all just
comme il est devant dit que li roys l'avoit devisie. Et furent
as it is before said that the king it-had devised And were
les couvenances tiex dou roys et d'aus, que li roys dut aler, à
the covenants such of-the king and of-them that the king ought go on
une journée qui fu nommée, à Japhe; et à celle journée que
a day which was named to Jaffa and on that day that
li roys dut aler à Japhe, li amiral d'Egypte devoient estre à
the king ought go to Jaffa the emirs of-Egypt ought be at
Gadre par lour sairemens, pour delivrer au roi le royaume de
Gaza by their oaths for to-deliver to-the king the realm of
Jerusalem. La trive, tel comme li messaige l'avoient aportée, jura
Jerusalem The truce such as the messengers it-had brought swore
li roys et li riche home de l'ost, et que par nos sairemens
the king and the rich men of the-host and that by our oaths
nous lour deviens aidier encontre le soudanc de Damas.
we them ought help against the sultan of Damascus

516 Quant li soudans de Damas sot que nous nous estiens alié
When the sultan of Damascus knew that we ourselves were allied
à ceus d'Egypte, il envoia bien quatre mille Turs bien atiriés
to those of-Egypt he sent fully four thousand Turks well arrayed
à Gadres, là où cil d'Egypte devoient venir, pour ce que
to Gaza there where those of-Egypt ought come for this that
il sot bien que se il pooient venir jusques à nous, que il
he knew well that if they could come until to us that he
y pourroit bien perdre. Toutevoiz ne lessa pas li roys que
there could well lose All-the-same not left at-all the king that
il ne se meust pour aler à Jaffe. Quant li cuens de Jaffe
he not himself should-move for to-go to Jaffa When the count of Jaffa
vit que li roys venoit, il atira son chastel en tel maniere que
saw that the king came he arrayed his castle in such manner that
ce sembloit bien estre ville deffendable; car à chascun des
this seemed well to-be town defensible for at each of-the
carniaus (dont il y avoit bien cinq cens), avoit une targe
crenels of-which it there had fully five hundred there-was a targe
de ses armes et un panoncel; laquex chose fu bele à regarder,
of his arms and a pennoncel which thing was fair to look-at
car ses armes estoient d'or à une croiz de gueles patée.
for his arms were of-gold with a cross of gules patée
517 Nous nous lojames entour le chastel, aus chans, et
We ourselves lodged around the castle in-the fields and
environnames le chastel, qui siet sur la mer, dès l'une mer
surrounded the castle which sits on the sea from the-one sea
jusques à l'autre. Maintenant se prist li roys à fermer
until to the-other At-once himself took the king to fortify
un nuef bourc tout entour le vieil chastiau, dès l'une mer
a new borough all around the old castle from the-one sea

jusques à l'autre. Le roy meismes y vis-je mainte foiz
until to the-other The king himself there saw-I many time
porter la hote aus fossés, pour avoir le pardon.
carry the hod to-the ditches for to-have the pardon
Li amiral d'Egypte nous faillirent des couvenances que il 518
The emirs of-Egypt us failed of-the covenants that they
nous avoient promises; car il n'oserent venir à Gadres pour
us had promised for they not-dared come to Gaza for
les gens au soudanc de Damas qui y estoient. Toutevoiz
the people of-the sultan of Damascus who there were All-the-same
nous tindrent-il couvenant, en tant que il envoierent au
us held-they covenant in so-much that they sent to-the
roy toutes les testes aus crestiens que il avoient pendues
king all the heads of-the Christians that they had hung
aus murs dou chastel de Kayre, dès que li cuens de Bar et
on-the walls of-the castle of Cairo since that the count of Bar and
li cuens de Montfort furent pris; lesquiex li roys fist mettre
the count of Montfort were taken which the king had put
en terre benoite. Et li envoierent aussi les enfans qui
in ground blessed And to-him they-sent also the children who
avoient estei pris quant li roys fu pris; laquel chose il firent
had been taken when the king was taken which thing they did
envis, car il s'estoient jà renoié. Et avec ces choses,
unwillingly for they themselves-were already renegade And with these things
envoierent au roy un oliphant que li roys envoia en France.
they-sent to-the king an elephant which the king sent to France
Tandis que nous sejourniens à Japhe, uns amiraus qui estoit 519
While that we sojourned at Jaffa an emir who was
de la partie au soudanc de Damas, vint faucillier blez
of the party of-the sultan of Damascus came to-reap grains
à un kasel à trois lieues de l'ost. Il fu acordei que nous
at a village at three leagues from the-host It was agreed that we

li courriens sus. Quant il nous senti venans, il toucha
on-him should-run upon When he us felt coming he took
en fuie. Endementres que il s'en fuioit, uns joennes
to flight While that he himself-thence fled a young
vallez gentis hom se mist à li chacier, et porta dous
varlet gentle man himself put to him chase and bore two
de ses chevaliers à terre sans sa lance brisier; et l'amiral
of his knights to ground without his lance breaking and the-emir
feri en tel maniere que il li brisa le glaive ou cors.
struck in such manner that he to-him broke the lance in-the body
520 Li messaige aus amiraus d'Egypte prierent le roy que il lour
The messengers of-the emirs of-Egypt prayed the king that he them
donnast une journée par quoy il peussent venir vers le roy,
should-give a day by which they could come toward the king
et il y venroient sanz faute. Li roys ot consoil que il ne le
and they there would-come without fail The king had counsel that he not it
refuseroit pas, et lour donna journée; et il li orent couvent,
would-refuse at-all and them gave day and they to-him had covenant
par lour sairement, que il à celle journée seroient à Gadres.
by their oath that they on that day would-be at Gaza
521 Tandis que nous atendiens celle journée que li roys ot donnée
While that we awaited that day that the king had given
aus amiraus d'Egypte, li cuens d'Eu, qui estoit escuyers, vint
to-the emirs of-Egypt the count of-Eu who was squire came
en l'ost, et amena avec li mon signour Ernoul de Guinnes,
into the-host and brought with him my lord Arnold of Guines
le bon chevalier, et ses dous freres, li disiesme. Il
the good knight and his two brothers himself tenth He
demoura ou servise le roy, et li roys le fist chevalier.
remained in-the service (of-)the king and the king him made knight

En ce point, revint li princes d'Anthyoche en l'ost, et la 522
At this point came-back the prince of-Antioch into the-host and the
princesse sa mere; auquel li roys fist grant honnour, et le fist
princess his mother to-whom the king did great honor and him made
chevalier mout honorablement. Ses aages n'estoit pas de plus
knight very honorably His age not-was at-all of more
que seize ans; mais onques si saige enfant ne vi. Il requist au
than sixteen years but ever so wise child not I-saw He asked of-the
roy que il l'oïst parler devant sa mere; li roys li otroia.
king that he him-should-hear speak before his mother the king to-him granted
Les paroles que il dist au roy devant sa mere, furent tiex:
The words that he said to-the king before his mother were such
«Sire, il est bien voirs que ma mere me doit encore tenir 523
Lord it is well true that my mother me ought still hold
quatre ans en sa mainbournie; mais pour ce n'est-il pas
four years in her guardianship but for this not-is-it at-all
drois que elle doie lessier ma terre perdre ne decheoir; et
right that she ought let my land be-lost nor decay and
ces choses, sire, di-je pour ce que la cités d'Anthioche se
these things lord say-I for this that the city of-Antioch itself
pert entre ses mains. Si vous pri, sire, que vous li priez
loses between her hands So you I-pray lord that you her should-pray
que elle me baille de l'argent et des gens, par quoy
that she me should-give of the-silver and of-the people by which
je puisse aler secourre ma gent qui là sont, et aidier. Et,
I may go to-succor my people who there are and to-help And
sire, elle le doit bien faire; car se je demeur en la citei
lord she it ought well do for if I remain in the city
de Tyrple avec li, ce n'iert pas sanz grans despens, et
of Tripoli with her this not-will-be at-all without great expenses and
la grans despense que je ferai si yert pour nyent faite.»
the great expense that I will-make so will-be for nothing made

524 Li roys l'oy mout volentiers, et pourchassa de tout son
The king him-heard very willingly and pursued with all his
pooir à sa mere comment elle li baillast tant comme li
power with his mother how she to-him should-give as-much as the
roys pot traire de li. Si tost comme il parti dou roy, il
king could draw from her So soon as he departed from-the king he
s'en ala en Anthioche, là où il fist mout son avenant.
himself-thence went to Antioch there where he did much his pleasure
Par le grei dou roy, il escartela ses armes, qui sont vermeilles,
By the leave of-the king he quartered his arms which are red
aus armes de France, pour ce que li roys l'avoit fait chevalier.
with-the arms of France for this that the king him-had made knight
525 Avec le prince vinrent troi menestrier de la Grant Hyermenie;
With the prince came three minstrels of the Great Armenia
et estoient frere, et en aloient en Jerusalem en pelerinaige;
and they-were brothers and thence went to Jerusalem in pilgrimage
et avoient trois cors, dont les voiz des cors lour venoient
and had three horns of-which the voices of-the horns to-them came
parmi les visaiges. Quant il encommençoient à corner, vous
across the faces When they began to sound you
deissiez que ce sont les voiz des cynes qui se
would-have-said that these are the voices of-the swans which themselves
partent de l'estanc; et fesoient les plus douces melodies
depart from-the pond and they-made the most sweet melodies
et les plus graciouses, que c'estoit merveille de l'oyr.
and the most gracious that this-was marvel of it-to-hear
526 Il fesoient trois merveillous saus; car on lour metoit une
They made three marvelous leaps for one to-them put a
touaille dessous les piez, et tournoient tout en estant, si
cloth below the feet and they-turned all in standing so
que lour pié revenoient tout en estant sur la touaille. Li dui
that their feet came-back all in standing on the cloth The two

tournoient les testes arieres, et li ainsnez aussi; et quant
turned the heads backward and the eldest also and when
on li fesoit tourner la teste devant, il se seignoit; car
one him had turn the head forward he himself crossed for
il avoit paour que il ne se brisast le col au tourner.
he had fear that he — himself should-break the neck at-the turning

Walter of Brienne

XLIX

Barbaquan, the emperor of Persia, ravages the kingdom; the barons and the patriarch ride out with the sultan of the Chamelle. The patriarch will not absolve Walter of Brienne, whom he holds excommunicate; the bishop of Ramla does. The Christians flee and Walter is taken. Hung by his arms before Jaffa, he cries to the garrison never to yield it. The sultan of the Chamelle destroys the Persian host; Walter, sent to Egypt, is killed by merchants he had wronged.

Pour ce que bone chose est que la memoire dou conte de 527
For this that good thing is that the memory of-the count of
Brienne, qui fu cuens de Jaffe, ne soit oubliée, vous dirons
Brienne who was count of Jaffa not be forgotten to-you will-tell
nous cy après de li, pour ce que qu'il tint Jaffe par plusours
we here after of him for this that that-he held Jaffa for several
années, et par sa vigour il la deffendi grant temps; et
years and by his vigor he it defended great time and
vivoit grant partie de ce que il gaaingnoit sus les Sarrazins
lived great part of that which he gained over the Saracens
et sur les ennemis de la foy. Dont il avint une foiz que
and over the enemies of the faith Whence it happened one time that
il desconfist une grant quantitei de Sarrazins qui menoient
he discomfited a great quantity of Saracens who led

grant foison de dras d'or et de soie, lesquiex il gaaingna
great plenty of cloths of-gold and of silk which he gained
touz; et quant il les ot amenez à Jaffe, il departi tout
all and when he them had brought to Jaffa he divided all
à ses chevaliers, que onques riens ne li en demoura.
to his knights so-that ever anything not to-him thereof remained
Sa maniere estoit teix, que quant il estoit partis de ses
His manner was such that when he was departed from his
chevaliers, il s'enclooit en sa chapelle, et estoit longuement
knights he himself-enclosed in his chapel and was long
en oroisons avant que il alast le soir gesir avec sa femme,
in prayers before that he went the evening to-lie with his wife
qui mout fu bone dame et saige, et suer au roy de Cypre.
who very was good lady and wise and sister of-the king of Cyprus
528 Li emperieres de Perse, qui avoit non Barbaquan, que li
The emperor of Persia who had name Barbaquan whom the
uns des princes des Tartarins avoit desconfit, si comme
one of-the princes of-the Tartars had discomfited so as
j'ai dit devant, s'en vint atout son ost ou royaume
I-have said before himself-thence came with his host into-the realm
de Jerusalem; et prist le chastel de Tabarié, que mes sires
of Jerusalem and took the castle of Tiberias which my lord
Huedes de Monbeliart li connestables avoit fermei, qui estoit
Odo of Montbéliard the constable had fortified who was
sires de Tabarié de par sa femme. Mout grant doumaige
lord of Tiberias by right-of his wife Very great harm
fist à nostre gent; car il destruist quant que il trouvoit
he-did to our people for he destroyed what that he found
hors Chastel-Pelerin, et dehors Acre, et dehors le Saffar,
outside Château-Pèlerin and outside Acre and outside the Saffar
et dehors Jaffe aussi. Et quant il ot fait ces doumaiges,
and outside Jaffa also And when he had done these harms

il se trait à Gadres encontre le soudanc de Babiloine,
he himself drew to Gaza toward the sultan of Babylon
qui là devoit venir pour grever et nuire à nostre gent.
who there ought come for to-grieve and harm to our people
Li baron dou pays orent consoil et li patriarches, que 529
The barons of-the country had counsel and the patriarch that
il se iroient combatre à li, avant que li soudans de
they themselves would-go to-fight with him before that the sultan of
Babiloinne deust venir. Et pour aus aidier, il envoierent
Babylon should come And for them to-help they sent
querre le soudanc de la Chamelle, l'un des meillours
to-seek the sultan of the Chamelle the-one of-the best
chevaliers qui fust en toute paiennime, auquel il firent
knights who was in all heathendom to-whom they made
si grant honnour en Acre que il li estendoient les dras
so great honor in Acre that they to-him spread the cloths
d'or et de soie par où il devoit aler. Il en vindrent
of-gold and of silk by where he ought go They thence came
jusques à Jaffe, nostre gent et li soudans avec aus.
until to Jaffa our people and the sultan with them
Li patriarches tenoit escommenié le conte Gautier, pour ce 530
The patriarch held excommunicate the count Walter for this
que il ne li vouloit rendre une tour que il avoit en Jaffe,
that he not to-him wished to-render a tower that he had in Jaffa
que l'on appeloit la tour le patriarche. Nostre gent prierent
which one called the tower (of-)the patriarch Our people prayed
le conte Gautier que il alast avec aus pour combatre à
the count Walter that he should-go with them for to-fight with
l'empereour de Perse; et il dist que si feroit-il volentiers, mais
the-emperor of Persia and he said that so would-do-he willingly provided
que li patriarches l'absousist jusques à lour revenir. Onques
that the patriarch him-should-absolve until to their returning Ever

li patriarches n'en vout riens faire; et toutevoiz s'esmut
the patriarch not-thereof wished anything to-do and all-the-same himself-set-out
li cuens Gautiers et en ala avec aus. Nostre gent firent trois
the count Walter and thence went with them Our people made three
batailles, dont li cuens Gautiers en ot une, li soudans de
battalions of-which the count Walter thereof had one the sultan of
la Chamelle l'autre, et li patriarches et cil de la terre l'autre;
the Chamelle the-other and the patriarch and those of the land the-other
en la bataille au conte de Brienne furent li Hospitalier.
in the battalion of-the count of Brienne were the Hospitallers
531 Il chevauchierent tant que il virent lour ennemis aus
They rode so-much that they saw their enemies with-the
yex. Maintenant que nostre gent les virent, il s'aresterent,
eyes As-soon as our people them saw they themselves-stopped
et li ennemi firent trois batailles aussi. Endementres que li
and the enemies made three battalions also While that the
Corvin aréoient lour batailles, li cuens Gautiers vint à nostre
Khorasmians arrayed their battalions the count Walter came to our
gent et lour escria: «Signour, pour Dieu alons à aus; que
people and to-them cried Lords for God let-us-go at them for
nous lour donnons temps, pour ce que nous nous sommes
we them give time for this that we ourselves are
arestei.» Ne onques n'i ot nul qui l'en vousist croire.
stopped Nor ever not-there was anyone who him-thereof wished to-believe
532 Quant li cuens Gautiers vist ce, il vint au patriarche
When the count Walter saw this he came to-the patriarch
et li requist absolucion en la maniere desus dite; onques
and him asked absolution in the manner above said ever
li patriarches n'en vout rien faire. Avec le conte de
the patriarch not-thereof wished anything to-do With the count of
Brienne avoit un vaillant clerc, qui estoit evesques de
Brienne there-was a valiant clerk who was bishop of

Rames, qui maintes beles chevaleries avoit faites en la
Ramla who many fair chivalries had done in the
compaingnie le conte; et dist au conte: «Ne troublés
company (of-)the count and said to-the count Not trouble
pas vostre conscience quant li patriarches ne vous absout;
at-all your conscience when the patriarch not you absolves
car il a tort, et vous avés droit; et je vous absoil en non
for he has wrong and you have right and I you absolve in name
dou Pere et dou Fil et dou Saint-Esperit. Alons à aus.»
of-the Father and of-the Son and of-the Holy-Spirit Let-us-go at them
Lors ferirent des esperons, et assemblerent à la bataille 533
Then they-struck with-the spurs and engaged with the battalion
l'empereour de Perse, qui estoit la dareniere. Là ot trop
(of-)the-emperor of Persia which was the last There was very
grant foison de gens mors d'une part et d'autre, et là fu
great plenty of people dead on-one side and on-other and there was
pris li cuens Gautiers; car toute nostre gent s'enfuirent si
taken the count Walter for all our people themselves-fled so
laidement, que il en y ot plusours qui de desesperance
shamefully that it thereof there had several who of despair
se noierent en la mer. Ceste desesperance lour vint pour
themselves drowned in the sea This despair to-them came for
ce que une des batailles l'empereour de Perse assembla au
this that one of-the battalions (of-)the-emperor of Persia engaged with-the
soudanc de la Chamelle, liquex se deffendi tant à aus,
sultan of the Chamelle which himself defended so-much against them
que de dous mille Turs que il y mena, il ne l'en
that of two thousand Turks that he there led it not to-him-thereof
demoura que quatorze-vins quant il se parti dou champ.
remained but fourteen-score when he himself departed from-the field

534 Li emperieres prist consoil que il iroit assegier le soudanc
The emperor took counsel that he would-go to-besiege the sultan
dedans le chastel de la Chamelle, pour ce que il lour sembloit
within the castle of the Chamelle for this that it to-them seemed
que il ne se deust pas longuement tenir, à sa gent que il
that he not himself ought at-all long hold for his people that he
avoit perdue. Quant li soudans vit ce, il vint à sa gent et lour
had lost When the sultan saw this he came to his people and to-them
dist que il se iroit combatre à aus; car se il se lessoit
said that he himself would-go to-fight with them for if he himself let
assegier, il seroit perdus. Sa besoingne atira en tel maniere,
besiege he would-be lost His business he-arranged in such manner
que toute sa gent qui estoient mal armei, il les envoia par une
that all his people who were ill armed he them sent by a
valée couverte; et si tost comme il oïrent ferir les tabours
valley covered and so soon as they heard strike the drums
le soudanc, il se ferirent en l'ost l'empereour par
(of-)the sultan they themselves struck into the-host (of-)the-emperor by
darieres, et se pristrent à occirre les femmes et les enfans.
behind and themselves took to kill the women and the children
535 Et si tost comme li emperieres, qui estoit issus aus chans
And so soon as the emperor who was issued to-the fields
pour combatre au soudanc que il véoit aus yex, oy
for to-fight with-the sultan whom he saw with-the eyes heard
le cri de sa gent, il retourna en son host pour secourre
the cry of his people he returned into his host for to-succor
lour femmes et lour enfans; et li soudans lour courut
their wives and their children and the sultan on-them ran
sus, il et sa gent: dont il avint si bien, que de vint-cinq
upon he and his people whence it happened so well that of twenty-five

mille que il estoient, il ne lour demoura home ne
thousand that they were it not to-them remained man nor
femme, que tuit ne fussent mort et livrei à l'espée.
woman that all not were dead and delivered to the-sword
Avant que li emperieres de Perse alast devant la Chamelle, 536
Before that the emperor of Persia went before the Chamelle
il amena le conte Gautier devant Jaffe; et le pendirent par
he brought the count Walter before Jaffa and him they-hung by
les bras à unes fourches, et li dirent que il ne le
the arms on some gallows and to-him they-said that they not him
despenderoient point jusques à tant que il averoient le chastel
would-take-down at-all until to so-much that they would-have the castle
de Jaffe. Tandis que il pendoit par les bras, il escria à ceus dou
of Jaffa While that he hung by the arms he cried to those of-the
chastel que pour mal que il li feissent, que il ne rendisent
castle that for ill that they him might-do that they not should-render
la ville, et que se il la rendoient, il meismes les occirroit.
the town and that if they it rendered he himself them would-kill
Quant li emperieres vit ce, il envoya le conte Gautier 537
When the emperor saw this he sent the count Walter
en Babiloinne et en fist present au soudanc, et dou
to Babylon and thereof made present to-the sultan and of-the
maistre de l'Ospital, et de plusours prisonniers que il avoit
master of the-Hospital and of several prisoners that he had
pris. Cil qui menerent le conte en Babiloinne estoient bien
taken Those who led the count to Babylon were fully
trois cens, et ne furent pas occis quant li emperieres
three hundred and not were at-all killed when the emperor
fu mors devant la Chamelle. Et cist Coremin assemblerent
was dead before the Chamelle And these Khorasmians engaged
à nous le vendredi que il nous vindrent assaillir à
with us the Friday that they us came to-assail on

pié. Lour banieres estoient vermeilles et estoient endantées
foot Their banners were red and were indented
juesques vers les lances; et sur lour lances avoient testes
until toward the lances and on their lances they-had heads
faites de cheveus qui sembloient testes de dyables.
made of hair which seemed heads of devils

538 Plusour des marcheans de Babiloinne crioient après le
Several of-the merchants of Babylon cried after the
soudanc que il lour feist droit dou conte Gautier, des
sultan that he them should-do right of-the count Walter for-the
grans doumaiges que il lour avoit faiz; et li soudans
great harms that he to-them had done and the sultan
lour abandonna que il s'alassent vengier de li. Et
to-them gave-over that they themselves-should-go to-avenge on him And
il l'alerent occirre en la prison et martyrier: dont nous
they him-went to-kill in the prison and to-martyr whereof we
devons croire que il est es ciex ou nombre des martirs.
ought believe that he is in-the heavens in-the number of-the martyrs

539 Li soudans de Damas prist sa gent qui estoient à Gadres, et
The sultan of Damascus took his people who were at Gaza and
entra en Egypte. Li amiral se vindrent combatre à li. La
entered into Egypt The emirs themselves came to-fight with him The
bataille dou soudanc desconfist les amiraus à cui il assembla,
battalion of-the sultan discomfited the emirs with whom he engaged
et l'autre bataille des amiraus d'Egypte desconfist l'ariere
and the-other battalion of-the emirs of-Egypt discomfited the-rear
bataille dou soudanc de Damas. Aussi s'en vint li soudans
battalion of-the sultan of Damascus So himself-thence came the sultan
de Damas arriere à Gadres, navrez en la teste et en la main.
of Damascus back to Gaza wounded in the head and in the hand
Et avant que il se partist de Gadres, envoierent li amiral
And before that he himself departed from Gaza sent the emirs

d'Egypte lour messaiges et firent paiz à li, et nous faillirent
of-Egypt their messengers and made peace with him and us failed
de toutes nos couvenances; et fumes de lors en avant que
of all our covenants and we-were from then on forward so-that
nous n'eumes ne treves ne paiz ne à ceus de Damas ne à
we not-had neither truces nor peace either with those of Damascus or with
ceus de Babiloine. Et sachiez que quant nous estiens le plus de
those of Babylon And know that when we were the most of
gens à armes, nous n'estiens nulle foiz plus de quatorze cens.
people at arms we not-were any time more than fourteen hundred

Skirmishes Near Jaffa and Acre

L

The master of Saint-Lazarus raids near Ramla without the king's leave and is routed. Joinville rides out, but the master of the crossbowmen has already beaten the Saracens. A royal sergeant stealing two horses falls with them into a crumbling cistern. The Damascene host passes by without attacking. On Saint John's day the Saracens surround the master of the crossbowmen; Joinville goes to his aid; the king recalls them.

Tandis que li roys estoit en l'ost devant Jaffe, li maistres 540
While that the king was in the-host before Jaffa the master
de Saint-Ladre ot espié delez Rames, à trois grans lieues,
of Saint-Lazarus had spied near Ramla at three great leagues
bestes et autres choses là où il cuidoit faire un grant
beasts and other things there where he thought to-make a great
gaaing; et il qui ne tenoit nul conroy en l'ost, ainçois fesoit
gain and he who not held any order in the-host rather did
sa volontei en l'ost, sanz parler au roy ala là. Quant il
his will in the-host without speaking to-the king went there When he

ot aqueillie sa praie, li Sarrazin li coururent sus et le
had gathered his prey the Saracens on-him ran upon and him
desconfirent en tel maniere, que de toute sa gent que il
discomfited in such manner that of all his people that he
avoit avec li en sa bataille, il n'en eschapa que quatre.
had with him in his battalion he not-thence escaped but four
541 Si tost comme il entra en l'ost, il commença à crier
So soon as he entered into the-host he began to cry
aus armes. Je m'alai armer, et priai au roy que il
to-the arms I myself-went to-arm and prayed to-the king that he
me lessast aler là; et il m'en donna congié, et me
me should-let go there and he me-thereof gave leave and me
commanda que je menasse avec moy le Temple et l'Ospital.
commanded that I should-take with me the Temple and the-Hospital
Quant nous venimes là, nous trouvames que autre Sarrasin
When we came there we found that other Saracens
estrange estoient embatu en la valée là où li maistres de
strange were thrust into the valley there where the master of
Saint-Ladre avoit estei desconfiz. Ainsi comme cist Sarrazin
Saint-Lazarus had been discomfited Just as these Saracens
estrange regardoient ces mors, li maistres des arbalestriers
strange looked-at these dead the master of-the crossbowmen
le roy lour courut sus; et avant que nous venissiens là,
(of-)the king on-them ran upon and before that we came there
nostre gent les orent desconfiz et plusours en occirent.
our people them had discomfited and several thereof they-killed
542 Uns serjans le roy et uns des Sarrazins s'i
A sergeant (of-)the king and one of-the Saracens themselves-there
porterent à terre li uns l'autre de cop de lance. Uns autres
bore to ground the one the-other with blow of lance An other
serjans le roy, quant il vit ce, il prist les dous chevaus,
sergeant (of-)the king when he saw this he took the two horses

et les emmenoit pour embler; et pour ce que l'on ne le
and them led-away for to-steal and for this that one not him
veist, il se mist parmi les murailles de la citei de Rames.
should-see he himself put through the walls of the city of Ramla
Tandis que il les enmenoit, une vieille citerne sur quoi il
While that he them led-away an old cistern over which he
passa, li fondi desous; li troi cheval et il alerent au
passed to-him caved below the three horses and he went to-the
font, et on le me dist. Je y alai veoir, et vi que la citerne
bottom and one it me told I there went to-see and saw that the cistern
fondoit encore sur aus, et que il ne failloit gueres que il ne
caved still on them and that it not lacked much that they not
fussent tuit couvert. Ainsi en revenismes sanz riens perdre,
were all covered Thus thence we-came-back without anything losing
mais que ce que li maistres de Saint-Ladre y avoit perdu.
but that this which the master of Saint-Lazarus there had lost
Si tost comme li soudans de Damas fu apaisiés à ceus 543
So soon as the sultan of Damascus was reconciled with those
d'Egypte, il manda sa gent, qui estoient à Gadres, que
of-Egypt he summoned his people who were at Gaza that
il en revenissent vers li; et si firent-il. Et passerent
they thence should-come-back toward him and so did-they And they-passed
par-devant nostre ost à moins de dous lieues, ne onques
by-before our host at less than two leagues nor ever
ne nous oserent courre sus; et si estoient bien vint mille
not us dared run upon and so they-were fully twenty thousand
Sarrazin et dix mille Beduyn. Avant que il venissent
Saracens and ten thousand Bedouins Before that they came
endroit nostre ost, les garderent li maistres des arbalestriers
opposite our host them watched the master of-the crossbowmen

le roy et sa bataille trois jours et trois nuis, pour ce
(of-)the king and his battalion three days and three nights for this
que il ne se ferissent en nostre ost despourveuement.
that they not themselves should-strike into our host unawares
544 Le jour de la saint-Jehan qui estoit après Pasques, oy li roys
The day of the Saint-John which was after Easter heard the king
son sermon. Tandis que l'on sermonnoit, uns serjans dou maistre
his sermon While that one preached a sergeant of-the master
des arbalestriers entra en la chapelle le roy touz armez, et
of-the crossbowmen entered into the chapel (of-)the king all armed and
li dist que li Sarrazin avoient enclos le maistre arbalestrier.
to-him said that the Saracens had enclosed the master crossbowman
Je requis au roy que il m'y laissast aler, et il le m'otria, et
I asked of-the king that he me-there should-let go and he it me-granted and
me dist que je menasse avec moy jusques à quatre cens ou cinq
me said that I should-take with me until to four hundred or five
cens homes d'armes, et les me nomma ceus que il vout que
hundred men of-arms and them me named those that he wished that
je menasse. Si tost comme nous issimes de l'ost, li Sarrazin
I should-take So soon as we issued from the-host the Saracens
qui estoient mis entre le maistre des arbalestriers et l'ost,
who were put between the master of-the crossbowmen and the-host
s'en alerent à un amiral qui estoit en un tertre devant
themselves-thence went to an emir who was on a hill before
le maistre des arbalestriers atout bien mil homes à armes.
the master of-the crossbowmen with fully thousand men at arms
545 Lors commença li hutins entre les Sarrazins et les serjans
Then began the fray between the Saracens and the sergeants
au maistre des arbalestriers, dont il y avoit bien
of-the master of-the crossbowmen of-whom it there had fully
quatorze vins. Car à l'une des fois que li amiraus véoit
fourteen score For at the-one of-the times that the emir saw

que sa gent estoient pressei, il lour envoioit secours et
that his people were pressed he to-them sent help and
tant de gent que il metoient nos serjans jusques en la
so-much of people that they put our sergeants until into the
bataille au maistre. Quant li maistres véoit que sa gent
battalion of-the master When the master saw that his people
estoient pressei, il lour envoioit cent ou six vins homes
were pressed he to-them sent a-hundred or six score men
d'armes, qui les remetoient jusques en la bataille l'amiral.
of-arms who them put-back until into the battalion (of-)the-emir
Tandis que nous estiens là, li legas et li baron dou 546
While that we were there the legate and the barons of-the
pays, qui estoient demourei avec le roy, distrent au roy
country who were remained with the king said to-the king
que il fesoit grant folie quant il me metoit en avanture;
that he did great folly when he me put in hazard
et par lour consoil li roys me renvoia querre, et le
and by their counsel the king me sent-back to-seek and the
maistre des arbalestriers aussi. Li Turc se departirent
master of-the crossbowmen also The Turks themselves departed
de là, et nous revenimes en l'ost. Mout de gens se
from there and we came-back into the-host Many of people themselves
merveillierent quant il ne se vindrent combatre à
marveled when they not themselves came to-fight with
nous, et aucunes gens distrent que il ne le lessierent fors
us and some people said that they not it left except
que pour tant que il et lour cheval estoient tuit affamei
that for so-much that they and their horses were all starved
à Gadres, là où il avoient sejournei près d'un an.
at Gaza there where they had sojourned near-to a year

Sidon Sacked

LI

Before Acre the Saracens threaten the gardens unless paid; John the Great, a Genoese knight sent to bring in the common people, leaves his joust to charge a crowd of Turks and kills one. Hearing that the king is walling Sidon with few men, the Saracens fall on the open town and kill more than two thousand. The barons, unwilling to see the king rebuild an old Maccabean castle on the road to Jerusalem, persuade him to rewall Sidon instead.

547 Quant cist Sarrazin furent parti de devant Jaffe, il
When these Saracens were departed from before Jaffa they
vindrent devant Acre et manderent le signour de l'Arsur,
came before Acre and sent-word-to the lord of Arsuf
qui estoit connestables dou royaume de Jerusalem, que il
who was constable of-the realm of Jerusalem that they
destruiroient les jardins de la ville se il ne lour envoioit
would-destroy the gardens of the town if he not to-them sent
cinquante mille bezans; et il lour manda que il ne lour
fifty thousand bezants and he to-them sent-word that he not to-them
en envoieroit nulz. Lors firent lour batailles rangier, et
thereof would-send any Then they-had their battalions ranged and
s'en vindrent tout le sablon d'Acre, si près de la
themselves-thence came all the sand of-Acre so near of the
ville que l'on y traisist bien d'une arbalestre à tour.
town that one there would-shoot well with-a crossbow with winch
Li sires d'Arsur issi de la ville et se mist ou Mont
The lord of-Arsuf came-out of the town and himself put on-the Mount
Saint-Jehan, là où li cymeteres Saint-Nicholas est, pour
Saint-John there where the cemetery Saint-Nicholas is for

deffendre les jardins. Nostre serjant à pié issirent d'Acre, et
to-defend the gardens Our sergeants on foot came-out of-Acre and
commencierent à hardier à aus et d'ars et d'arbalestres.
began to harry at them both with-bows and with-crossbows
Li sires d'Arsur appela un chevalier de Gennes, qui avoit à 548
The lord of-Arsuf called a knight of Genoa who had to
non mon signour Jehan le Grant, et li commanda que il
name my lord John the Great and him commanded that he
alast retraire la menue gent qui estoient issu de la ville
should-go to-draw-back the small people who were come-out of the town
d'Acre, pour ce que il ne se meissent en peril. Tandis
of-Acre for this that they not themselves should-put in peril While
que il les ramenoit arieres, uns Sarrazins li commença à
that he them brought back a Saracen at-him began to
escrier en sarrazinnois que il jousteroit à li se il vouloit;
cry in Saracen-tongue that he would-joust with him if he wished
et cil li dist que si feroit-il volentiers. Tandis que mes
and this-one to-him said that so would-do-he willingly While that my
sires Jehans aloit vers le Sarrazin pour jouster, il regarda sus
lord John went toward the Saracen for to-joust he looked on
sa main senestre; si vit un tropel de Turs, là où il y en
his hand left so saw a troop of Turks there where it there thereof
avoit bien huit, qui s'estoient arestei pour veoir la jouste.
had fully eight who themselves-were stopped for to-see the joust
Il laissa la jouste dou Sarrazin à cui il devoit jouster, et 549
He left the joust of-the Saracen with whom he ought joust and
ala au tropel de Turs qui se tenoient tuit quoi pour
went to-the troop of Turks who themselves held all quiet for
la jouste regarder, et en feri un parmi le cors de sa
the joust to-watch and thereof struck one through the body with his
lance et le geta mort. Quant li autre virent ce, il li
lance and him cast dead When the others saw this they on-him

coururent sus endementres que il revenoit vers nostre gent,
ran upon while that he came-back toward our people
et li uns le fiert grant cop d'une mace sus le chapel
and the one him strikes great blow with-a mace on the hat
de fer; et au passer que il fist, mes sires Jehans li
of iron and at-the passing that he made my lord John to-him
donna de s'espée sur une touaille dont il avoit sa teste
gave with his-sword on a turban with-which he had his head
entorteillie, et li fist la touaille voler enmi les chans.
wound and him made the turban fly amid the fields
Il portoient lors les touailles quant il se vouloient
They bore then the turbans when they themselves wished
combatre, pour ce que elles reçoivent un grant coup d'espée.
to-fight for this that they receive a great blow of-sword
550 Li uns des autres Turs feri des esperons à li, et li
The one of-the other Turks struck with-the spurs at him and him
vouloit donner de son glaive parmi les espaules; et mes
wished to-give with his lance through the shoulders and my
sires Jehans vit le glaive venir, si guenchi: au passer que li
lord John saw the lance come so swerved at-the passing that the
Sarrazins fist, mes sires Jehans li donna ariere main d'une
Saracen made my lord John to-him gave back hand with-a
espée parmi le bras, si que il li fist son glaive voler enmi
sword through the arm so that he to-him made his lance fly amid
les chans. Et ainsi s'en revint et ramena sa gent à
the fields And thus himself-thence came-back and brought-back his people on
pié; et ces trois biaus cos fist-il devant le signour d'Arsur
foot and these three fair blows did-he before the lord of-Arsuf
et les riches homes qui estoient en Acre, et devant toutes
and the rich men who were in Acre and before all
les femmes qui estoient sus les murs pour veoir celle gent.
the women who were on the walls for to-see this people

Quant celle grans foysons de gens sarrazins qui furent devant 551
When that great plenty of people Saracen which were before
Acre, et n'oserent combatre à nous, aussi comme vous avez
Acre and not-dared fight with us just as you have
oy, ne à ceus d'Acre, oïrent dire (et verités estoit) que li
heard nor with those of-Acre heard say and truth it-was that the
roys fesoit fermer la citei de Sayete, et à pou de bones
king had fortified the city of Sidon and with few of good
gens, il se traitrent en celle part. Quant mes sires
people they themselves drew toward that part When my lord
Symons de Monceliart, qui estoit maistres des arbalestriers
Simon of Montbéliard who was master of-the crossbowmen
le roy et chievetains de la gent le roy à Saiette, oy
(of-)the king and chieftain of the people (of-)the king at Sidon heard
dire que ceste gent venoient, si se retrait ou chastel de
say that this people came so himself withdrew into-the castle of
Saiette, qui est mout forz et enclos est de la mer en touz
Sidon which is very strong and enclosed is by the sea on all
senz; et ce fist-il pour ce que il véoit bien que il n'avoit
sides and this did-he for this that he saw well that he not-had
pooir de resister à aus. Avec li receta ce que il pot de
power to resist to them With him he-sheltered that which he could of
gent; mais pou en y ot, car li chastiaus estoit trop estrois.
people but few thereof there had for the castle was very narrow
Li Sarrazin se ferirent en la ville, là où il ne 552
The Saracens themselves struck into the town there where they not
trouverent nulle deffense; car elle n'estoit pas toute close.
found any defense for it not-was at-all all enclosed
Plus de dous mille personnes occirent de nostre gent; atout
More than two thousand persons they-killed of our people with
le gaaing que il firent là, s'en alerent en Damas.
the gain that they made there themselves-thence went to Damascus

Quant li roys oy ces nouvelles, mout en fu courouciés (se
When the king heard these tidings much thereof was angered if
amender le peust!); et aus barons dou pays en fu mout
amend it he-could and to-the barons of-the country thereof was much
bel, pour ce que li roys vouloit aler fermer un tertre là où
fair for this that the king wished to-go to-fortify a hill there where
il y ot jadis un ancien chastel au tens des Machabiex.
it there had of-old an ancient castle in-the time of-the Maccabees
Cis chastiaus siet ainsi comme l'on va de Jaffe en Jerusalem.
This castle sits just as one goes from Jaffa to Jerusalem
553 Li baron d'outre mer se descorderent dou chastel refermer,
The barons of-over sea themselves disagreed of-the castle to-refortify
pour ce que c'estoit loing de la mer à cinq lieues; par quoy
for this that it-was far from the sea by five leagues by which
nulle viande ne nous peust venir de la mer, que li Sarrazin ne
any food not us could come from the sea that the Saracens not
nous tollissent, qui estoient plus fort que nous n'estiens. Quant
from-us might-take who were more strong than we not-were When
ces nouvelles vindrent en l'ost, dou bourc de Sayette qui estoit
these tidings came into the-host of-the borough of Sidon which was
destruis, et vindrent li baron dou païs au roy, et li
destroyed and came the barons of-the country to-the king and to-him
distrent que il li seroit plus grans honnours de refermer
said that it to-him would-be more great honor to refortify
le bourc de Saiette, que li Sarrazin avoient abatu, que de
the borough of Sidon which the Saracens had pulled-down than to
faire une forteresse nouvelle; et li roys s'accorda à aus.
make a fortress new and the king himself-agreed with them

The King Will Not Go to Jerusalem

LII

Offered safe-conduct to Jerusalem by the sultan of Damascus, the king is advised not to go while the city stays in Saracen hands. They recall how Richard of England, when the duke of Burgundy turned back so that none could say the English took Jerusalem, covered his eyes rather than see the city he could not free. King Philip once called that duke valiant but not worthy. The legate tells Joinville a gate and wall of Jaffa cost thirty thousand pounds.

Tandis que li roys estoit à Jaffe, l'on li dist que li 554
While that the king was at Jaffa one to-him said that the
soudans de Damas li soufferroit bien à aler en Jerusalem,
sultan of Damascus him would-suffer well to go to Jerusalem
et par bon asseurement. Li roys en ot grant consoil;
and by good safe-conduct The king thereof had great counsel
et la fins dou consoil fu teix, que nulz ne loa le roy
and the end of-the counsel was such that anyone not advised the king
que il y alast, puisque il couvenist que il lessast la
that he there should-go since it would-behoove that he should-leave the
citei en la main des Sarrazins.
city in the hand of-the Saracens
L'on en moustra au roy un exemple qui fu teix, que 555
One thereof showed to-the king an example which was such that
quant li grans roys Phelippes se parti de devant Acre
when the great king Philip himself departed from before Acre
pour aler en France, il lessa toute sa gent demourer en l'ost
for to-go to France he left all his people remain in the-host
avec le duc Hugon de Bourgoingne, l'aioul cesti duc qui
with the duke Hugh of Burgundy the-grandfather (of-)this duke who
est mors nouvellement. Tandis que li dus sejournoit à Acre,
is dead newly While that the duke sojourned at Acre

et li, roys Richars d'Angleterre aussi, nouvelles lour vindrent
and the king Richard of-England also tidings to-them came
que il pooient penre l'endemain Jerusalem se il vouloient,
that they could take the-next-day Jerusalem if they wished
pour ce que toute la force de la chevalerie le soudanc
for this that all the force of the knighthood (of-)the sultan
de Damas s'en estoit alée vers li, pour une guerre que
of Damascus itself-thence was gone toward him for a war that
il avoit à un autre soudanc. Il atirierent lour gent, et
he had with an other sultan They arrayed their people and
fist li roys d'Angleterre la premiere bataille, et li dus de
made the king of-England the first battalion and the duke of
Bourgoingne l'autre après, atout les gens le roy de France.
Burgundy the-other after with the people (of-)the king of France
556 Tandis que il estoient à esme de penre la ville, on li
While that they were in aim of taking the town one to-him
manda de l'ost le duc que il n'alast avant; car li dus
sent-word from the-host (of-)the duke that he not-should-go forward for the duke
de Bourgoingne s'en retournoit ariere, pour ce, sanz
of Burgundy himself-thence returned back for this without
plus, que l'on ne deist que li Anglois eussent pris Jerusalem.
more that one not might-say that the English had taken Jerusalem
Tandis que il estoient en ces paroles, uns siens chevaliers
While that they were in these words a his knight
li escria: «Sire, sire, venez juesques ci, et je vous mousterrai
to-him cried Lord lord come until here and I you will-show
Jerusalem.» Et quant il oy ce, il geta sa cote à armer devant
Jerusalem And when he heard this he cast his coat for arming before
ses yex tout en plorant, et dist à Nostre Signour: «Biaus sire
his eyes all in weeping and said to Our Lord Fair lord

Diex, je te pri que tu ne seuffres que je voie ta sainte citei,
God I thee pray that thou not suffer that I may-see thy holy city
puisque je ne la puis delivrer des mains de tes ennemis.»
since I not it can deliver from-the hands of thy enemies
Ceste exemple moustra l'on au roy, pour ce que se il, qui 557
This example showed one to-the king for this that if he who
estoit li plus grans roys des Crestiens, fesoit son pelerinaige
was the most great king of-the Christians made his pilgrimage
sanz delivrer la citei des ennemis Dieu, tuit li autre roy et
without delivering the city from-the enemies (of-)God all the other kings and
li autre pelerin qui après li venroient, se tenroient tuit
the other pilgrims who after him would-come themselves would-hold all
apaié de faire lour pelerinaige aussi comme li roys de France
satisfied to make their pilgrimage just as the king of France
averoit fait, ne ne feroient force de la delivrance de Jerusalem.
would-have done nor not would-make force of the deliverance of Jerusalem
Li roys Richars fist tant d'armes outre mer à celle foys que il 558
The king Richard did so-many of-arms over sea at that time that he
y fu, que quant li cheval aus Sarrasins avoient poour d'aucun
there was that when the horses of-the Saracens had fear of-some
bisson, lour maistre lour disoient: «Cuides-tu, fesoient-il à
bush their masters to-them said Thinkest-thou said-they to
lour chevaus, que ce soit li roys Richars d'Angleterre?» Et
their horses that this may-be the king Richard of-England And
quant li enfant aus Sarrazinnes bréoient, elles lour disoient:
when the children of-the Saracen-women cried they to-them said
«Tay-toi, tay-toi, ou je irai querre le roy Richart, qui te tuera.»
Be-silent be-silent or I will-go to-seek the king Richard who thee will-kill
Li dus de Bourgoingne, de quoy je vous ai parlei, fu 559
The duke of Burgundy of whom I to-you have spoken was
mout bons chevaliers de sa main; mais il ne fu onques
very good knight of his hand but he not was ever

tenus pour saige ne à Dieu ne au siecle; et il
held for wise neither toward God nor toward-the world and it
y parut bien en ce fait devant dit. Et de ce dist li
there appeared well in this deed before said And of this said the
grans roys Phelippes, quant l'on li dist que li cuens
great king Philip when one to-him said that the count
Jehans de Chalons avoit un fil, et avoit à non Hugue pour
John of Chalon had a son and he-had to name Hugh for
le duc de Bourgoingne, il dist que Diex le feist aussi
the duke of Burgundy he said that God him should-make as
preu home come le duc pour cui il avoit non Hugue.
valiant man as the duke for whom he had name Hugh
560 Et on li demanda pourquoy il n'avoit dit aussi preudome:
And one him asked why he not-had said as worthy-man
«Pour ce, fist-il, que il a grant difference entre preu home
For this said-he that it has great difference between valiant man
et preudome. Car il a mainz preus homes chevaliers en
and worthy-man For it has many valiant men knights in
la terre des crestiens et des Sarrazins, qui onques ne
the land of-the Christians and of-the Saracens who ever not
crurent Dieu ne sa Mere. Dont je vous di, fist-il, que Diex
believed God nor his Mother Whence I to-you say said-he that God
donne grant don et grant grace au chevalier crestien que
gives great gift and great grace to-the knight Christian whom
il seuffre estre vaillant de cors, et que il seuffre en son
he suffers to-be valiant of body and whom he suffers in his
servise en li gardant de pechié mortel; et celi qui ainsi
service in him keeping from sin mortal and him who thus
se demeinne doit l'on appeler preudome, pour ce que
himself conducts ought one call worthy-man for this that
ceste proesse li vient dou don Dieu. Et ceus de cui
this prowess to-him comes from-the gift (of-)God And those of whom

j'ai avant parlei puet l'on appeler preuz homes, pour ce que
I-have before spoken can one call valiant men for this that
il sont preu de lour cors, et ne doutent Dieu ne pechié.»
they are valiant of their body and not fear God nor sin
Des grans deniers que li roys mist à fermer Jaffe ne 561
Of-the great pence that the king put to fortify Jaffa not
couvient-il pas parler, que c'est sanz nombre; car il ferma
behooves-it at-all to-speak for it-is without number for he fortified
le bourc dès l'une des mers jusques à l'autre, là où il
the borough from the-one of-the seas until to the-other there where it
ot bien vint quatre tours; et furent li fossei curei de lun
had fully twenty four towers and were the ditches cleaned of mud
dehors et dedans. Trois portes y avoit, dont li legas
outside and inside Three gates there had of-which the legate
en fist l'une, et un pan dou mur.
thereof made the-one and a section of-the wall
Et pour vous moustrer le coustaige que li roys i mist, 562
And for to-you to-show the cost that the king there put
vous faiz-je à savoir que je demandai au legat combien
to-you make-I to know that I asked of-the legate how-much
celle porte et cis pans dou mur li avoient coustei; et
that gate and this section of-the wall him had cost and
il me demanda combien je cuidoie qu'elle eust coustei; et
he me asked how-much I thought that-it had cost and
je esmai que la porte que il avoit fait faire li avoit bien
I reckoned that the gate which he had had made him had well
coustei cinq cens livres, et li pans dou mur trois cens
cost five hundred pounds and the section of-the wall three hundred
livres. Et il me dist que (si Diex li aidast) que la porte
pounds And he me said that so God him might-help that the gate
que li pans li avoient bien coustei trente mille livres.
and the section to-him had well cost thirty thousand pounds

The Expedition to Banyas

LIII

The king sets out to rewall Sidon; the barons will try Nablus only without him, and he will not let them go. Armenian pilgrims ask to see the holy king, and he laughs and receives them. At Passe-Poulain Joinville turns out a knight who seized another by the hair and, bound by oath, will not take him back. Kept from going himself, the king sends his battalion against Banyas; Joinville climbs toward the Turks, they yield the hill, and the town's Saracens flee.

563 Quant li roys ot assouvie la forteresse dou bourc de Jaffe, il
When the king had completed the fortress of-the borough of Jaffa he
prist consoil que il iroit refermer la citei de Sayete, que li
took counsel that he would-go to-refortify the city of Sidon which the
Sarrazin avoient abatue. Il s'esmut pour aler là le jour de
Saracens had pulled-down He himself-set-out for to-go there the day of
la feste des apostres saint Pere et saint Pol, et just li roys et
the feast of-the apostles saint Peter and saint Paul and lay the king and
ses os devant le chastel d'Arsur, qui mout estoit forz. Celi soir
his host before the castle of-Arsuf which very was strong That evening
appela li roys sa gent, et lour dist que se il s'accordoient,
called the king his people and to-them said that if they themselves-agreed
que il iroit penre une citei des Sarrazins que on appele
that he would-go to-take a city of-the Saracens which one calls
Naples, laquel citei les anciennes escriptures appelent Samarie.
Nablus which city the ancient scriptures call Samaria
564 Li temples et li Ospitaus et li baron dou païs li
The Temple and the Hospital and the barons of-the country to-him
respondirent d'un acort, que il estoit bon que l'on y essaiast
answered with-one accord that it was good that one there should-try
à penre la citei; mais il ne s'acorderoient jà que ses cors y
to take the city but they not themselves-would-agree ever that his body there

alast, pour ce que se aucune chose avenoit de li, toute la terre
should-go for this that if any thing happened of him all the land
seroit perdue. Et il dist que il ne les y lairoit jà aler, se ses
would-be lost And he said that he not them there would-let ever go if his
cors n'i aloit avec. Et pour ce demoura celle emprise, que li
body not-there went along And for this remained that enterprise for the
signour terrier ne s'i voudrent acorder que il y alast.
lords of-the-land not themselves-there wished to-agree that he there should-go
Par nos journées, venimes ou sablon d'Acre, là où li 565
By our day-stages we-came to-the sand of-Acre there where the
roys et li os nous lojames. Illec au lieu vint à moy uns
king and the host we lodged There at-the place came to me a
grans peuples de la Grant Hermenie, qui aloit en pelerinaige
great people of the Great Armenia which went in pilgrimage
en Jerusalem, par grant tréu rendant aus Sarrazins qui les
to Jerusalem by great tribute rendering to-the Saracens who them
conduisoient. A un latimier qui savoit lour languaige et le
conducted By an interpreter who knew their language and the
nostre, il me firent prier que je lour monstrasse le saint roy.
our they me had prayed that I them should-show the holy king
Je alai au roy là où il se séoit en un paveillon, apuiez à 566
I went to-the king there where he himself sat in a pavilion leaning on-the
l'estache dou paveillon; et séoit ou sablon, sans tapiz et sans
post of-the pavilion and sat on-the sand without carpet and without
nulle autre chose desouz li. Je li dis: «Sire, il a là hors
any other thing below him I to-him said Lord it has there outside
un grant peuple de la Grant Hermenie qui vont en Jerusalem,
a great people of the Great Armenia who go to Jerusalem
et me proient, sire, que je lour face moustrer le saint roy;
and me pray lord that I them may-make be-shown the holy king
mais je ne bé jà à baisier vos os.» Et il rist mout clerement,
but I not desire ever to kiss your bones And he laughed very clearly

et me dist que je les alasse querre; et si fis-je. Et quant il
and me said that I them should-go to-seek and so did-I And when they
orent veu le roy, il le commanderent à Dieu, et li roys aus.
had seen the king they him commended to God and the king them
567 L'endemain just li os en un lieu que on appelle Passe-poulain,
The-next-day lay the host in a place which one calls Passe-Poulain
là où il a de mout beles eaues de quoy l'on arose ce
there where it has of very fair waters with which one waters that
dont li sucres vient. Là où nous estiens logié illec; li uns
whence the sugar comes There where we were lodged there the one
de mes chevaliers me dist: «Sire, fist-il, or vous ai-je logié en
of my knights me said Lord said-he now you have-I lodged in
plus biau lieu que vous ne fustes hyer.» Li autres chevaliers
more fair place than you not were yesterday The other knight
qui m'avoit prise la place devant, sailli sus touz effraez, et
who me-had taken the place before leapt up all affrighted and
li dist tout haut: «Vous este trop hardis quant vous parlés
to-him said all loud You are too bold when you speak
de chose que je face.» Et il sailli sus et le prist par les
of thing that I may-do And he leapt up and him took by the
cheveus. Et je sailli sus et le feri dou poing entre les dous
hair And I leapt up and him struck with-the fist between the two
espaules, et il le lessa; et je li dis: «Or hors de mon
shoulders and he him left and I to-him said Now out of my
hostel; car, si m'aïst Diex! avec moy ne serez-vous jamais.»
lodging for so me-help God with me not will-be-you ever
568 Li chevaliers s'en ala si grant duel demenant, et
The knight himself-thence went so great grief making and
m'amena mon signour Gilon le Brun le connestable de France;
me-brought my lord Giles the Brown the constable of France
et pour la grant repentance que il véoit que li chevaliers
and for the great repentance that he saw that the knight

avoit de la folie que il avoit faite, me pria, si à certes comme
had of the folly that he had done me prayed so in earnest as
il pot, que je le remenasse en mon hostel. Et je respondi
he could that I him should-take-back into my lodging And I answered
que je ne l'i remenroie pas, se li legas ne me absoloit
that I not him-there would-take-back at-all if the legate not me absolved
de mon sairement. Au legat en alerent et li conterent
from my oath To-the legate thence they-went and to-him told
le fait; et li legas lour respondi que il n'avoit pooir de
the deed and the legate to-them answered that he not-had power of
moy absoudre, pour ce que li sairemens estoit raisonnables;
me to-absolve for this that the oath was reasonable
car li chevaliers l'avoit mout bien deservi. Et ces choses
for the knight it-had very well deserved And these things
vous moustré-je, pour ce que vous vous gardés de faire
to-you show-I for this that you yourselves may-guard from making
sairement que il ne couviengne faire par raison; car, ce
oath which it not may-behoove to-make by reason for this
dit li Saiges: «Qui volontiers jure, volentiers se parjure.»
says the Wise-man Who willingly swears willingly himself perjures
L'endemain s'ala logier li roys devant la citei d'Arsur, que 569
The-next-day himself-went to-lodge the king before the city of-Tyre which
l'on appele Tyri en la Bible. Illec appela li roys des riches
one calls Tyre in the Bible There called the king of-the rich
homes de l'ost, et lour demanda consoil se il seroit bon que
men of the-host and them asked counsel if it would-be good that
il alast penre la citei de Belinas avant que il alast à Sayete.
he should-go to-take the city of Banyas before that he went to Sidon
Nous loames tuit que il estoit bon que li roys y envoiast
We advised all that it was good that the king there should-send
de sa gent; mais nulz ne li loa que ses cors y alast:
of his people but anyone not him advised that his body there should-go

à grant peinne l'en destourba l'on. Acordei fut ainsi, que
with great pain him-thence turned one Agreed was thus that
li cuens d'Eu iroit et mes sires Phelippes de Montfort, li
the count of-Eu would-go and my lord Philip of Montfort the
sires de Sur, mes sires Giles li Bruns connestables de France,
lord of Tyre my lord Giles the Brown constable of France
mes sires Pierres li chamberlains, li maistres dou Temple
my lord Peter the chamberlain the master of-the Temple
et ses couvens, li maistres de l'Ospital et sui frere aussi.
and his convent the master of the-Hospital and his brothers also
570 Nous nous armames à l'anuitier, et venimes un pou après
We ourselves armed at the-nightfall and came a little after
le point dou jour en une pleinne qui est devant la citei que
the point of-the day into a plain which is before the city which
l'on appele Belinas; et l'appelle l'Escripture ancienne Cezaire
one calls Banyas and it-calls the-Scripture ancient Caesarea
Phelippe. En celle citei sourt une fonteinne que l'on appele
Philippi In that city springs a fountain which one calls
Jour; et enmi les plainnes qui sont devant la citei, sourt une
Jor and amid the plains which are before the city springs an
autre très-bele fonteinne qui est appelée Dan. Or est ainsi, que
other very-fair fountain which is called Dan Now is so that
quant cist dui ru de ces dous fonteinnes viennent ensemble,
when these two brooks of these two fountains come together
ce appele l'on le fleuve de Jourdain, là où Diex fu bauptiziez.
this calls one the river of Jordan there where God was baptized
571 Par l'acort dou Temple et dou conte d'Eu, de l'Ospital et
By the-accord of-the Temple and of-the count of-Eu of the-Hospital and
des barons dou païs qui là estoient, fu acordei que la
of-the barons of-the country who there were was agreed that the
bataille le roy (en laquel bataille je estoie lors, pour ce
battalion (of-)the king in which battalion I was then for this

que li roys avoit retenu les quarante chevaliers qui estoient
that the king had retained the forty knights who were
en ma bataille avec li), et mes sires Geffroys de Sergines
in my battalion with him and my lord Geoffrey of Sargines
li preudom aussi, iroient entre le chastel et la citei; et
the worthy-man also would-go between the castle and the city and
li terrier enterroient en la citei à main senestre, et li
the landholders would-enter into the city on hand left and the
Ospitaus à main destre, et li Temples enterroit en la
Hospital on hand right and the Temple would-enter into the
citei la droite voie que nous estiens venu.
city the straight way that we were come
Nous nous esmeumes lors tant que nous venimes delez la 572
We ourselves set-out then until that we came beside the
citei, et trouvames que li Sarrazin qui estoient en la ville,
city and found that the Saracens who were in the town
orent desconfiz les serjans le roy, et chaciés de la ville.
had discomfited the sergeants (of-)the king and chased from the town
Quant je vi ce, je ving aus preudomes qui estoient avec
When I saw this I came to-the worthy-men who were with
le conte d'Eu, et lour dis: «Signour, se vous n'alés là
the count of-Eu and to-them said Lords if you not-go there
où on nous a commandei, entre la ville et le chastel, li
where one us has commanded between the town and the castle the
Sarrazin nous occirront nos gens qui sont entrei en la ville.»
Saracens us will-kill our people who are entered into the town
L'alée y estoit si perillouse; car li lieus là où nous
The-going there was so perilous for the place there where we
deviens aler estoit si perillous qu'il y avoit troi paire de
ought go was so perilous that-it there had three pair of
murs sés à passer, et la coste estoit si roite que à peinne
walls dry to pass and the slope was so steep that with pain

s'i pooit tenir chevaus; et li tertres là où nous
itself-there could hold horse and the hill there where we
deviens aler estoit garniz de Turs à grant foison à cheval.
ought go was garrisoned with Turks in great plenty on horse
573 Tandis que je parloie à aus, je vi que nostre serjant à pié
While that I spoke to them I saw that our sergeants on foot
deffesoient les murs. Quant je vi ce, je dis à ceus à cui je
undid the walls When I saw this I said to those to whom I
parloie, que l'on avoit ordenei que la bataille le roy iroit
spoke that one had ordained that the battalion (of-)the king would-go
là où li Turc estoient; et puisque on l'avoit commandei,
there where the Turks were and since one it-had commanded
je iroie. Je m'esdreçai, je et mi dui chevalier, à ceus qui
I would-go I myself-directed I and my two knights to those who
deffesoient les murs, et vi que uns serjans à cheval cuidoit
undid the walls and saw that a sergeant on horse thought
passer le mur, et li chéi ses chevaus sus le cors. Quant je
to-pass the wall and to-him fell his horse upon the body When I
vi ce, je descendi à pié et pris mon cheval par le frain. Quant
saw this I went-down on foot and took my horse by the bridle When
li Turc nous virent venir, ainsi comme Diex vout, il nous
the Turks us saw come just as God willed they us
lessierent la place là où nous deviens aler. De celle place là
left the place there where we ought go From that place there
où li Turc estoient, descendoit une roche taillie en la citei.
where the Turks were went-down a rock cut into the city
574 Quant nous fumes là et li Turc s'en furent parti,
When we were there and the Turks themselves-thence were departed
li Sarrazin qui estoient en la citei, se desconfirent et
the Saracens who were in the city themselves discomfited and
lessierent la ville à nostre gent sanz debat. Tandis que je
left the town to our people without debate While that I

estoie là, li marechaus dou Temple oy dire que je estoie
was there the marshal of-the Temple heard say that I was
en peril; si s'en vint là amont, vers moy. Tandis
in peril so himself-thence came there up toward me While
que je estoie là amont, li Alemant qui estoient en la
that I was there up the Germans who were in the
bataille au conte d'Eu vindrent après moy; et quant il
battalion of-the count of-Eu came after me and when they
virent les Turs à cheval qui s'enfuioient vers le chastel, il
saw the Turks on horse who themselves-fled toward the castle they
s'esmurent pour aler après aus; et je lour dis: «Signour
themselves-set-out for to-go after them and I to-them said Lords
vous ne faites pas bien; car nous soumes là où on nous
you not do at-all well for we are there where one us
a commandei, et vous alez outre commandement.»
has commanded and you go beyond command

Joinville in Danger, and the Dead of Sidon

LIV

The Germans chase recklessly up toward the castle of Subeibe and are beaten back among the rocks. Joinville's sergeants take fright, and John of Bussey is shot dead before him. Oliver of Termes leads them out by feigning a march on Damascus and burning the threshed grain. At Sidon they find the king burying the dead with his own hands, carrying the rotting bodies without holding his nose. The count of Eu breaks Joinville's pots and sets a bear among his hens.

Li chastiaus qui siet desus la citei a non Subeibe, et 575
The castle which sits above the city has name Subeibe and
siet bien demie-lieue haut es montaignes de Liban; et
sits fully half-league high in-the mountains of Lebanon and

li tertres qui monte ou chastel est peuplez de grosses
the hill which climbs to-the castle is peopled with big
roches aussi grosses comme huges. Quant li Alemant virent
rocks as big as chests When the Germans saw
que il chassoient à folie, il s'en revindrent ariere.
that they chased in folly they themselves-thence came-back back
Quant li Sarrazin virent ce, il lour coururent sus à pié,
When the Saracens saw this they on-them ran upon on foot
et lour donnoient de sus les roches grans cos de lour
and to-them gave from upon the rocks great blows with their
maces, et lour arachoient les couvertures de lour chevaus.
maces and from-them tore the coverings of their horses
576 Quant nostre serjant virent le meschief, qui estoient avec nous,
When our sergeants saw the hardship who were with us
il se commencierent à effreer; et je lour dis que se il
they themselves began to take-fright and I to-them said that if they
s'en aloient, que je les feroie geter hors des gaiges
themselves-thence went that I them would-have cast out of-the wages
le roy à touz jours mais. Et il me distrent: «Sire, li jeus
(of-)the king for all days more And they me said Lord the game
nous est mal partis; car vous estes à cheval, si vous enfuirés; et
to-us is ill divided for you are on horse so you will-flee and
nous soumes à pié, si nous occirront li Sarrazin.» Et je lour
we are on foot so us will-kill the Saracens And I to-them
dis: «Signour, je vous asseur que je ne m'enfuirai pas; car je
said Lords I you assure that I not myself-will-flee at-all for I
demourrai à pié avec vous.» Je descendi et envoiai mon cheval
will-remain on foot with you I went-down and sent my horse
avec les Templiers, qui estoient bien une arbalestrée darieres.
with the Templars who were fully a crossbow-shot behind

Au revenir que li Alemant fesoient, li Sarrazin ferirent un 577
At-the returning that the Germans made the Saracens struck a
mien chevalier, qui avoit non mon signour Jehan de Bussey,
my knight who had name my lord John of Bussey
d'un carrel parmi la gorge; et chéi mors tout devant moy.
with-a quarrel through the throat and he-fell dead all before me
Mes sires Hugues d'Escoz, cui niez il estoit, qui mout bien
My lord Hugh of-Écot whose nephew he was who very well
se prouva en la sainte Terre, me dist: «Sire, venés nous
himself proved in the holy Land me said Lord come us
aidier pour reporter mon neveu là aval. — Mal dehait
to-help for to-carry-back my nephew there below Ill hap
ait, fiz-je, qui vous y aidera! car vous estes alei là-sus
may-have said-I who you there will-help for you are gone up-there
sanz mon commandement: se il vous en est mescheu, ce
without my command if it you thereof is mischanced this
est à bon droit. Reportés-le l'aval en la longaingne; car je ne
is by good right Carry-him-back down into the latrine for I not
partirai de ci jusques à tant que l'on me revenra querre.»
will-depart from here until to so-much that one me will-come-back to-seek
Quant mes sires Jehans de Valenciennes oy le meschief là où 578
When my lord John of Valenciennes heard the hardship there where
nous estiens, il vint à mon signour Olivier de Termes et à ces
we were he came to my lord Oliver of Termes and to these
autres chieveteins de la corte laingue, et lour dist: «Signour,
other chieftains of the short tongue and to-them said Lords
je vous pri et commant, de par le roy, que vous m'aidiés
I you pray and command on behalf-of the king that you me-help
à querre le seneschal.» Tandis que il se pourchassa ainsinc,
to seek the seneschal While that he himself busied thus
mes sires Guillaumes de Biaumont vint à li et li dist:
my lord William of Beaumont came to him and to-him said

«Vous vous traveilliés pour nient; car li seneschaus est mors.»
You yourself labor for nothing for the seneschal is dead
Et il respondi: «Ou de sa mort ou de sa vie dirai-je nouvelles
And he answered Either of his death or of his life will-tell-I tidings
au roy.» Lors il s'esmut et vint vers nous, là où nous
to-the king Then he himself-set-out and came toward us there where we
estiens montei en la montaigne; et maintenant que il vint à
were climbed on the mountain and as-soon as he came to
nous, il me manda que je venisse parler à li; et si fis-je.
us he me sent-word that I should-come to-speak to him and so did-I
579 Lors me dist Oliviers de Termes que nous estiens illec en grant
Then me said Oliver of Termes that we were there in great
peril; car se nous descendiens par où nous estiens montei, nous
peril for if we went-down by where we were climbed we
ne le pourriens faire sanz grant perte, pour ce que la coste
not it could do without great loss for this that the slope
estoit trop male, et li Sarrazin nous descenderoient sur les cors:
was very bad and the Saracens us would-come-down on the bodies
«mais se vous me voulés croire, je vous deliverrai sanz perdre.»
but if you me wish to-believe I you will-deliver without losing
Et je li diz que il devisast ce que il vourroit, et je le feroie.
And I to-him said that he should-devise that which he would-wish and I it would-do
580 «Je vous dirai, fist-il, comment nous eschaperons. Nous en
I to-you will-tell said-he how we will-escape We thence
irons, fist-il, tout ce pendant aussi comme se nous deviens aler
will-go said-he all this slope just as if we ought go
vers Damas; et li Sarrazin qui là sont, cuideront que nous
toward Damascus and the Saracens who there are will-think that we
les vueillons penre par darieres. Et quant nous serons en
them wish to-take by behind And when we will-be in
ces plainnes, nous ferrons des esperons entour la citei, et
these plains we will-strike with-the spurs around the city and

averons avant passei le ru que il puissent venir vers nous;
will-have before crossed the brook that they may come toward us
et si lour ferons grant doumaige: car nous lour metterons
and so to-them we-will-do great harm for we to-them will-put
le feu en ces formens batus qui sont enmi ces chans.»
the fire into these wheats threshed which are amid these fields
Nous feimes aussi comme il nous devisa; et il fist penre 581
We did just as he us devised and he had taken
canes de quoy l'on fait ces fleutes, et fist mettre charbons
reeds of which one makes these flutes and had put coals
dedans, et fichier dedans les fourmens batus. Et ainsi nous
within and thrust within the wheats threshed And thus us
ramena Diex à sauvetei, par le consoil Olivier de Termes.
brought-back God to safety by the counsel (of-)Oliver of Termes
Et sachiez quant nous venimes à la heberge là où
And know when we came to the lodging there where
nostre gent estoient, nous les trouvames touz desarmés; car
our people were we them found all disarmed for
il n'i ot onques nul qui s'en preist garde. Ainsi
it not-there had ever anyone who himself-thereof took heed Thus
revenimes l'endemain à Sayete, là où li roys estoit.
we-came-back the-next-day to Sidon there where the king was
Nous trouvames que li roys ses cors avoit fait enfouir les 582
We found that the king his body had had buried the
crestiens que li Sarrazin avoient occis, aussi comme il est desus
Christians whom the Saracens had killed just as it is above
dit; et il-meismes ses cors portoit les cors pourris et touz puans
said and he-himself his body carried the bodies rotted and all stinking
pour mettre en terre es fosses, que jà ne se estoupast,
for to-put in ground in-the ditches for ever not himself stopped-his-nose
et li autre se estoupoient. Il fist venir ouvriers de toutes
and the others themselves stopped-their-noses He had come workmen from all

pars, et se remist à fermer la citei de haus murs et de
sides and himself put-again to fortify the city with high walls and with
grans tours. Et quant nous venimes en l'ost, nous trouvames
great towers And when we came into the-host we found
que il nous ot nos places mesurées, il ses cors, là où nous
that he for-us had our places measured he his body there where we
logeriens: la moie place il prist delez la place le conte d'Eu,
would-lodge the my place he took beside the place (of-)the count of-Eu
pour ce que il savoit que li cuens d'Eu amoit ma compaignie.
for this that he knew that the count of-Eu loved my company
583 Je vous conterai des jeus que li cuens d'Eu nous fesoit. Je
I to-you will-tell of-the games that the count of-Eu us made I
avoie fait une maison là où je mangoie, je et mi chevalier,
had made a house there where I ate I and my knights
à la clartei de l'uis. Or estoit l'uis devers le conte d'Eu; et
by the brightness of the-door Now was the-door toward the count of-Eu and
il qui mout estoit soutils, fist une petite bible que il getoit
he who very was subtle made a little catapult which he cast
ens, et fesoit espier quant nous estiens assis au mangier, et
within and had spy when we were seated at-the eating and
dressoit sa bible dou lonc de nostre table, et la faisoit geter,
set-up his catapult along-the length of our table and it had cast
et nous brisoit nos pos et nos voirres. Je m'estoie garniz de
and us broke our pots and our glasses I myself-was provided with
gelines et de chapons; et je ne sai qui li avoit donnei
hens and with capons and I not know who to-him had given
une joene ourse, laquel il lessoit aler à mes gelines; et en
a young she-bear which he let go at my hens and thereof
avoit plus tost tuei une douzainne que l'on ne venist illec;
had more soon killed a dozen than one not should-come there
et la femme qui les gardoit batoit l'ourse de sa quenoille.
and the woman who them kept beat the-she-bear with her distaff

Baghdad Taken, and a Clerk Taken for an Assassin

LV

Merchants report that the Tartar king has taken Baghdad by treachery: he lured out the caliph's great men, beheaded them, took the city, and starved the caliph in an iron cage, mocking him with his treasure. Riding out with the king, Joinville hears mass at a chapel; fearing that the gaunt clerk serving it is an Assassin, he carries the peace to the king himself. The king complains of it to the legate, who says Joinville did well.

Tandis que li roys fermoit Sayete, vindrent marcheant en 584
While that the king fortified Sidon came merchants into
l'ost, qui nous distrent et conterent que li roys des
the-host who us said and told that the king of-the
Tartarins avoit prise la citei de Baudas et l'apostole des
Tartars had taken the city of Baghdad and the-pope of-the
Sarrazins, qui estoit sires de la ville, lequel on appeloit
Saracens who was lord of the town which one called
le calife de Baudas. La maniere comment il pristrent la
the caliph of Baghdad The manner how they took the
citei de Baudas et le calife, nous conterent li marcheant;
city of Baghdad and the caliph us told the merchants
et la maniere fu teix, car quant il orent la citei dou
and the manner was such for when they had the city of-the
calife assegie, il manda au calife que il feroit volentiers
caliph besieged he sent-word to-the caliph that he would-make willingly
mariaige de ses enfans et des siens; et li consaus dou
marriage of his children and of-the his and the council of-the
calife li louerent que il s'acordast au mariaige.
caliph him advised that he himself-should-agree to-the marriage

585 Et li roys des Tartarins li manda que il li envoiast
And the king of-the Tartars to-him sent-word that he to-him should-send
jusques à quarante personnes de son consoil et des plus
until to forty persons of his council and of-the most
grans gens, pour jurer le mariaige; et li califes si fist.
great people for to-swear the marriage and the caliph so did
Encore li manda li roys des Tartarins que il li envoiast
Further to-him sent-word the king of-the Tartars that he to-him should-send
quarante des plus riches et des meillours homes que il
forty of-the most rich and of-the best men that he
eust; et li califes si fist. A la tierce foiz, li manda que
had and the caliph so did At the third time to-him he-sent-word that
il li envoiast quarante des meillours de sa compaignie; et
he to-him should-send forty of-the best of his company and
il si fist. Quant li roys des Tartarins vit que il ot touz les
he so did When the king of-the Tartars saw that he had all the
chievetains de la ville, il s'apensa que li menus peuples de
chieftains of the town he bethought-himself that the small people of
la ville ne s'averoit pooir de deffendre sanz gouvernours.
the town not itself-would-have power to defend without governors
Il fist à touz les six vins riches homes coper les testes,
He had to all the six score rich men cut the heads
et puis fist assaillir la ville et la prist, et le calife aussi.
and then had assailed the town and it took and the caliph also
586 Pour couvrir sa desloiautei, et pour geter le blasme sur le
For to-cover his disloyalty and for to-cast the blame on the
calife de la prise de la ville, que il avoit faite, il fist penre
caliph for the taking of the town that he had made he had taken
le calife et le fist mettre en une caige de fer, et le fist
the caliph and him had put into a cage of iron and him had
jeuner tant comme l'on puet faire home sanz mourir; et
fast as-long as one can make man without dying and

puis li demanda se il avoit fain. Et li califes dist que
then him asked if he had hunger And the caliph said that
oyl; car ce n'estoit pas merveille. Lors li fist aporter li
yes for this not-was at-all marvel Then to-him had brought the
roys des Tartarins un grant taillour d'or chargié de joiaus
king of-the Tartars a great platter of-gold loaded with jewels
à pierres preciouses, et li dist: «Cognois-tu ces joiaus?»
with stones precious and to-him said Knowest-thou these jewels
Et li califes respondi que oyl: «Il furent mien.» Et il
And the caliph answered that yes They were mine And he
li demanda se il les amoit bien; et il respondi que oyl.
him asked if he them loved well and he answered that yes
«Puisque tu les amoies tant, fist li roys des Tartarins, 587
Since thou them lovedst so-much said the king of-the Tartars
or pren de celle part que tu vourras, et manju.» Li
now take of that part that thou wilt-wish and eat The
califes li respondi que il ne pourroit, car ce n'estoit pas
caliph to-him answered that he not could for this not-was at-all
viande que l'on peust mangier. Lors li dist li roys des
food that one could eat Then to-him said the king of-the
Tartarins: «Or peus veoir maintenant ta deffense; car se
Tartars Now canst-thou see now thy defense for if
tu eusses donnei ton tresor (dont tu ne te peus à ceste
thou hadst given thy treasure with-which thou not thyself canst at this
heure aidier) aus gens d'armes, tu te fusses bien
hour help to-the people of-arms thou thyself wouldst-have-been well
deffendus à nous par ton tresor, se tu l'eusses despendu,
defended against us by thy treasure if thou it-hadst spent
qui ou plus grant besoing te faut que tu eusses onques.»
which in-the most great need thee fails that thou hadst ever

588 Tandis que li roys fermoit Sayete, je alai a sa messe
While that the king fortified Sidon I went to his mass
au point dou jour, et il me dist que je l'atendisse,
at-the point of-the day and he me said that I him-should-await
que il vouloit chevauchier; et je si fis. Quant nous fumes
for he wished to-ride and I so did When we were
aus chans, nous venimes par devant un petit moustier, et
in-the fields we came by before a little minster and
veismes, tout à cheval, un prestre qui chantoit la messe. Li
saw all on horse a priest who sang the mass The
roys me dist que cis moustiers estoit fais en l'onnour dou
king me said that this minster was made in the-honor of-the
miracle que Diex fist dou dyable que il geta hors dou cors
miracle that God did of-the devil that he cast out of-the body
de la fille à la veuve femme; et il me dist que se je
of the daughter to the widow woman and he me said that if I
vouloie, que il orroit léans la messe que li prestres avoit
wished that he would-hear in-there the mass that the priest had
commencie; et je li dis que il me sembloit bon à faire.
begun and I to-him said that it me seemed good to do
589 Quant ce vint à la paiz donner, je vi qui li clers qui
When this came to the peace giving I saw that the clerk who
aidoit la messe à chanter, estoit grans, noirs, megres et
helped the mass to sing was big black lean and
hericiés, et doutai que se il portoit au roy la paiz, que
bristling and feared that if he bore to-the king the peace that
espoir c'estoit uns Assacis, uns mauvais hom, et pourroit
perhaps this-was an Assassin a wicked man and could
occirre le roy. Je alai penre la paiz au clerc et la portai
kill the king I went to-take the peace from-the clerk and it bore
au roy. Quant la messe fu chantée et nous fumes montei
to-the king When the mass was sung and we were mounted

sus nos chevaus, nous trouvames le legat es chans; et li
on our horses we found the legate in-the fields and the
roys s'aprocha de li et m'appela, et dist au legat: «Je
king himself-drew-near to him and me-called and said to-the legate I
me pleing à vous dou seneschal, qui m'apporta la paiz,
myself complain to you of-the seneschal who me-brought the peace
et ne vout que li povres clers la m'aportast.»
and not wished that the poor clerk it me-should-bring
Et je diz au legat la raison pourquoy je l'avoie fait; et li legas 590
And I told to-the legate the reason why I it-had done and the legate
dist que j'avoie mout bien fait. Et li roys respondi: «Vraiement
said that I-had very well done And the king answered Truly
non fist.» Grant descort y ot d'aus dous, et je en demourai
not did-he Great discord there had of-them two and I thereof remained
en paiz. Et ces nouvelles vous ai-je contées, pour ce que vous
in peace And these tidings to-you have-I told for this that you
véez la grant humilitei de li. De ce miracle que Diex fist à la
may-see the great humility of him Of this miracle that God did to the
fille de la veuve femme parle li Evangiles, qui dit que Diex
daughter of the widow woman speaks the Gospel which says that God
estoit, quant il fist le miracle, in parte Tyri et Syndonis; car
was when he did the miracle in parts (of-)Tyre and (of-)Sidon for
lors estoit la cités de Sur que je vous ai nommée, appelée Tyri;
then was the city of Tyre which I to-you have named called Tyri
et la cités de Sayette que je vous ai devant nommée, Sydoine.
and the city of Sidon which I to-you have before named Sidon

The Queen at Sidon

LVI

Envoys of the great Comnenus bring the king gifts and ask for a maiden of his palace as their lord's wife; he sends them to his cousin, the emperor of Constantinople. The queen lands at Sidon, and Joinville goes to meet her; in five years, he notes, the king has never spoken to him of his wife and children. On All Saints' Day the lords at his house each take a son of a poor knight; the count of Eu takes Joinville's, and later marries and knights him.

591 Tandis que li roys fermoit Sayete, vindrent à li li messaige
While that the king fortified Sidon came to him the messengers
à un grant signour de la parfonde Grece, liquex se fesoit
of a great lord of the deep Greece which himself had
appeler le grant Commenie et signour de Trafentesi. Au
called the great Comnenus and lord of Trebizond To-the
roy apporterent divers joiaus à present. Entre les autres li
king they-brought diverse jewels as present Among the others to-him
apporterent ars de cor, dont les coches entroient à vis
they-brought bows of horn of-which the nocks entered by screw
dedans les ars; et quant on les sachoit hors, si trouvoit l'on
into the bows and when one them drew out so found one
que il estoient dehors mout bien tranchant et mout bien fait.
that they were outside very well sharp and very well made
592 Au roy requistrent que il li envoiast une pucelle de
Of-the king they-asked that he to-him should-send a maiden of
son palais, et il la penroit à femme. Et li roys respondi
his palace and he her would-take to wife And the king answered
que il n'en avoit nulles amenées d'outre mer; et lour
that he not-thereof had any brought from-over sea and them
loa que il alassent en Constantinnoble à l'empereour,
advised that they should-go to Constantinople to the-emperor

qui estoit cousins le roy, et li requeissent que il lour
who was cousin (of-)the king and him should-ask that he them
baillast une femme pour lour signour, tel qui fust dou
should-give a wife for their lord such who should-be of-the
lignaige le roy et dou sien. Et ce fist-il, pour ce que
lineage (of-)the king and of-the his And this did-he for this that
li emperieres eust aliance à cestui grant riche home
the emperor might-have alliance with this great rich man
contre Vatache, qui lors estoit emperiere des Griex.
against Vatatzes who then was emperor of-the Greeks
La royne, qui nouvelement estoit relevée de dame Blanche, 593
The queen who newly was risen from lady Blanche
dont elle avoit géu à Jaffe, ariva à Sayette; car elle
of-whom she had lain-in at Jaffa arrived at Sidon for she
estoit venue par mer. Quant j'oy dire qu'elle estoit venue,
was come by sea When I-heard say that-she was come
je me levay de devant le roy et alai encontre li, et
I myself rose from before the king and went to-meet her and
l'amenai jusques ou chastel.
her-brought until to-the castle
Et quant je reving au roy, qui estoit en sa chapelle, il me 594
And when I came-back to-the king who was in his chapel he me
demanda se la royne et li enfant estoient haitié; et je li
asked if the queen and the children were well and I to-him
diz oil. Et il me dist: «Je soy bien quant vous vous levates
said yes And he me said I knew well when you yourself rose
de devant moy, que vous aliés encontre la royne; et pour
from before me that you went to-meet the queen and for
ce je vous ai fait atendre au sermon.» Et ces choses vous
this I you have made wait at-the sermon And these things to-you
ramentoif-je, pour ce que j'avoie jà estei cinq ans entour li,
recall-I for this that I-had already been five years about him

que encore ne m'avoit-il parlei de la royne ne de ses enfans, que
that still not me-had-he spoken of the queen nor of his children that
je oïsse, ne à autrui; et ce n'estoit pas bone maniere, si comme
I heard nor to others and this not-was at-all good manner so as
il me semble, d'estre estrange de sa femme et de ses enfans.
it me seems of-being strange to his wife and to his children
595 Le jour de la Touz-Sains, je semons touz les riches homes
The day of the All-Saints I invited all the rich men
de l'ost en mon hostel, qui estoit sur la mer; et lors uns
of the-host in my lodging which was on the sea and then a
povres chevaliers ariva en une barge, et sa femme et quatre
poor knight arrived in a barge and his wife and four
fil que il avoient. Je les fiz venir mangier en mon hostel.
sons that they had I them had come to-eat in my lodging
Quant nous eumes mangié, je appelai les riches homes qui
When we had eaten I called the rich men who
léans estoient, et lour diz: «Fesons une grant aumosne,
in-there were and to-them said Let-us-make a great alms
et deschargons cest povre home de ses enfants; et preingne
and let-us-unload this poor man of his children and let-take
chascuns le sien, et je en penrai un.» Chascuns en prist un,
each the his and I thereof will-take one Each thereof took one
et se combatoient de l'avoir. Quant li povres chevaliers
and themselves fought of him-to-have When the poor knight
vit ce, il et sa femme, il commencierent à plorer de joie.
saw this he and his wife they began to weep for joy
596 Or avint ainsi, que quant li cuens d'Eu revint de mangier
Now happened so that when the count of-Eu came-back from eating
de l'ostel le roy, il vint veoir les riches homes qui estoient
at the-lodging (of-)the king he came to-see the rich men who were
en mon hostel, et me tolli le mien enfant, qui estoit de
in my lodging and from-me took the my child who was of

l'aage de douze ans, liquex servi le conte si bien et si loialement
the-age of twelve years which served the count so well and so loyally
que, quant nous revenimes en France, li cuens le maria et le
that when we came-back to France the count him married and him
fist chevalier. Et toutes les foiz que je estoie là où li cuens
made knight And all the times that I was there where the count
estoit, à peinne se pooit departir de moy, et me disoit:
was with pain himself could depart from me and me said
«Sire, Diex le vous rende! car à ceste honnour m'avez-vous
Lord God it to-you render for to this honor me-have-you
mis.» De ses autres trois freres ne sai-je que il devindrent.
put Of his other three brothers not know-I what they became

Joinville's Pilgrimage, and the Death of Queen Blanche

LVII

Joinville goes on pilgrimage to Our Lady of Tortosa, and the king asks him to buy a hundred camlets for the Cordeliers. The queen, taking his gift of four camlets for relics, kneels to the knight who brings them. News comes that Blanche is dead; for two days no one can speak to the king, and Joinville rebukes his grief. Queen Margaret weeps, she says, for the king's grief and her daughter, not for Blanche, who had kept the king from her.

Je priai au roy que il me lessast aler en pelerinaige à Nostre 597
I prayed to-the king that he me should-let go in pilgrimage to Our
Dame de Tortouze, là où il avoit mout grant pelerinaige,
Lady of Tortosa there where it had very great pilgrimage
pour ce que c'est li premiers autels qui onques fust fais en
for this that this-is the first altar that ever was made in
l'onnour de la Mere Dieu sur terre. Et y fesoit Notre
the-honor of the Mother (of-)God on earth And there did Our

Dame mout grans miracles; dont entre les autres i avoit
Lady very great miracles of-which among the others there had
un hors dou senz qui avoit le dyable ou cors. Là où sui
one out of-the sense who had the devil in-the body There where his
ami, qui l'avoient léans amenei, prioient la Mere Dieu qu'elle
friends who him-had in-there brought prayed the Mother (of-)God that-she
li donnast santei, li ennemis, qui estoit dedans, lour
to-him should-give health the enemy who was within to-them
respondi: «Nostre Dame n'est pas ci, ainçois est en Egypte,
answered Our Lady not-is at-all here rather is in Egypt
pour aidier au roy de France et aus crestiens qui aujourd'ui
for to-help to-the king of France and to-the Christians who today
ariveront en la terre, il à pié, contre la paennime à cheval.»
will-arrive in the land they on foot against the heathendom on horse

598 Li jours fu mis en escrit et fu aportez au legat, qui
The day was put in writing and was brought to-the legate who
meismes le me dist de sa bouche. Et soiés certeins qu'elle
himself it me said with his mouth And be certain that-she
nous aida; et nous eust plus aidié se nous ne l'eussiens
us aided and us would-have more aided if we not her-had
couroucie, et li et son Fil, si comme j'ai dit devant.
angered both her and her Son so as I-have said before

599 Li roys me donna congié d'aler là, et me dist à grant consoil
The king me gave leave to-go there and me said in great counsel
que je li achetasse cent camelins de diverses colours,
that I him should-buy a-hundred camlets of diverse colors
pour donner aus Cordeliers quant nous venriens en France.
for to-give to-the Cordeliers when we would-come to France
Lors m'assouaga li cuers; car je pensai bien que il n'i
Then me-soothed the heart for I thought well that he not-there
demourroit gueres. Quant nous venimes à Triple, mi chevalier
would-remain much When we came to Tripoli my knights

me demanderent que je vouloie faire des camelins, et que je
me asked what I wished to-do with-the camlets and that I
lour deisse: «Espoir, fesoie-je, si les robai-je pour gaaingnier.»
them should-say Perhaps said-I so them robbed-I for to-gain
Li princes (que Diex absoille!) nous fist si grant joie 600
The prince whom God absolve us made so great joy
et si grant honour comme il pot onques; et eust
and so great honor as he could ever and would-have
donnei à moy et à mes chevaliers grans dons, se nous
given to me and to my knights great gifts if we
les vousissiens avoir pris. Nous ne vousimes riens penre,
them had-wished to-have taken We not wished anything to-take
ne mais que de ses reliques, desquex je aportai au roy,
nor but that of his relics of-which I brought to-the king
avec les camelins que je li avoie achetez.
with the camlets that I for-him had bought
Derechief, je envoiai à ma dame la royne quatre camelins. 601
Further I sent to my lady the queen four camlets
Li chevaliers qui les luy presenta, les porta entorteilliés
The knight who them to-her presented them carried wrapped
en une touaille blanche. Quant la royne le vit entrer en
in a cloth white When the queen him saw enter into
la chambre où elle estoit, si s'agenoilla contre li, et li
the chamber where she was so herself-knelt toward him and the
chevaliers se ragenoilla contre li aussi; et la royne li
knight himself knelt-again toward her also and the queen to-him
dist: «Levez sus, sire chevaliers; vous ne vous devez pas
said Rise up lord knight you not yourself ought at-all
agenoillier, qui portés les reliques.» Mais li chevaliers dist:
kneel who bear the relics But the knight said
«Dame, ce ne sont pas reliques, ains sont camelin que
Lady these not are at-all relics rather are camlets which

mes sires vous envoie.» Quant la royne oy ce, et ses
my lord to-you sends When the queen heard this and her
damoiselles, si commencierent à rire; et la roine dist à mon
damsels so they-began to laugh and the queen said to my
chevalier: «Dites à vostre signour que maus jours li soit
knight Say to your lord that ill days to-him be
donnez, quant il m'a fait agenoillier contre ses camelins.»
given when he me-has made kneel toward his camlets
602 Tandis que li roys estoit à Sayette, li apporta l'on une pierre
While that the king was at Sidon to-him brought one a stone
qui se levoit par escales, la plus merveillouse dou monde; car
which itself lifted by flakes the most marvelous of-the world for
quant l'on levoit une escale, l'on trouvoit entre les dous pierres
when one lifted a flake one found between the two stones
la forme d'un poisson de mer. De pierre estoit li poissons;
the form of-a fish of sea Of stone was the fish
mais il ne failloit rien en sa fourme, ne yex, ne areste, ne
but it not lacked anything in its form neither eyes nor bone nor
colour, ne autre chose que il ne fust autreteix comme s'il fust
color nor other thing that it not were just-such as if-it were
vis. Li rois me donna une pierre, et trouvai une tanche dedans,
alive The king me gave a stone and I-found a tench within
de brune colour, et de tel façon comme tanche doit estre.
of brown color and of such fashion as tench ought be
603 A Sayette vindrent les nouvelles au roy que sa mere estoit
At Sidon came the tidings to-the king that his mother was
morte. Si grant duel en mena, que de dous jours on
dead So great grief thereof he-made that for two days one
ne pot onques parler à li. Après ce, m'envoia querre par
not could ever speak to him After this me-he-sent to-seek by
un vallet de sa chambre. Quant je ving devant li en sa
a varlet of his chamber When I came before him in his

chambre, là où il estoit touz seux, et il me vit, il estandi
chamber there where he was all alone and he me saw he stretched
ses bras et me dist: «A! seneschaus, j'ai pardue ma mere!»
his arms and me said Ah seneschal I-have lost my mother
— «Sire, je ne m'en merveil pas, fis-je, que à mourir 604
Lord I not myself-thereof marvel at-all said-I for to die
avoit-elle; mais je me merveil que vous, qui estes uns saiges
had-she but I myself marvel that you who are a wise
hom, avez menei si grant duel; car vous savez que li Saiges
man have made so great grief for you know that the Wise-man
dit, que mesaise que li om ait ou cuer, ne li doit parer
says that unease that the man may-have in-the heart not him ought show
ou visaige; car cil qui le fait, en fait liez ses ennemis et en
in-the face for he who it does thereof makes glad his enemies and in
mesaise ses amis.» Mout de biaus servises en fist faire outre
unease his friends Many of fair services thereof he-had made over
mer; et après il envoia en France un sommier chargié de
sea and after he sent to France a sumpter-horse loaded with
lettres de prieres aus esglises, pour ce que il priassent pour li.
letters of prayers to-the churches for this that they should-pray for her
Ma dame Marie de Vertus, mout bone dame et mout sainte 605
My lady Mary of Vertus very good lady and very holy
femme, me vint dire que la royne menoit mout grant duel, et
woman me came to-say that the queen made very great grief and
me pria que j'alasse vers li pour la reconforter. Et quant
me prayed that I-should-go toward her for her to-comfort And when
ge ving là, je trovai que elle plouroit, et je li dis que voir
I came there I found that she wept and I to-her said that true
dit cil qui dit que l'on ne doit femme croire: «Car ce estoit
says he who says that one not ought woman believe For this was
la femme que vous plus haiés qui est morte, et vous en
the woman whom you most hated who is dead and you thereof

menez tel duel!» Et elle me dist que ce n'estoit pas pour li
make such grief And she me said that this not-was at-all for her
que elle ploroit, mais pour la mesaise que li roys avoit dou
that she wept but for the unease that the king had from-the
duel que il menoit, et pour sa fille (qui puis fu royne
grief that he made and for her daughter who after was queen
de Navarre), qui estoit demourée en la garde des homes.
of Navarre who was remained in the keeping of-the men
606 Les durtez que la royne Blanche fist à la royne Marguerite
The harshnesses that the queen Blanche did to the queen Margaret
furent tiex, que la royne Blanche ne vouloit soufrir, à son
were such that the queen Blanche not wished to-suffer at her
pooir, que ses fiz fust en la compaingnie sa femme, ne
power that her son should-be in the company (of-)his wife nor
mais que le soir quant il aloit couchier avec li. Li hostiex
but that the evening when he went to-lie with her The lodging
là où il plaisoit miex à demourer, c'estoit à Pontoise,
there where it pleased best to dwell this-was at Pontoise
entre le roy et la royne, pour ce que la chambre le
between the king and the queen for this that the chamber (of-)the
roy estoit desus, et la chambre la royne estoit desous.
king was above and the chamber (of-)the queen was below
607 Et avoient ainsi acordei lour besoigne, que il tenoient lour
And they-had thus arranged their business that they held their
parlement en une viz qui descendoit de l'une chambre
converse on a stair which went-down from the-one chamber
en l'autre; et avoient lour besoignes si atiries, que quant
to the-other and had their affairs so arranged that when
li huissier véoient venir la royne en la chambre le roy
the ushers saw come the queen into the chamber (of-)the king
son fil, il batoient les huis de lour verges, et li roys
her son they beat the doors with their rods and the king

s'en venoit courant en sa chambre, pour ce que sa
himself-thence came running into his chamber for this that his
mere l'i trouvast; et ainsi refesoient li huissier de la
mother him-there should-find and thus did-again the ushers of the
chambre la royne Marguerite quant la royne Blanche y
chamber (of-)the queen Margaret when the queen Blanche there
venoit, pour ce qu'elle y trouvast la royne Marguerite.
came for this that-she there should-find the queen Margaret
Une foiz estoit li roys decoste la royne sa femme, et estoit 608
One time was the king beside the queen his wife and she-was
en trop grant peril de mort, pour ce qu'elle estoit blecie d'un
in very great peril of death for this that-she was injured by-a
enfant qu'elle avoit eu. Là vint la royne Blanche, et prist
child that-she had had There came the queen Blanche and took
son fil par la main, et li dist: «Venés-vous-en, vous ne
her son by the hand and to-him said Come-yourself-away you not
faites riens ci.» Quant la royne Marguerite vit que la mere
do anything here When the queen Margaret saw that the mother
emmenoit le roy, elle s'escria: «Hélas! vous ne me lairés veoir
led-away the king she herself-cried Alas you not me will-let see
mon signour ne morte ne vive.» Et alors elle se pasma, et
my lord neither dead nor alive And then she herself swooned and
cuida l'on qu'elle fust morte; et li roys, qui cuida qu'elle se
thought one that-she were dead and the king who thought that-she herself
mourust, retourna; et à grant peinne la remist l'on à point.
was-dying returned and with great pain her put-again one to point

The King Resolves to Return

LVIII

The legate tells Joinville the king will go home at Easter, and weeps at leaving them for the court of Rome; once he says God must avenge Acre's sins in its people's blood. The king sends Joinville armed to escort the queen and her children to Tyre. The patriarch and barons tell the king he has walled Sidon, Caesarea, and Jaffa, that staying can do no more good. Through Lent he readies thirteen ships, and on Saint Mark's eve he and the queen embark.

609 En ce point que la cités de Sayete estoit jà presque
At this point that the city of Sidon was already almost
toute fermée, li roy fist faire plusours processions en l'ost,
all fortified the king had made several processions in the-host
et en la fin des processions fesoit prier li legas que Diex
and at the end of-the processions had pray the legate that God
ordenast la besoigne le roy à sa volontei, par quoy
should-ordain the business (of-)the king at his will by which
li roys en feist le meillour au grei Dieu, ou de
the king thereof should-do the best to-the pleasure (of-)God either of
raler en France, ou de demourer là.
going-back to France or of remaining there
610 Après ce que les processions furent faites, li roys m'apela
After this that the processions were made the king me-called
là où je me séoie avec les riches homes dou pays, de
there where I myself sat with the rich men of-the country of
là en un prael, et me fit le dos tourner vers aus. Lors
there in a meadow and me had the back turn toward them Then
me dist li legas: «Seneschaus, li roys se loe mout de
me said the legate Seneschal the king himself praises much of
vostre servise, et mout volentiers vous pourchaceroit vostre
your service and very willingly for-you would-procure your

profit et vostre honnour; et pour vostre cuer, me dist-il,
profit and your honor and for your heart me said-he
mettre à aise, me dist-il que je vous deisse que il a atirie
to-put at ease me said-he that I to-you should-say that he has arranged
sa besoingne pour aler en France à ceste Pasque qui vient.»
his business for to-go to France at this Easter which comes
Et je li respondi: «Diex l'en lait faire sa volentei!»
And I to-him answered God him-thereof let do his will
Lors se leva li legas et me dist que je le convoiasse 611
Then himself rose the legate and me said that I him should-escort
jusques à son hostel; ce que je feis. Lors s'enclost en sa
until to his lodging this which I did Then himself-enclosed in his
garderobe, entre li et moy sanz plus, et me mist mes dous
wardrobe between him and me without more and me put my two
mains entre les seues, et commensa à plorer mout durement;
hands between the his and began to weep very hard
et quant il pot parler, si me dist: «Seneschaus, je suis mout
and when he could speak so me said Seneschal I am very
liés, si en rent graces à Dieu, de ce que li roys, vous et
glad so thereof render thanks to God of this that the king you and
li autre pelerin eschapent dou grant peril là où vous avez
the other pilgrims escape from-the great peril there where you have
estei en celle terre. Et mout sui à mesaise de cuer de ce
been in that land And much I-am in unease of heart of this
que il me convenra lessier vos saintes compaingnies, et aler
that it me will-behoove to-leave your holy companies and to-go
à la court de Rome, entre celle desloial gent qui y sont.
to the court of Rome among that disloyal people who there are
«Mais je vous dirai que je pens à faire: je pens encore à 612
But I to-you will-tell what I think to do I think still to
faire tant que je demeure un an après vous; et bé à
do so-much that I remain a year after you and intend to

despendre touz mes deniers à fermer le fors-bourc d'Acre,
spend all my pence to fortify the outer-borough of-Acre
si que je lour mousterrai tout cler que je ne report point
so that I them will-show all clear that I not carry-back at-all
d'argent; si ne me courront mie à la main.»
of-silver so not to-me they-will-run at-all to the hand
613 Je recordoie une foiz au legat dous pechiez que uns miens
I recounted one time to-the legate two sins that a my
prestres m'avoit recordez; et il me respondi en tel maniere:
priest me-had recounted and he me answered in such manner
«Nulz ne sait tant de desloiaus pechiez que l'on fait en
Anyone not knows so-many of disloyal sins that one does in
Acre, comme je faiz: dont il couvient que Diex les venge,
Acre as I do whence it behooves that God them may-avenge
en tel maniere que la cités d'Acre soit lavée dou sanc aus
in such manner that the city of-Acre be washed with-the blood of-the
habitours, et que il y vieigne après autre gent qui y
inhabitants and that it there may-come after other people who there
habiteront.» La prophecie dou preudome est averée en partie,
will-dwell The prophecy of-the worthy-man is verified in part
car la cités est bien lavée dou sanc aus habitours; mais
for the city is well washed with-the blood of-the inhabitants but
encore n'i sont pas venu cil qui y doivent habiter; et
still not-there are at-all come those who there ought dwell and
Diex les y envoit bons et tiex qu'il soient à sa volentei!»
God them there may-send good and such that-they be at his will
614 Après ces choses, m'envoya querre et me manda li roys que je
After these things me-sent to-seek and me sent-word the king that I
m'alasse armer, et mes chevaliers. Je li demandai pourquoy;
myself-should-go to-arm and my knights I him asked why
et il me dist pour mener la royne et ses enfans jeusques à
and he me said for to-lead the queen and her children until to

Sur, là où il avoit sept lieues. Je ne li repris onques la
Tyre there where it had seven leagues I not to-him took-up ever the
parole; et si estoit li commandemens si perillous: que nous
word and so was the command so perilous that we
n'aviens lors ne treves ne paiz, ne à ceus d'Egypte ne
not-had then neither truces nor peace either with those of-Egypt or
à ceus de Damas. La merci Dieu, nous y venimes tout en
with those of Damascus The mercy (of-)God we there came all in
paiz, sanz nul empeeschement et à l'anuitier, quant il nous
peace without any hindrance and at the-nightfall when it us
couvint dous foiz descendre en la terre de nos ennemis pour
behooved two times to-go-down in the land of our enemies for
faire feu et cuire viande, pour les enfans repaistre et alaitier.
to-make fire and cook food for the children to-feed and to-suckle
Quant li roys se parti de la citei de Sayete, que il 615
When the king himself departed from the city of Sidon which he
avoit fermée de grans murs et de grans tours, et de grans
had fortified with great walls and with great towers and with great
fossés curez dehors et dedans, li patriarches et li baron
ditches cleaned outside and inside the patriarch and the barons
dou païs vindrent à li, et li distrent en tel maniere:
of-the country came to him and to-him said in such manner
«Sire, vous avez fermée la citei de Sayete, et celle de Cesaire, 616
Lord you have fortified the city of Sidon and that of Caesarea
et le bourc de Jaffe, qui mout est grans profis à la sainte
and the borough of Jaffa which very is great profit to the holy
Terre; et la citei d'Acre avés mout enforcie des murs et
Land and the city of-Acre you-have much strengthened with-the walls and
des tours que vous y avez fait. Sire, nous nous soumes
with-the towers that you there have made Lord we ourselves are
regardei entre nous, que nous ne véons que desormais vostre
looked among us that we not see that henceforth your

demourée puisse tenir point de proufit au royaume de
staying may hold at-all of profit to-the realm of
Jerusalem; pour laquel chose nous vous loons et conseillons
Jerusalem for which thing we you advise and counsel
que vous alez en Acre à ce quaresme qui vient, et atiriez
that you go to Acre at this Lent which comes and arrange
vostre passaige, par quoy vous en puissés aler en France après
your passage by which you thence may go to France after
cette Pasque.» Par le consoil dou patriarche et des barons, li
this Easter By the counsel of-the patriarch and of-the barons the
roys se parti de Sayette et vint à Assur, là où la royne
king himself departed from Sidon and came to Arsuf there where the queen
estoit; et dès illec venimes à Acre à l'entrée de quaresme.
was and from there we-came to Acre at the-entry of Lent
617 Tout le quaresme, fist aréer li roys ses neis pour revenir
All the Lent had arrayed the king his ships for to-return
en France, dont il y ot treize, que neis que galies. Les
to France whereof it there had thirteen both ships and galleys The
neis et les galies furent atiries en tel maniere, que li roys
ships and the galleys were arrayed in such manner that the king
et la royne se requeillirent en lour neis la vegile de
and the queen themselves embarked in their ships the vigil of
saint-Marc après Pasques, et eumes bon vent au partir.
Saint-Mark after Easter and we-had good wind at-the departing
Le jour de la saint-Marc, me dist li roys que à celi jour
The day of the Saint-Mark me said the king that on that day
il avoit estei nez; et je li diz que encore pooit-il bien
he had been born and I to-him said that still could-he well
dire que il estoit renez ceste journée, et que assez estoit
say that he was reborn this day and that much was-he
renez quant il de celle perillouse terre eschapoit.
reborn when he from that perilous land escaped

The Ship Runs Aground

LIX

Off Cyprus the ship strikes a sandbank. All cry out, and the king lies before the Host barefoot in his shirt until the ship is afloat. Divers find part of the keel torn away, and the master mariners advise him to change ships; he asks whether they would leave it were it their own and loaded with their goods, and they say no. He refuses, since five hundred aboard would be stranded on Cyprus; Oliver of Termes, who stays on Cyprus, takes a year and a half to rejoin the king.

Le samedy, veimes l'ille de Cypre, et une montaingne qui 618
The Saturday we-saw the-isle of Cyprus and a mountain which
est en Cypre, que on appele la montaigne de la Croiz. Celi
is in Cyprus which one calls the mountain of the Cross That
samedi, leva une bruine de la terre, et descendi de la terre
Saturday rose a mist from the land and came-down from the land
sur la mer; et pour ce cuidierent nostre marinier que nous
on the sea and for this thought our mariners that we
fussiens plus loing de l'ille de Cypre que nous n'estiens,
were more far from the-isle of Cyprus than we not-were
pour ce que il véoient la montaigne par desus la bruine. Et
for this that they saw the mountain by above the mist And
pour ce firent nagier habandonnéement: dont il avint ainsi,
for this they-had row unrestrainedly whence it happened so
que nostre neis hurta à une queue de sablon qui estoit en
that our ship struck on a tail of sand which was in
la mer. Or avint ainsi, que se nous n'eussiens trouvei ce
the sea Now happened so that if we not-had found this
pou de sablon là où nous hurtames, nous eussiens hurtei
little of sand there where we struck we would-have struck

à tout plein de roches qui estoient couvertes, là où nostre
on all full of rocks which were covered there where our
neis eust estei toute esmiée, et nous tuit peril et noié.
ship would-have been all shattered and we all perished and drowned
619 Maintenant que nostre neis ot hurtei, li cris leva en la
As-soon as our ship had struck the cry rose in the
nef si grans, que chascuns crioit helas! et li marinier et
ship so great that each cried alas and the mariners and
li autre batoient lour paumes, pour ce que chascuns avoit
the others beat their palms for this that each had
poour de noier. Quant je oy ce, je me levai de mon
fear of drowning When I heard this I myself rose from my
lit, là où je gisoie, et alai ou chastel avec les mariniers.
bed there where I lay and went to-the castle with the mariners
Quant je ving là, freres Remons, qui estoit Templiers et
When I came there brother Raymond who was Templar and
maistres desus les mariniers, dist à un de ses vallez: «Giete
master over the mariners said to one of his varlets Cast
ta plommée;» et si fist-il. Et maintenant que il l'ot getée,
thy plummet and so did-he And as-soon as he it-had cast
il s'escria et dist: «Halas! nous soumes à terre.» Quant
he himself-cried and said Alas we are on ground When
freres Remons oy ce, il se dessira jusques à la courroie,
brother Raymond heard this he himself tore until to the belt
et prist à arachier sa barbe, et crier: «Ai mi, ai mi!»
and took to tear his beard and cry Ay me ay me
620 En ce point, me fist uns miens chevaliers, qui avoit non
At this point me did a my knight who had name
mon signour Jehan de Monson, peres l'abbei Guillaume
my lord John of Monson father (of-)the-abbot William
de Saint-Michiel, une grant debonnairetei, qui fu teix car
of Saint-Michael a great graciousness which was such for

il m'aporta sanz dire un mien seurcot forrei, et le me
he me-brought without speaking a my surcoat furred and it me
geta ou dos, pour ce que je n'avoie que ma cote vestue.
cast on-the back for this that I not-had but my tunic donned
Et ge li escriai et li diz: «Que ai-je à faire de
And I to-him cried and to-him said What have-I to do with
vostre seurcot, que vous m'aportez quant nous noyons?» Et
your surcoat that you me-bring when we drown And
il me dist: «Par m'ame! sire, je averoie plus chier que
he me said By my-soul lord I would-have more dear that
nous fussiens tuit naié, que ce que une maladie vous
we were all drowned than this that a sickness you
preist de froit, dont vous eussiez la mort.»
should-take from cold whereof you might-have the death
Li marinier escrierent: «Çà, la galie! pour le roy requeillir.» 621
The mariners cried Here the galley for the king to-take-up
Mais de quatre galies que li roys avoit là, il n'i ot
But of four galleys that the king had there it not-there had
onques galie qui de là s'aprochast: dont il firent mout
ever galley which from there itself-drew-near whereof they did much
que saige; car il avoit bien huit cens persones en la nef
like wise-men for it had fully eight hundred persons in the ship
qui tuit fussent sailli es galies pour lour cors garantir,
who all would-have leapt into-the galleys for their bodies to-protect
et ainsi les eussent effondées.
and thus them would-have sunk
Cil qui avoit la plommée, geta la seconde foiz, et revint à 622
He who had the plummet cast the second time and came-back to
frere Remont et li dist que la neis n'estoit mais à terre.
brother Raymond and to-him said that the ship not-was more on ground
Et lors freres Remons le ala dire au roy, qui étoit en croiz
And then brother Raymond it went to-tell to-the king who was in cross

adenz sur le pont de la nef, touz deschaus, en pure cote et
prostrate on the deck of the ship all unshod in mere tunic and
touz deschevelez (devant le cors Nostre Signour qui estoit en
all disheveled before the body (of-)Our Lord which was in
la nef), comme cil qui bien cuidoit noier. Si tost comme il fu
the ship as he who well thought to-drown So soon as it was
jours, nous veimes la roche devant nous, là où nous fussiens
day we saw the rock before us there where we would-have
hurtei se la neis ne fust adhurtée à la queue dou sablon.
struck if the ship not were run-aground on the tail of-the sand
623 L'endemain, envoia li roys querre les maistres nothonniers
The-next-day sent the king to-seek the master mariners
des neis, liquel envoierent quatre plungeours en la mer
of-the ships which sent four divers into the sea
aval. Et plungierent en la mer; ei quant il revenoient,
below And they-dived into the sea and when they came-back
li roys et li maistre nothonnier les oyoient l'un après
the king and the master mariners them heard the-one after
l'autre, en tel maniere que li uns des plongeours ne savoit
the-other in such manner that the one of-the divers not knew
ce que li autres avoit dit. Toutevoiz trouva l'on par les
that which the other had said All-the-same found one by the
quatre plungeours, que au froter que nostre neis avoit
four divers that at-the rubbing that our ship had
fait ou sablon, li sablons en avoit bien ostei quatre
made on-the sand the sand thereof had fully removed four
taises dou tyson sur quoy la neis estoit fondée.
fathoms of-the keel on which the ship was founded
624 Lors appela li roys les maistres nothonniers devant nous,
Then called the king the master mariners before us
et lour demanda quel consoil il donroient dou cop que
and them asked what counsel they would-give of-the blow that

sa neis avoit receu. Il se conseillierent ensemble, et
his ship had received They themselves took-counsel together and
loerent au roy que il se descendist de la nef là où
advised to-the king that he himself should-go-down from the ship there where
il estoit, et entrast en une autre.
he was and should-enter into an other
«Et ce consoil vous loons-nous, car nous entendons de certein 625
And this counsel to-you advise-we for we understand for certain
que tuit li ais de vostre nef sont tuit eslochié: par quoy
that all the boards of your ship are all loosened by which
nous doutons que quant vostre neis venra en la haute mer,
we fear that when your ship will-come into the high sea
que elle ne puisse soufrir les cos des ondes, qu'elle ne se
that it not can suffer the blows of-the waves that-it not itself
despiesce. Car autel avint-il quant vous venistes de France,
may-break-apart For the-same happened-it when you came from France
que une neis hurta aussi; et quant elle vint en la haute mer,
that a ship struck also and when it came into the high sea
elle ne pot soufrir les cos des ondes, ainçoiz se desrompi;
it not could suffer the blows of-the waves rather itself broke-apart
et furent tuit peri quant que il estoient en la nef, fors que
and were all perished as-many as they were in the ship except that
une femme et son enfant qui en eschaperent sur une piesce
a woman and her child who thence escaped on a piece
de la nef.» Et je vous tesmoing que il disoient voir; car je
of the ship And I to-you witness that they said true for I
vi la femme et l'enfant en l'ostel au conte de Joingny,
saw the woman and the-child in the-lodging of-the count of Joigny
en la citei de Baffe, que li cuens norrissoit pour Dieu.
in the city of Paphos whom the count nourished for God

626 Lors demanda li roys à mon signour Perron le chamberlain,
Then asked the king of my lord Peter the chamberlain
et à mon signour Gilon le Brun connestable de France, et à
and of my lord Giles the Brown constable of France and of
mon signour Gervaise d'Escrainnes, qui estoit maistres queus
my lord Gervase of-Escrennes who was master cook
le roy, et à l'arcedyacre de Nicocye, qui portoit son seel, qui
(of-)the king and of the-archdeacon of Nicosia who bore his seal who
puis fu cardonaus, et à moy, que nous li loiens de ces choses.
after was cardinal and of me what we him advised of these things
Et nous li respondimes que de toutes choses terriennes l'on
And we to-him answered that of all things earthly one
devoit croire ceus qui plus en savoient: «Dont nous vous loons,
ought believe those who most thereof knew Whence we you advise
devers nous, que vous faciez ce que li nothonnier vous loent.»
toward us that you do that which the mariners you advise
627 Lors dist li roys aus nothonniers: «Je vous demant sur vos
Then said the king to-the mariners I you ask on your
loialtés, se la neis fust vostre et elle fust chargie de vos
loyalties if the ship were yours and it were laden with your
marchandises, se vous en descenderiés.» Et il respondirent
merchandise if you thence would-go-down And they answered
tuit ensemble que nanin; car il ameroient miex mettre lour cors
all together that no for they would-love better to-put their bodies
en avanture de noier, que ce que il achetassent une nef quatre
in hazard of drowning than this that they should-buy a ship four
mille livres et plus. «Et pourquoy me loez-vous donc que je
thousand pounds and more And why me advise-you then that I
descende? — Pour ce, firent-il, que ce n'est pas geus partis;
go-down For this said-they that this not-is at-all game divided
car ors ne argens ne puet esprisier le cors de vous, de vostre
for gold nor silver not can value the body of you of your

femme et de vos enfans qui sont céans et pour ce ne vous
wife and of your children who are in-here and for this not you
loons-nous pas que vous metez, ne vous ne aus, en avanture.»
advise-we at-all that you put either you or them in hazard
Lors dist li roys: «Signour, j'ai oy vostre avis et l'avis 628
Then said the king Lords I-have heard your opinion and the-opinion
de ma gent; or vous redirai-je le mien, qui est teix, que se
of my people now you will-say-again-I the mine which is such that if
je descent de la nef, que il a céans tiex cinc cens persones
I go-down from the ship that it has in-here such five hundred persons
et plus qui demorront en l'ille de Cypre, pour la poour dou
and more who will-remain in the-isle of Cyprus for the fear of-the
peril de lour cors (car il n'i a celi qui autant n'aint sa
peril of their bodies for it not-there has one who as-much not-loves his
vie comme je faiz la mienne), et qui jamais, par avanture,
life as I do the mine and who ever by chance
en lour païz ne renterront. Dont j'aim miex mon cors et
into their country not will-re-enter Whence I-love better my body and
ma femme et mes enfans mettre en la main Dieu, que je
my wife and my children to-put in the hand (of-)God than I
feisse tel doumaige à si grant peuple comme il a céans.»
should-do such harm to so great people as it has in-here
Le grant doumaige que li roys eust fait au peuple qui 629
The great harm that the king would-have done to-the people who
estoit en sa nef, puet l'on veoir à Olivier de Termes qui estoit
was in his ship can one see by Oliver of Termes who was
en la nef le roy; liquex estoit uns des plus hardis homes
in the ship (of-)the king which was one of-the most bold men
que je onques veisse et qui miex s'estoit prouvez en la
that I ever saw and who best himself-was proved in the
Terre sainte: n'osa demourer avec nous pour poour de naier;
Land holy not-dared remain with us for fear of drowning

ainçois demoura en Cypre, et ot tant de destourbiers qu'il
rather remained in Cyprus and had so-many of hindrances that-he
fu avant un an et demi que il revenist au roy; et si estoit
was before a year and half that he came-back to-the king and so he-was
grans hom et riches hom, et bien pooit paier son passaige.
great man and rich man and well could pay his passage
Or regardez que petites gens eussent fait qui n'eussent eu
Now look what small people would-have done who not-had had
de quoy paier, quant teix hom ot si grant destourbier.
of what to-pay when such man had so great hindrance

The Storm Off Cyprus

LX

A violent wind drives them back toward Cyprus, and the queen comes to have the king vow a pilgrimage. Joinville bids her promise a silver ship to Saint Nicholas of Varangéville, standing surety that God will bring them home, and she soon returns to say the wind has fallen. She later has the ship made in Paris. The king tells Joinville that such perils are God's threats, and that they must cast out whatever displeases him.

630 De ce peril, dont Diex nous ot eschapez, entrames en
From this peril whence God us had escaped we-entered into
un autre; car li vens qui nous avoit flatis sus Chypre, là
an other for the wind which us had dashed upon Cyprus there
où nous deumes estre noié, leva si forz et si orribles, car
where we ought be drowned rose so strong and so horrible for
il nous batoit à force sus l'ille de Cypre; car li marinier
it us beat by force upon the-isle of Cyprus for the mariners
geterent lour ancres encontre le vent, ne onques la nef ne
cast their anchors against the wind nor ever the ship not

porent arester tant que il en y orent aportei cinq. Les
they-could stop until that they thereof there had brought five The
parois de la chambre le roy couvint abatre, ne il n'avoit
walls of the chamber (of-)the king it-behooved to-pull-down nor it not-had
nulli léans qui y osast demourer, pour ce que li vens
anyone in-there who there dared remain for this that the wind
ne les enportast en la mer. En ce point li connestables
not them should-carry-off into the sea At this point the constable
de France, mes sires Giles li Bruns, et je, estiens couchié
of France my lord Giles the Brown and I were lain
en la chambre le roy; et en ce point la royne ouvri
in the chamber (of-)the king and at this point the queen opened
l'uis de la chambre, et cuida trouver le roy en la seue.
the-door of the chamber and thought to-find the king in the her-own
Et je li demandai qu'elle estoit venue querre: elle dist qu'elle 631
And I her asked what-she was come to-seek she said that-she
estoit venue parler au roy, pour ce que il promeist à Dieu
was come to-speak to-the king for this that he should-promise to God
aucun pelerinaige, ou à ses sains, par quoy Diex nous delivrast
some pilgrimage or to his saints by which God us should-deliver
de ce peril là où nous estiens; car li marinier avoient dit que
from this peril there where we were for the mariners had said that
nous estiens en peril de naier. Et je li diz: «Dame, prometés
we were in peril of drowning And I to-her said Lady promise
la voie à mon signour saint Nicholas de Warangeville, et je
the journey to my lord saint Nicholas of Varangéville and I
vous sui pleges pour li que Diex vous ramenra en France,
to-you am surety for him that God you will-bring-back to France
et le roy et vos enfans. — Seneschaus, fist-elle, vraiement je
and the king and your children Seneschal said-she truly I

le feroie volentiers; mais li roys et si divers que se il le savoit
it would-do willingly but the king is so contrary that if he it knew
que je l'eusse promis sanz li, il ne m'i lairoit jamais aler.
that I it-had promised without him he not me-there would-let ever go
632 — «Vous ferez une chose, que se Diex vous rameinne en
You will-do one thing that if God you brings-back to
France, que vous li prometterés une nef d'argent de cinq
France that you to-him will-promise a ship of-silver of five
mars, pour le roy, pour vous et pour vos trois enfans; et
marks for the king for you and for your three children and
je vous sui pleges que Diex vous ramenra en France; car je
I to-you am surety that God you will-bring-back to France for I
promis à saint Nicholas que se il nous reschapoit de ce peril
promised to saint Nicholas that if he us rescued from this peril
là où nous aviens la nuit estei, que je l'iroie requerre
there where we had the night been that I him-would-go to-seek
de Joinville à pié et deschaus.» Et elle me dist que la nef
from Joinville on foot and unshod And she me said that the ship
d'argent de cinq mars que elle la prometoit à saint Nicholas,
of-silver of five marks that she it promised to saint Nicholas
et me dist que je l'en fusse pleges; et je li dis que si
and me said that I her-thereof should-be surety and I to-her said that so
seroie-je mout volentiers. Elle se parti de illec, et ne tarda
would-be-I very willingly She herself departed from there and not delayed
que un petit; si revint à nous et me dist: «Sains Nicholas
but a little so came-back to us and me said Saint Nicholas
nous a garantis de cest peril; car li vens est cheus.»
us has protected from this peril for the wind is fallen
633 Quant la royne (que Diex absoille!) fu revenue en France, elle
When the queen whom God absolve was come-back to France she
fist faire la nef d'argent à Paris. Et estoit en la nef, li roys, la
had made the ship of-silver at Paris And was in the ship the king the

royne, et li troi enfant, tuit d'argent; li mariniers, li mas, li
queen and the three children all of-silver the mariners the mast the
gouvernaus et les cordes, tuit d'argent; et li voiles tous cousus
rudder and the ropes all of-silver and the sail all sewn
à fil d'argent. Et me dist la royne que la façons avoit coustei
with thread of-silver And me said the queen that the making had cost
cent livres. Quant la neis fut faite, la royne la m'envoia à
a-hundred pounds When the ship was made the queen it me-sent to
Joinville pour faire conduire jusques à Saint-Nicholas, et je si
Joinville for to-make be-conducted until to Saint-Nicholas and I so
fis; et encore la vis-je à Saint-Nicholas quant nous menames
did and still it saw-I at Saint-Nicholas when we led
la serour le roy à Haguenoe, au roi d'Alemaingne.
the sister (of-)the king to Haguenau to-the king of-Germany
Or revenons à nostre matiere, et disons ainsi, que après ce 634
Now let-us-return to our matter and let-us-say thus that after this
que nous fumes eschapei de ces dous perilz, li roys s'assit
that we were escaped from these two perils the king himself-sat
sur le bort de la nef, et me fist asseoir à ses piez, et me
on the side of the ship and me had sit at his feet and me
dist ainsi: «Seneschaus, nous a bien moustrei nostre Diex son
said thus Seneschal us has well shown our God his
grant pouoir; que uns de ces petits vens (non pas des quatre
great power for one of these little winds not at-all of-the four
maistres vens) dut avoir naié le roy de France, sa femme
master winds ought have drowned the king of France his wife
et ses enfans, et toute sa compaingnie. Or li devons
and his children and all his company Now to-him we-ought
grei et grace rendre dou peril dont il nous a delivrez.
gratitude and thanks render for-the peril whence he us has delivered

635 «Seneschaus, fist li roys, de tiex tribulacions, quant elles
Seneschal said the king of such tribulations when they
aviennent aus gens, ou de grans maladies, ou d'autres
happen to-the people either of great sicknesses or of-other
persecucions, dient li saint que ce sont les menaces Nostre
persecutions say the saints that these are the threats (of-)Our
Signour. Car aussi comme Diex dit à ceus qui eschapent de
Lord For just as God says to those who escape from
grans maladies: — Or véez-vous bien que je vous eusse
great sicknesses Now see-you well that I you would-have
bien mors se je vousisse; et ainsi puet-il dire à nous: —
well killed if I had-wished and thus can-he say to us
Vous véez bien que je vous eusse touz noiez se je vousisse.
You see well that I you would-have all drowned if I had-wished
636 «Or devons, fist li roys, regarder à nous, que il n'i
Now we-ought said the king look at ourselves that it not-there
ait chose qui li desplaise par quoy il nous ait ainsi
may-have thing which him displeases by which he us may-have thus
espoentez; et se nous trouvons chose qui li desplaise,
frightened and if we find thing which him displeases
que nous le metiens hors; car se nous le fesiens autrement
that we it should-put out for if we it did otherwise
après ceste menace que il nous a faite, il ferra sus
after this threat that he us has made he will-strike upon
nous ou par mort, ou par autre grant meschéance, au
us either by death or by other great mischance to-the
doumaige des cors et des ames.»
harm of-the bodies and of-the souls
637 Li roys dist: «Seneschaus, li sains dit: — Sire Diex, pourquoy
The king said Seneschal the saint says Lord God why
nous menaces-tu? Car se tu nous avoies touz perdus, tu n'en
us threatenest-thou For if thou us hadst all lost thou not-thereof

seroies jà pour ce plus povres; et se tu nous avoies touz
wouldst-be ever for this more poor and if thou us hadst all
gaaingniés, tu n'en seroies jà plus riches pour ce. Dont
gained thou not-thereof wouldst-be ever more rich for this Whence
nous poons veoir, fait li sains, que ces menaces que Diex nous
we can see says the saint that these threats that God us
fait, ne sont pas pour son preu avancier, ne pour son doumaige
makes not are at-all for his gain to-advance nor for his harm
destourber; mais seulement pour la grant amour que il a en
to-avert but only for the great love that he has in
nous, nous esveille par ses menaces, pour ce que nous voiens
us us awakens by his threats for this that we may-see
cler en nos defautes, et que nous ostiens de nous ce qui li
clear in our faults and that we may-remove from us that which him
desplait. — Or le fesons ainsi, fist li roys, si ferons que saige.»
displeases Now it let-us-do so said the king so we-will-do like wise-men

Lampedusa and Pantelleria

LXI

At Lampedusa they find a hermitage with two bodies laid toward the east, and take many rabbits. At Pantelleria the king, at the queen's prayer, sends three galleys for fruit, and when they do not return the king will not abandon his people and turns the fleet back. The galleys come out: six sons of Paris burghers would not leave the gardens, and the king puts them in the ship's boat, where they stay in misery until landfall despite the queen's pleas.

De l'ille de Cypre nous partimes, puis que nous eumes 638
From the-isle of Cyprus we departed after that we had
pris en l'ille de l'yaue fresche et autres choses qui
taken in the-isle of the-water fresh and other things which

besoing nous estoient. A une ylle venimes que on appelle
need to-us were To an isle we-came which one calls
la Lempiouse, là où nous preimes tout plein de connins;
the Lampedusa there where we took all full of rabbits
et trouvames un hermitaige ancien dedans les roches, et
and found a hermitage ancient within the rocks and
trouvames le courtil que li hermite qui y demourerent
found the garden that the hermits who there dwelt
anciennement avoient fait: oliviers, figuiers, seps de vingne
anciently had made olive-trees fig-trees stocks of vine
et autres arbres y avoit. Li rus de la fonteinne couroit
and other trees there had The brook of the fountain ran
parmi le courtil. Li roys et nous alames jeusques au
through the garden The king and we went until to-the
chief dou courtil, et trouvames un oratour, en la premiere
head of-the garden and found an oratory in the first
voute, blanchi de chaus, et une croiz vermeille de terre.
vault whitened with lime and a cross red of earth
639 En la seconde voute entrames, et trouvames dous cors de
Into the second vault we-entered and found two bodies of
gens mors, dont la chars estoit toute pourrie; les costes
people dead of-which the flesh was all rotted the ribs
se tenoient encore toutes ensemble, et li os des mains
themselves held still all together and the bones of-the hands
estoient sur lour piz; et estoient couchié contre orient, en
were on their breast and they-were lain toward orient in
la maniere que l'on met les cors en terre. Au requeillir
the manner that one puts the bodies in ground At-the embarking
que nous feismes en notre nef, il nous failli un de nos
that we made into our ship it to-us lacked one of our
mariniers; dont li maistres de la nef cuida que il fust là
mariners whereof the master of the ship thought that he were there

demourez pour estre hermite; et pour ce, Nicholas de Soisi,
remained for to-be hermit and for this Nicholas of Choisy
qui estoit maistres serjans le roy, lessa trois saz de becuiz
who was master sergeant (of-)the king left three sacks of biscuits
sur la rive, pour ce que cil les trouvast et en vequist.
on the shore for this that this-one them should-find and thereof should-live
Quant nous fumes parti de là, nous veismes une grant ylle 640
When we were departed from there we saw a great isle
en la mer, qui avoit à non Pantennelée, et estoit peuplée de
in the sea which had to name Pantelleria and was peopled with
Sarrazins qui estoient en la subjection dou roy de Sezile et
Saracens who were in the subjection of-the king of Sicily and
dou roy de Thunes. La royne pria le roy que il y envoiast
of-the king of Tunis The queen prayed the king that he there should-send
trois galies pour penre dou fruit pour ses enfants; et li roys
three galleys for to-take of-the fruit for her children and the king
li otria, et commanda aus maistres des galies que quant
to-her granted and commanded to-the masters of-the galleys that when
la neis le roy passeroit par devant l'ille, que il fussent tuit
the ship (of-)the king would-pass by before the-isle that they should-be all
appareillié de venir à li. Les galies entrerent en l'ylle par un
ready to come to him The galleys entered into the-isle by a
port qui y estoit; et avint que quant la neis le roy passa
port which there was and happened that when the ship (of-)the king passed
par devant le port, nous n'oymes onques nouvelles de nos galies.
by before the port we not-heard ever tidings of our galleys
Lors commencierent li marinier à murmurer li uns à l'autre. 641
Then began the mariners to murmur the one to the-other
Li roys les fist appeler, et lour demanda que il lour sembloit
The king them had called and them asked what it them seemed
de cest heur; et li marinier li distrent qu'il lour sembloit
of this hap and the mariners to-him said that-it them seemed

que li Sarrazin avoient pris sa gent et les galies. «Mais nous
that the Saracens had taken his people and the galleys But we
vous loons et conseillons, sire, que vous ne les attendés pas;
you advise and counsel lord that you not them await at-all
car vous estes entre le royaume de Sezile et le royaume de
for you are between the realm of Sicily and the realm of
Thunes, qui ne vous aiment gueres ne li uns ne li autres;
Tunis which not you love much neither the one nor the other
et se vous nous lessiez nagier, nous vous averons, encore ennuit,
and if you us let sail we you will-have yet tonight
delivrei dou peril; car nous vous averons passei ce destroit.
delivered from-the peril for we you will-have passed this strait
642 — «Vraiement, fist li roys, je ne vous en croirai jà
Truly said the king I not you thereof will-believe ever
que je laisse ma gent entre les mains des Sarrazins, que je
that I leave my people between the hands of-the Saracens that I
n'en face au moins mon pouoir d'aus delivrer. Et vous
not-thereof should-do at-the least my power of-them to-deliver And you
commant que vous tournez vos voiles, et lour alons courre
I-command that you turn your sails and on-them let-us-go to-run
sus.» Et quant la royne oy ce, elle commença à mener
upon And when the queen heard this she began to make
mout grant duel, et dist:» Hé lasse! ce ai-je tout fait!»
very great grief and said Ah wretched-me this have-I all done
643 Tandis que l'on tournoit les voiles de la nef le roy et des
While that one turned the sails of the ship (of-)the king and of-the
autres, nous veismes les galies issir de l'ylle. Quant elles
others we saw the galleys come-out of the-isle When they
vindrent au roy, li roys demanda aus mariniers pourquoy
came to-the king the king asked of-the mariners why
il avoient ce fait; et il respondirent que il n'en
they had this done and they answered that they not-thereof

pooient mais, que ce firent li fil de bourjois de Paris, dont
could more for this did the sons of burghers of Paris of-whom
il y avoit six qui mangoient les fruiz des jardins; par quoy
it there had six who ate the fruits of-the gardens by which
il ne les pooient avoir, et il ne les vouloient lessier.
they not them could have and they not them wished to-leave
Lors commanda li roys que on les meist en la barje
Then commanded the king that one them should-put into the barge
de cantiers; et lors il commencierent à crier et à braire:
of landing and then they began to cry and to bray
«Sire, pour Dieu, raimbez-nous de quant que nous avons,
Lord for God ransom-us with what that we have
mais que vous ne nous metiez là où on met les murtriers
but that you not us put there where one puts the murderers
et les larrons; car touz jours mais nous seroit reprouvei.»
and the thieves for all days more to-us it-would-be reproached
La royne et nous tuit feismes nos pooirs comment li roys 644
The queen and we all did our powers how the king
se vousist souffrir; mais onques li roys ne vout escouter
himself wished to-forbear but ever the king not wished to-listen-to
nullui; ainçois y furent mis et y demourerent tant que
anyone rather there they-were put and there remained until that
nous fumes à terre. A tel meschief y furent, que quant la
we were on land In such hardship there they-were that when the
mers grossoioit, les ondes lour voloient par desus la teste,
sea swelled the waves to-them flew by over the head
et les couvenoit asseoir que li vens ne les emportast en
and them behooved to-sit so-that the wind not them should-carry-off into
la mer. Et ce fu à bon droit; que lour gloutonnie nous fist
the sea And this was by good right for their gluttony us did

tel doumaige que nous en fumes delaié huit bones journées,
such harm that we thereof were delayed eight good days
parce que li roys fist tourner les neis ce devant deriere.
because that the king had turned the ships this front behind

The Fire in the Queen's Cabin

LXII

A beguine of the queen's lets her head cloth fall on a candle, and the queen wakes to a cabin in flames, throws the burning cloth into the sea, and puts out the fire. The king asks after Joinville, and the next day tells how they nearly all burned and charges him to see every fire out before he sleeps. Lord Dragonet's squire falls overboard from a ship a league ahead; picked up by a royal galley, he says Our Lady of Vauvert held him up by the shoulders.

645 Une autre avanture nous avint en la mer, avant que nous
An other adventure to-us happened on the sea before that we
venissiens à terre, qui fu teix, que une des beguines la
came to land which was such that one of-the beguines (of-)the
royne, quant elle ot la royne couchie, si ne se prist garde, si
queen when she had the queen put-to-bed so not herself took heed so
jeta sa touaille de quoy elle avoit sa teste entorteillie, au chief
cast her kerchief with which she had her head wound at-the end
de la paielle de fer là où la soigne la royne ardoit; et
of the pan of iron there where the candle (of-)the queen burned and
quant elle fu alée couchier en la chambre desous la chambre
when she was gone to-lie in the chamber below the chamber
la royne, là où les femmes gisoient, la chandelle ardi
(of-)the queen there where the women lay the candle burned

tant que li feus se prist en la touaille, et de la touaille
so-much that the fire itself took in the kerchief and from the kerchief
se prist à toilles dont li drap la royne estoient couvert.
itself took to cloths of-which the sheets (of-)the queen were covered
Quant la royne se esveilla, elle vit la chambre toute embrasée 646
When the queen herself awoke she saw the chamber all ablaze
de feu, et sailli sus toute nue, et prist la touaille et la jeta
with fire and leapt up all naked and took the kerchief and it cast
toute ardant en la mer, et prist les toilles et les estainst. Cil
all burning into the sea and took the cloths and them quenched Those
qui estoient en la barge de cantiers crierent basset: «Le feu! le
who were in the barge of landing cried softly The fire the
feu!» Je levai ma teste, et vi que la touaille ardoit encore à
fire I raised my head and saw that the kerchief burned still with
clere flambe sur la mer, qui estoit mout quoye. Je vesti ma
clear flame on the sea which was very quiet I donned my
cote au plus tost que je poi, et alai seoir avec les mariniers.
tunic at-the most soon that I could and went to-sit with the mariners
Tandis que je séoie là, mes escuiers, qui gisoit devant moy, 647
While that I sat there my squire who lay before me
vint à moy et me dist que li roys estoit esveilliez, et que il
came to me and me said that the king was awakened and that he
avoit demandei là où je estoie: «Et je li avoie dit que vous
had asked there where I was And I to-him had said that you
estiés es chambres; et li roys me dist: Tu mens.» Tandis que
were in-the chambers and the king me said Thou liest While that
nous parliens illec, à tant es-vous maistre Geffroy, le clerc la
we spoke there at this behold-you master Geoffrey the clerk (of-)the
royne, qui me dist: «Ne vous effréez pas; car il est ainsi avenu.»
queen who me said Not yourself frighten at-all for it is thus happened

Et je li diz: «Maistres Geffroys, alez dire à la royne que li
And I to-him said Master Geoffrey go to-say to the queen that the
roys est esveilliez, et qu'elle voise vers li pour li apaisier.»
king is awakened and that-she should-go toward him for him to-calm
648 L'endemain, li connestables de France et mes sires Pierres
The-next-day the constable of France and my lord Peter
li chamberlans et mes sires Gervaises li pannetiers distrent
the chamberlain and my lord Gervase the pantler said
au roy: «Que a ce anuit estei, que nous oïmes parler
to-the king What has this tonight been that we heard speak
de feu?» Et je ne dis mot. Et lors dist li roys: «Ce soit
of fire And I not said word And then said the king This be
par male avanture là où li seneschaus est plus celans
by ill chance there where the seneschal is more concealing
que je ne sui; et je vous conterai, dist li roys, que ce
than I not am and I to-you will-tell said the king what this
est que nous deumes estre ennuit tuit ars.»
is that we ought be tonight all burned
649 Et lour conta comment ce fu, et me dist: «Seneschaus, je
And to-them he-told how this was and me said Seneschal I
vous comment que vous ne vous couchiez dès or en avant,
you command that you not yourself lie-down from now on forward
tant que vous aiés touz les feus de céans estains, ne
until that you may-have all the fires of in-here quenched nor
mais que le grant feu qui est en la soute de la nef; et
but that the great fire which is in the hold of the ship and
sachiez que je ne me coucherai jeusques à tant que vous
know that I not myself will-lie-down until to so-much that you
reveigniez à moy.» Et ainsi le fiz-je tant comme nous fumes
come-back to me And so it did-I as-long as we were
en mer; et quant je revenoie, si se couchoit li roys.
on sea and when I came-back so himself lay-down the king

Une autre avanture nous avint en mer; car mes sires 650
An other adventure to-us happened on sea for my lord
Dragonés, uns riches hom de Provence, dormoit la matinée
Dragonet a rich man of Provence slept the morning
en sa nef, qui bien estoit une lieue devant la nostre, et
in his ship which well was a league before the ours and
appela un sien escuier et li dist: «Va estouper ce pertuis;
called a his squire and to-him said Go to-stop that hole
car li solaus me fiert ou visaige.» Cil vit que il ne
for the sun me strikes in-the face That-one saw that he not
pooit estouper le pertuis se il n'issoit de la nef: de la
could stop the hole if he not-went-out of the ship from the
nef issi. Tandis que il aloit le pertuis estouper, li piés
ship he-went-out While that he went the hole to-stop the foot
li failli, et chéi en l'yaue; et celle n'avoit point de barge
him failed and he-fell into the-water and that-ship not-had at-all of barge
de cantiers, car la neis estoit petite: maintenant fu esloingnie
of landing for the ship was small at-once was distanced
celle neis. Nous qui estiens en la nef le roi, le veismes; et
that ship We who were in the ship (of-)the king him saw and
cuidiens que ce fust une somme ou une bouticle, pour ce que
thought that this were a bundle or a cask for this that
cil qui estoit cheus en l'yaue ne metoit nul consoil en li.
he who was fallen into the-water not put any counsel in himself
Une des galies le roy le queilli et l'aporta en nostre nef, 651
One of-the galleys (of-)the king him picked-up and him-brought into our ship
là où il nous conta comment ce li estoit avenu. Je li
there where he us told how this to-him was happened I him
demandai comment ce estoit que il ne metoit consoil en li
asked how this was that he not put counsel in himself
garantir, ne par noer ne par autre maniere. Il me respondi
to-protect either by swimming or by other manner He me answered

que il n'estoit nul mestier ne besoing que il meist consoil
that it not-was any need nor want that he should-put counsel
en li; car si tost comme il commença à cheoir, il se
in himself for so soon as he began to fall he himself
commenda à Nostre Dame de Vauvert, et elle le soustint par
commended to Our Lady of Vauvert and she him upheld by
les espaules dès que il chéi, jusques à tant que la galie le
the shoulders from that he fell until to so-much that the galley (of-)the
roy le requeilli. En l'onnour de ce miracle, je l'ai fait peindre
king him picked-up In the-honor of this miracle I it-have had painted
à Joinville en ma chapelle, et es verrieres de Blehecourt.
at Joinville in my chapel and in-the windows of Blécourt

The Landing at Hyères, and Brother Hugh

LXIII

After ten weeks at sea they reach a port near Hyères. The king will land only at Aigues Mortes until Joinville cites the lady of Bourbon, who refused this port and stayed seven weeks at sea, and the council persuades him. The abbot of Cluny gives him two palfreys; Joinville advises him to forbid his council to take gifts. The Cordelier Brother Hugh preaches that kingdoms are lost only for want of justice; he will not stay.

652 Après ce que nous eumes estei dix semainnes en la mer,
After this that we had been ten weeks on the sea
arivames à un port que estoit à dous lieues d'un chastel que
we-arrived at a port which was at two leagues from-a castle which
on appeloit Yeres, qui estoit au conte de Provence qui puis
one called Hyères which was to-the count of Provence who after
fu roys de Sezile. La royne et touz li consaus s'acorderent
was king of Sicily The queen and all the council themselves-agreed

que li roys descendist illec, pour ce que la terre estoit
that the king should-go-down there for this that the land was
son frere. Li roys nous respondi que il ne descenderoit jà
his brother's The king us answered that he not would-go-down ever
de sa nef jeusques à tant que il venroit à Aigue Morte,
from his ship until to so-much that he would-come to Aigues Mortes
qui estoit en sa terre. En ce point nous tint li roys, le
which was in his land At this point us held the king the
mecredi, le jeudi, que nous ne le peumes onques vaincre.
Wednesday the Thursday so-that we not him could ever vanquish
En ces neis de Marseille a dous gouvernaus, qui sont 653
In these ships of Marseille there-are two rudders which are
atachié à dous tisons si merveillousement, que si tost comme
attached to two beams so marvelously that so soon as
l'on averoit tournei un roncin, l'ont puet tourner la nef à
one would-have turned a rouncy one can turn the ship to
destre et à senestre. Sur l'un des tisons des gouvernaus
right and to left On the-one of-the beams of-the rudders
se séoit li roys le vendredi, et m'appela et me dist:
himself sat the king the Friday and me-called and me said
«Seneschaus, que vous semble de cest oevre!» Et je li
Seneschal what you seems of this work And I to-him
diz: «Sire, il seroit à bon droit que il vous en avenist
said Lord it would-be by good right that it to-you thereof should-happen
aussi comme il fist à ma dame de Bourbon, qui ne vout
just as it did to my lady of Bourbon who not wished
descendre en cest port, ains se remist en mer pour aler
to-go-down in this port rather herself put-again to sea for to-go
à Aigue Morte, et demoura puis sept semainnes sur mer.»
to Aigues Mortes and remained after seven weeks on sea

654 Lor appela li roys son consoil et lour dist ce que je li
Then called the king his council and to-them said that which I to-him
avoie dit, et lour demanda que il looient à faire; et li
had said and them asked what they advised to do and him
loerent tuit que il descendist; car il ne feroit pas que saiges
advised all that he should-go-down for he not would-do at-all like wise-man
se il metoit son cors, sa femme et ses enfans en avanture
if he put his body his wife and his children in hazard
de mer, puisque il estoit hors. Au consoil que nous li
of sea since he was out At-the counsel that we to-him
donnames s'acorda li roys, dont la royne fu mout liée.
gave himself-agreed the king whereof the queen was very glad
655 Ou chastel de Yeres descendi li roys de la mer, et la royne
At-the castle of Hyères went-down the king from the sea and the queen
et sui enfant. Tandis que li roys sejournoit à Yeres pour
and his children While that the king sojourned at Hyères for
pourchacier chevaus à venir en France, li abbes de Clyngny,
to-procure horses to come to France the abbot of Cluny
qui puis fu evesques de l'Olive, li presenta dous palefrois
who after was bishop of the-Olive to-him presented two palfreys
qui vauroient bien aujourd'ui cinq cens livres, un pour li, et
which would-be-worth well today five hundred pounds one for him and
l'autre pour la royne. Quant il li ot presentei, si dist au
the-other for the queen When he to-him had presented so he-said to-the
roy: «Sire, je venrai demain parler à vous de mes besoignes.»
king Lord I will-come tomorrow to-speak to you of my affairs
Quant ce vint l'endemain, li abbes revint; li roys l'oy mout
When this came the-next-day the abbot came-back the king him-heard very
diligenment et mout longuement. Quant li abbes s'en fu
diligently and very long When the abbot himself-thence was
partis, je ving au roy et li diz: «Je vous vueil demander,
departed I came to-the king and to-him said I you wish to-ask

se il vous plait, se vous avez oy plus debonnerement l'abbei de
if it you pleases if you have heard more graciously the-abbot of
Clygni, pour ce que il vous donna hyer ces dous palefrois.»
Cluny for this that he you gave yesterday these two palfreys
Li roys pensa longuement, et me dist: «Vraiement oyl. — 656
The king thought long and me said Truly yes
Sire, fiz-je, savez-vous pourquoy je vous ai faite ceste
Lord said-I know-you why I you have made this
demande? — Pourquoy?» fist-il.—» Pour ce, sire, fiz-je, que je
question Why said-he For this lord said-I that I
vous lo et conseil que vous deffendés à tout vostre consoil
you advise and counsel that you forbid to all your council
jurei, quant vous venrez en France, que il ne preingnent
sworn when you will-come to France that they not take
de ceus qui averont à besoignier par devant vous; car soiés
from those who will-have to transact by before you for be
certeins, se il prennent, il en escouteront plus volentiers
certain if they take they thereof will-listen more willingly
et plus diligentment ceus qui lour donront, ainsi comme
and more diligently those who to-them will-give just as
vous avez fait l'abbei de Clyngni.» Lors appela li roys tout
you have done the-abbot of Cluny Then called the king all
son consoil, et lour recorda errant ce que je li avoie
his council and to-them recounted straightway that which I to-him had
dit; et il li dirent que je li avoie loei bon consoil.
said and they to-him said that I to-him had advised good counsel
Li roys oy parler d'un cordelier qui avoit non frere Hugue; et 657
The king heard speak of-a Cordelier who had name brother Hugh and
pour la grant renommée dont il estoit, li roys envoia querre
for the great renown of-which he was the king sent to-seek
celi cordelier pour li veoir et oyr parler. Le jour qu'il vint
that Cordelier for him to-see and hear speak The day that-he came

à Yeres, nous regardames ou chemin par où il venoit, et
to Hyères we looked on-the road by where he came and
veismes que trop grans peuples le suivoit à pié de homes et
saw that very great people him followed on foot of men and
de femmes. Li roys le fist sermonner. Li commencemens dou
of women The king him had preach The beginning of-the
sermon fu sur les gens de religion, et dist ainsi: «Signour,
sermon was on the people of religion and he-said thus Lords
fist-il, je voi plus de gent de religion en la court le roy,
said-he I see more of people of religion in the court (of-)the king
en sa compaignie.» Sur ces paroles: «Je touz premiers,» fist-il;
in his company On these words I all first said-he
«et di ainsi que il ne sont pas en estat d'aus sauver, ou
and say thus that they not are at-all in state of-themselves to-save or
les saintes Escriptures nous mentent, que il ne puet estre.
the holy Scriptures us lie which it not can be
658 «Car les saintes Escriptures nous dient que li moinnes ne
For the holy Scriptures us say that the monk not
puet vivre hors de son cloistre sans pechié mortel, ne que
can live out of his cloister without sin mortal no-more than
li poissons puet vivre sans yaue. Et se li religious qui sont
the fish can live without water And if the religious who are
avec le roy dient que ce soit cloistres, et je lour di que
with the king say that this be cloister and I to-them say that
c'est li plus larges que je veisse onques; car il dure deçà
this-is the most wide that I saw ever for it lasts on-this-side
mer et delà. Se il dient que en cesti cloistre l'on puet
sea and that-side If they say that in this cloister one can
mener aspre vie pour l'ame sauver, de ce ne les croi-je pas;
lead harsh life for the-soul to-save of this not them believe-I at-all
mais je vous di que j'ai mangié avec aus grant foison de
but I to-you say that I-have eaten with them great plenty of

divers més de char, et beu de bons vins fors et clers; de
diverse dishes of meat and drunk of good wines strong and clear by
quoy je sui certeins que se il eussent estei en lour cloistre,
which I am certain that if they had been in their cloister
il ne fussent pas si aisié comme il sont avec le roy.»
they not would-be at-all so at-ease as they are with the king
Au roy enseigna en son sermon comment il se devoit 659
To-the king he-taught in his sermon how he himself ought
maintenir au grei de son peuple; et en la fin de son
maintain to-the pleasure of his people and in the end of his
sermon dist ainsi, que il avoit leue la Bible et les livres
sermon he-said thus that he had read the Bible and the books
qui vont encoste la Bible, ne onques n'avoit veu, ne
which go beside the Bible nor ever not-had seen neither
ou livre des créans, ne ou livre des mescréans, que nus
in-the book of-the believing nor in-the book of-the misbelieving that any
royaumes ne nulle signourie fust onques perdue, ne changie
realm nor any lordship were ever lost nor changed
de signourie en autre, ne de roy en autre, fors que par
from lordship to other nor from king to other except that by
defaut de droit: «Or se gart, fist-il, li roys, puis que il
default of justice Now himself guard said-he the king since that he
en va en France, que il face tel droiture à son peuple
thence goes to France that he may-do such justice to his people
que en retiengne l'amour de Dieu, en tel maniere que
that he-thereof may-retain the-love of God in such manner that
Diex ne li toille le royaume de France à sa vie.»
God not from-him may-take the realm of France in his life
Je dis au roy que il ne le lessast pas partir de sa 660
I said to-the king that he not him should-let at-all depart from his
compaignie, tant comme il pot; il me dist qu'il l'en avoit
company as-much as he could he me said that-he him-thereof had

jà prié, mais il n'en vouloit riens faire pour li. Lors me
already prayed but he not-thereof wished anything to-do for him Then me
prist li roys par la main, et me dist: «Alons li encore prier.»
took the king by the hand and me said Let-us-go him again to-pray
Nous venimes à li, et je li dis: «Sire, faites ce que mes
We came to him and I to-him said Lord do that which my
sires vous proie, de demourer avec li tant comme il yert en
lord you prays of remaining with him as-long as he will-be in
Provence. Et il me respondi mout iréement: Certes, sire, non
Provence And he me answered very angrily Certainly lord not
ferai; ains irai en tel lieu là où Diex m'amera miex que
I-will-do rather will-go to such place there where God me-will-love better than
il ne feroit en la compaignie le roy. Un jour demoura avec
he not would-do in the company (of-)the king One day he-remained with
nous, et l'endemain s'en ala. Or m'a l'on puis dit que il
us and the-next-day himself-thence went Now me-has one since said that he
gist en la citei de Marseille, là où il fait mout beles miracles.
lies in the city of Marseille there where he does very fair miracles

Joinville Takes His Leave

LXIV

Leaving Hyères, the king berates his squire Ponce, and Joinville reminds him that Ponce served his grandfather and father; the king answers that each servant is rewarded by his service. At Aix they visit the grotto where the Magdalene is said to have lived. At Beaucaire Joinville takes leave and rides home. When Thibaut of Navarre asks for the king's daughter Isabel, the king will first have peace made with the count of Brittany, and the wedding follows at Melun.

Le jour que li roys se parti de Yeres, il descendi à 661
The day that the king himself departed from Hyères he came-down on
pié dou chastel, pour ce que la coste estoit trop roite;
foot from-the castle for this that the slope was very steep
et ala tant à pié que, pour ce que il ne pot avoir son
and went so-long on foot that for this that he not could have his
palefroi, que il le couvint monter sur le mien. Et quant
palfrey that it him behooved to-mount on the mine And when
ses palefrois fu venus, il courut sus mout aigrement à
his palfrey was come he ran upon very fiercely at
Poince l'escuier; et quant il l'ot bien mesamei, je li
Ponce the-squire and when he him-had well rebuked I to-him
dis: «Sire, vous devez mout soufrir à Poince l'escuier; car
said Lord you ought much bear with Ponce the-squire for
il a servi vostre aioul et vostre pere et vous.»
he has served your grandfather and your father and you
— «Seneschaus, fist-il, il ne nous a pas servi; mais nous 662
Seneschal said-he he not us has at-all served but we
l'avons servi quant nous l'avons soufert entour nous, aus
him-have served when we him-have suffered around us with-the
mauvaises taches que il a. Car li roys Phelippes mes aious
bad faults that he has For the king Philip my grandfather

me dist que l'on devoit guerredonner à sa mesnie, à l'un
me said that one ought reward to his household to the-one
plus, à l'autre moins, selonc ce que il servent; et disoit
more to the-other less according-to this that they serve and he-said
encore que nus ne pooit estre bons gouvernerres de terre,
further that anyone not could be good governor of land
se il ne savoit aussi hardiement et aussi durement escondire
if he not knew as boldly and as hard refuse
comme il sauroit donner. Et ces choses, fist li roys, vous
as he would-know give And these things said the king to-you
apren-je, pour ce que li siecles est si engrès de demander,
teach-I for this that the world is so eager of asking
que pou sont de gens qui resgardent au sauvement de lour
that few are of people who look to-the saving of their
ames ne à l'onnour de lour cors, que il puissent traire
souls nor to the-honor of their bodies so-that they can draw
l'autrui chose par devers aus, soit à tort, soit à droit.»
others' thing by toward them be-it at wrong be-it at right
663 Li roys s'en vint par la contée de Provence jusques
The king himself-thence came through the county of Provence until
à une citei que on appele Ays en Provence, là où l'on
to a city which one calls Aix in Provence there where one
disoit que li cors à Magdeleinne gisoit; et fumes en une
said that the body of Magdalene lay and we-were in a
voute de roche mout haute, là où l'on disoit que la
vault of rock very high there where one said that the
Magdeleinne avoit estei en hermitaige dix-sept ans. Quant
Magdalene had been in hermitage seventeen years When
li rois vint à Biaukaire, et je le vi en sa terre et en
the king came to Beaucaire and I him saw in his land and in
son pooir, je pris congié de li, et m'en ving par la
his power I took leave of him and myself-thence came by the

daufine de Viennois ma nice, et par le conte de Chalon
dauphine of Viennois my niece and by the count of Chalon
mon oncle, et par le conte de Bourgoingne son fil.
my uncle and by the count of Burgundy his son
Et quand j'oi une piesce demourei à Joinville et je oy 664
And when I-had a while remained at Joinville and I had
faites mes besoignes, je me muz vers le roy, lequel je
done my affairs I myself moved toward the king whom I
trouvai à Soissons; et me fist si grant joie que tuit cil
found at Soissons and me made so great joy that all those
qui là estoient s'en merveillierent. Illec trouvai le
who there were themselves-thence marveled There I-found the
conte Jehan de Bretaigne, et sa femme la fille le roy
count John of Brittany and his wife the daughter (of-)the king
Tybaut, qui offri ses mains au roy de tel droiture comme
Thibaut who offered her hands to-the king for such right as
elle devoit avoir en Champaigne; et li roys l'ajourna au
she ought have in Champagne and the king her-summoned to-the
parlement à Paris, et le roy Thybaut de Navarre le secont
parliament at Paris and the king Thibaut of Navarre the second
qui là estoit, pour aus oyr et pour droit faire aus parties.
who there was for them to-hear and for right to-do to-the parties
Au parlement vint li roys de Navarre et ses consaus, et 665
At-the parliament came the king of Navarre and his council and
li cuens de Bretaingne aussi. A ce parlement, demanda li
the count of Brittany also At this parliament asked the
roys Thybaus ma dame Ysabel, la fille le roy, pour
king Thibaut my lady Isabel the daughter (of-)the king for
avoir à femme. Et les paroles que nos gens de Champaigne
to-have to wife And the words that our people of Champagne
menoient par dariere moy, pour l'amour que il orent veue
carried by behind me for the-love that they had seen

que li roys m'avoit moustrée à Soissons, je ne lessai pas
that the king me-had shown at Soissons I not left at-all
pour ce que je ne venisse au roy de France pour parler
for this that I not should-come to-the king of France for to-speak
dou dit mariaige. «Alez, dist li roys, si vous apaisiés au
of-the said marriage Go said the king so yourselves reconcile with-the
conte de Bretaingne, et puis si ferons nostre mariaige.»
count of Brittany and then so we-will-make our marriage
Et je li dis que pour ce ne devoit-il pas lessier. Et il me
And I to-him said that for this not ought-be at-all leave-off And he me
respondi que à nul fuer il ne feroit le mariaige jeusques
answered that at any price he not would-make the marriage until
à tant que la paiz fust faite, pour ce que l'on ne deist
to so-much that the peace were made for this that one not might-say
que il mariast ses enfans ou desheritement de ses barons.
that he married his children in-the disinheritance of his barons
666 Je raportai ces paroles à la royne Marguerite de Navarre
I reported these words to the queen Margaret of Navarre
et au roy son fil, et à lour autre consoil; et quant il
and to-the king her son and to their other council and when they
oïrent ce, il se hasterent de faire la paiz. Et après
heard this they themselves hastened of making the peace And after
ce que la paiz fu faite, li roys de France donna au roy
this that the peace was made the king of France gave to-the king
Thybaut sa fille; et furent les noces faites à Melun grans
Thibaut his daughter and were the weddings made at Melun great
et plenieres; et de là l'amena li roys Thybaus à Provins,
and full and from there her-brought the king Thibaut to Provins
là où la venue fu faite à grant foison de barons.
there where the coming was made with great plenty of barons

The King's Ways

LXV

After his return the king wears no vair, scarlet, or gilded spurs. He answers without his council when the right is plain: asked by Guy of Auxerre to compel excommunicates, he will not without hearing their cause. When the bishop of Châlons excommunicates Joinville over the abbey of Saint-Urbain, the king tells how he answered the prelates. When Abbot Geoffrey claims the abbey is in the king's keeping, the king has the truth inquired and gives the keeping to Joinville.

Après ce que li roys fu revenus d'outre mer, il se 667
After this that the king was come-back from-over sea he himself
maintint si devotement que onques puis ne porta ne vair
conducted so devoutly that ever after not he-wore neither vair
ne gris, ne escarlatte, ne estriers ne esperons dorez. Ses robes
nor gray nor scarlet nor stirrups nor spurs gilded His robes
estoient de camelin ou de pers; ses pennes de ses couvertours
were of camlet or of perse his linings of his coverlets
et de ses robes estoient de gamites, ou de jambes de
and of his robes were of buckskin or of legs of
lievres, ou d'aigniaus. Il estoit si sobres de sa bouche qu'il
hares or of-lambs He was so sober of his mouth that-he
ne devisoit nullement ses viandes, fors ce que ses cuisiniers
not ordered at-all his foods except that which his cooks
li appareilloit; et on le mettoit devant li, et il mangeoit.
for-him prepared and one it put before him and he ate
Son vin trampoit en un gobelet de voirre; et selon
His wine he-tempered in a goblet of glass and according-to
ce que li vins estoit, il metoit de l'eaue par mesure, et
this that the wine was he put of the-water by measure and
tenoit le gobelet en sa main ainsi comme on li trempoit
held the goblet in his hand just as one for-him tempered

son vin derriere sa table. Il faisoit tous jours mangier ses
his wine behind his table He had all days eat his
povres, et après mangier lour faisoit donner de ses deniers.
poor and after eating to-them had given of his pence
668 Quant li menestrier aus riches homes venoient léans et il
When the minstrels of-the rich men came in-there and they
apportoient lour vielles après mangier, il attendoit à oïr ses
brought their viols after eating he waited to hear his
graces tant que li menestriers eust fait sa lesse: lors se
graces until that the minstrel had done his lay then himself
levoit, et li prestre estoient devant li, qui disoient ses graces.
rose and the priests were before him who said his graces
Quant nous estiens privéement léans, il s'asséoit aus piés
When we were privately in-there he himself-sat at-the feet
de son lit; et quant li Preescheour et li Cordelier qui là
of his bed and when the Preachers and the Cordeliers who there
estoient, li ramentevoient aucun livre qu'il oyst volentiers,
were to-him mentioned some book that-he would-hear willingly
il lour disoit: «Vous ne me lirez point; car il n'est si bons
he to-them said You not me will-read at-all for it not-is so good
livres après mangier comme quolibet, c'est-à-dire que chascuns
book after eating as quodlibet this-is-to-say that each
die ce que il veut.» Quant aucun riche home estrange
may-say that which he wishes When some rich man strange
mangoient avec li, il lour estoit de bone compaingnie.
ate with him he to-them was of good company
669 De sa sapience vous dirai-je. Il fu tel foiz que l'on tesmoingnoit
Of his wisdom to-you will-tell-I It was such time that one witnessed
qu'il n'avoit si saige à son consoil comme il estoit. Et parut à
that-it not-had so wise in his council as he was And it-appeared in
ce que quant on li parloit d'aucunes choses, il ne disoit pas:
this that when one to-him spoke of-some things he not said at-all

«Je m'en conseillerai;» ains quant il véoit le droit tout cler
I myself-thereof will-take-counsel rather when he saw the right all clear
et appert, il respondoit tout senz son consoil, tout de venue:
and open he answered all without his council all at once
dont je ai oï que il respondi à touz les prelas dou royaume
whereof I have heard that he answered to all the prelates of-the realm
de France d'une requeste que il li firent, qui fu teix.
of France of-a request that they to-him made which was such
Li evesques Guis d'Aucerre li dist pour aus touz: «Sire, 670
The bishop Guy of-Auxerre to-him said for them all Lord
fist-il, cist arcevesque et cist evesque qui ci sont m'ont chargié
said-he these archbishops and these bishops who here are me-have charged
que je vous die que la cretientés dechiet et font entre vos
that I to-you may-say that the Christendom decays and melts between your
mains, et decherra encore plus se vous n'i metez consoil,
hands and will-decay still more if you not-there put counsel
pour ce que nulz ne doute hui et le jour escommeniement.
for this that anyone not fears today and the day excommunication
Si vous requerons, sire, que vous commandez à vos bailliz
So you we-require lord that you command to your bailiffs
et à vos serjans que il contreingnent les escommeniés qui
and to your sergeants that they constrain the excommunicates who
averont soustenue la sentence an et jour, par quoy il
will-have sustained the sentence year and day by which they
facent satisfaction à l'Esglise.» Et li roys lour respondi
may-make satisfaction to the-Church And the king to-them answered
tout sanz consoil, que il commanderoit volentiers à ses bailliz
all without counsel that he would-command willingly to his bailiffs
et à ses serjans que il constreignissent les escommeniés
and to his sergeants that they should-constrain the excommunicates

ainsi comme il le requeroient, mais que on li donnast
just as they it required provided that one to-him should-give
la congnoissance se la sentence estoit droituriere ou non.
the cognizance if the sentence was righteous or not
671 Et il se conseillierent et respondirent au roy, que
And they themselves took-counsel and answered to-the king that
de ce que il afferoit à la crestientei ne li donroient-il la
of this that it pertained to the Christendom not to-him would-give-they the
congnoissance. Et li roys lour respondi aussi, que de ce que
cognizance And the king to-them answered also that of this that
il afferoit à li, ne lour dourroit-il jà la congnoissance, ne
it pertained to him not to-them would-give-he ever the cognizance nor
ne commanderoit jà à ses serjans que il constreinsissent les
not would-command ever to his sergeants that they should-constrain the
excommeniés à aus faire absoudre, fust tors, fust drois.
excommunicates to themselves make be-absolved were-it wrong were-it right
«Car se je le fesoie, je feroie contre Dieu et contre droit.
For if I it did I would-do against God and against right
Et si vous en mousterrai un exemple qui est teix, que li
And so you thereof I-will-show an example which is such that the
evesque de Bretaingne ont tenu le conte de Bretaingne bien
bishops of Brittany have held the count of Brittany fully
sept ans en escommeniement, et puis a eu absolucion
seven years in excommunication and then has-he had absolution
par la court de Rome; et se je l'eusse contreint dès la
by the court of Rome and if I him-had constrained from the
premiere année, je l'eusse contreint à tort.»
first year I him-would-have constrained at wrong
672 Il avint, quant nous fumes revenu d'outre mer, que li
It happened when we were come-back from-over sea that the
moinne de Saint-Urbain esleurent dous abbés: li evesques
monks of Saint-Urbain elected two abbots the bishop

Pierres de Chaalons (que Diex absoille!) les chassa tous
Peter of Châlons whom God absolve them chased both
dous, et beney en abbei mon signour Jehan de Mymeri, et
two and blessed as abbot my lord John of Mymeri and
li donna la croce. Je ne le voil recevoir à abbei, pour
to-him gave the crozier I not him wished to-receive as abbot for
ce qu'il avoit fait tort à l'abbei Geoffroy, qui avoit appelei
this that-he had done wrong to the-abbot Geoffrey who had appealed
contre li et estoit alez à Rome. Je ting tant l'abbaïe en ma
against him and was gone to Rome I held so-long the-abbey in my
main que li diz Geffrois emporta la croce, et cil la perdi
hand that the said Geoffrey carried-off the crozier and he it lost
à cui li evesques l'avoit donnée; et tandis que li contens
to whom the bishop it-had given and while that the dispute
en dura, li evesques me fist escommenier. Dont il ot, à
thereof lasted the bishop me had excommunicated Whence it had at
un parlement qui fu à Paris, grant tribouil de moy et de
a parliament which was at Paris great tumult of me and of
l'evesque Perron de Chaalons, et de la contesse Marguerite
the-bishop Peter of Châlons and of the countess Margaret
de Flandres et de l'ercevesque de Reins, qu'elle desmanti.
of Flanders and of the-archbishop of Reims whom-she gave-the-lie
A l'autre parlement qui vint après, prierent tuit li prelat au 673
At the-other parliament which came after prayed all the prelates to-the
roy que il venist parler à aus touz seus. Quant il revint de
king that he should-come to-speak to them all alone When he came-back from
parler aus prelas, il vint à nous qui l'atendiens en la chambre
speaking to-the prelates he came to us who him-awaited in the chamber
aus plaiz, et nous dist en riant le tourment que il avoit eu
of-the pleas and us told in laughing the torment that he had had
aus prelas, dont li premiers fu teix, que li ercevesques
with-the prelates of-which the first was such that the archbishop

de Reins avoit dit au roy: «Sire, que me ferez-vous de la
of Reims had said to-the king Lord what me will-you-do of the
garde Saint-Remi de Reins que vous me tollez? car par
keeping (of-)Saint-Remi of Reims which you from-me take for by
les sains de céans je ne vouroie avoir un tel pechié comme
the relics of in-here I not would-wish to-have a such sin as
vous avez, pour tout le royaume de France. — Par les sains
you have for all the realm of France By the relics
de céans, fist li roys, si feriés pour Compieigne, par
of in-here said the king so would-you-do for Compiègne by
la couvoitise qui est en vous. Or en y a un parjure.
the covetousness which is in you Now thereof there has one perjured
— «Li evesques de Chartres me requist, fist li roys, que
The bishop of Chartres me required said the king that
je li feisse recroire ce que je tenoie dou sien. Et
I to-him should-make give-back that which I held of-the his And
je li diz que non feroie, jeusques à tant que mes
I to-him said that not I-would-do until to so-much that my
chatex seroit paiés. Et li dis que il estoit mes hom
chattel would-be paid And to-him I-said that he was my man
de ses mains, et que il ne se menoit ne bien ne
by his hands and that he not himself conducted neither well nor
loialment vers moy quant il me vouloit desheritier.
loyally toward me when he me wished to-disinherit
— «Li evesques de Chalons me dist, fist li roys: — Sire, que
The bishop of Châlons me said said the king Lord what
me ferez-vous dou signour de Joinville, qui tolt à ce povre
me will-you-do of-the lord of Joinville who takes-away from this poor
moinne l'abbaïe de Saint-Urbain? — Sire evesques, fist li roys,
monk the-abbey of Saint-Urbain Lord bishop said the king
entre vous avez establi que l'on ne doit oyr nul escommenié
among you have established that one not ought hear any excommunicate

en court laie; et j'ai veues lettres seelées de trente-dous
in court lay and I-have seen letters sealed with thirty-two
seaus que vous estes escommeniés: dont je ne vous escouterai
seals that you are excommunicate whereof I not you will-listen
jeusques à tant que vous soiés absouz.» Et ces choses vous
until to so-much that you be absolved And these things to-you
moustré-je, pour ce que vous voyez tout cler comme il se
show-I for this that you may-see all clear how he himself
delivra touz seus, par son senz, de ce que il avoit à faire.
rid all alone by his sense of this that he had to do
Li abbes Geffrois de Saint-Urbain, après ce que je li oz 676
The abbot Geoffrey of Saint-Urbain after this that I to-him had
faite sa besoingne, si me rendi mal pour bien, et appela contre
done his business so me rendered ill for good and appealed against
moy. A nostre saint roy fist entendant que il estoit en sa
me To our holy king he-made understand that he was in his
garde. Je requis au roy que il feist savoir la veritei, se la
keeping I asked of-the king that he should-make known the truth if the
garde estoit seue ou moye. «Sire, fist li abbes, ce ne ferez-vous
keeping was his or mine Lord said the abbot this not will-do-you
jà, se Dieu plait; mais nous tenez en plait ordenei entre nous
ever if God pleases but us hold in plea ordered between us
et le signour de Joinville; que nous amons miex avoir nostre
and the lord of Joinville for we love better to-have our
abbaïe en vostre garde, que non à celi cui li eritaiges est.»
abbey in your keeping than not in him whose the heritage is
Lors me dist li roy: «Dient-il voir, que la garde de l'abbaïe
Then me said the king Say-they true that the keeping of the-abbey
est moye? — Certes, sire, fiz-je, non est, ains est moye.»
is mine Certainly lord said-I not is-it rather is mine

677 Lors dist li roys: «Il puet bien estre que li eritaiges est
Then said the king It can well be that the heritage is
vostre, mais en la garde de vostre abbaïe n'avés-vous riens.
yours but in the keeping of your abbey not-have-you anything
Ains convient, se vous voulés, et selonc ce que vous dites et
Rather behooves-it if you wish and according-to this that you say and
selonc ce que li seneschaus dit, qu'elle demeure ou à moy
according-to this that the seneschal says that-it remain either to me
ou à li. Ne je ne lairai jà pour chose que vous en dites,
or to him Nor I not will-leave ever for thing that you thereof say
que je n'en face savoir la veritei; car se je le metoie en plait
that I not-thereof make know the truth for if I it put in plea
ordenei, je mespenroie vers li qui est mes hom, se je li
ordered I would-wrong toward him who is my man if I to-him
metoie son droit en plait, douquel droit il me offre à faire savoir
put his right in plea of-which right he me offers to make know
la veritei clerement.» Il fist savoir la veritei; et la veritei seue,
the truth clearly He made known the truth and the truth known
il me delivra la garde de l'abbaïe et m'en bailla ses lettres.
he me delivered the keeping of the-abbey and me-thereof gave his letters

The King's Peace and His Charity

LXVI

Against his council the king makes peace with England. He reconciles his neighbors, from Burgundy to Luxembourg, saying that letting them war would turn them against him. He punishes blasphemy, setting a goldsmith on the ladder at Caesarea with a pig's entrails about his neck; in twenty-two years Joinville never heard him swear. He teaches his children from the deeds of good and bad kings, gives alms wherever he goes, founds abbeys, and gives benefices on good counsel.

Il avint que li sains roys pourchassa tant, que li roys 678
It happened that the holy king pursued so-much that the king
d'Angleterre, sa femme et sui enfant vindrent en France pour
of-England his wife and his children came to France for
traitier de la paiz de li et d'aus. De la dite paiz furent
to-treat of the peace of him and of-them Of the said peace were
mout contraire cil de son consoil, et li disoient ainsi:
very contrary those of his council and to-him said thus
«Sire, nous nous merveillons mout que vostre volentés est
Lord we ourselves marvel much that your will is
teix, que vous voulez donner au roy d'Angleterre si grant
such that you wish to-give to-the king of-England so great
partie de vostre terre, que vous et vostre devancier avez
part of your land which you and your predecessors have
conquise sus li et par son mesfait. Dont il nous semble
conquered from him and by his misdeed Whence it us seems
que se vous entendez que vous n'i aiés droit, que vous
that if you understand that you not-there may-have right that you
ne faites pas bon rendaige au roy d'Angleterre, se vous ne
not make at-all good restitution to-the king of-England if you not
li rendez toute la conqueste que vous et vostre devancier
to-him render all the conquest that you and your predecessors

avez faite; et se vous entendez que vous y aiés droit,
have made and if you understand that you there may-have right
il nous semble que vous perdez quant que vous li rendez.
it us seems that you lose what that you to-him render
679 A ce respondi li sains roys en tel maniere: «Signour, je
To this answered the holy king in such manner Lords I
sui certains que li devancier au roy d'Angleterre ont perdu
am certain that the predecessors of-the king of-England have lost
tout par droit la conqueste que je tieing; et la terre que
all by right the conquest that I hold and the land that
je li doing, ne li doing-je pas pour chose que je soie
I to-him give not to-him give-I at-all for thing that I be
tenus à li ne à ses hoirs, mais pour mettre amour entre
held to him nor to his heirs but for to-put love between
mes enfans et les siens, qui sont cousin germain. Et me
my children and the his who are cousins german And me
semble que ce que je li doing emploi-je bien, pour ce que
seems that this which I to-him give employ-I well for this that
il n'estoit pas mes hom, si en entre en mon houmaige.»
he not-was at-all my man so thereby enters into my homage
680 Ce fu li om dou monde qui plus se traveilla de paiz
This was the man of-the world who most himself labored for peace
entre ses sousgis, et especialment entre les riches homes
between his subjects and especially between the rich men
voisins et les princes dou royaume, si comme entre le conte
neighbors and the princes of-the realm so as between the count
de Chalon, oncle au signour de Joinville, et son fil le
of Chalon uncle to-the lord of Joinville and his son the
conte de Bourgoingne, qui avoient grant guerre quant nous
count of Burgundy who had great war when we
revenimes d'outremer. Et pour la paiz dou pere et dou fil,
came-back from-overseas And for the peace of-the father and of-the son

il envoia de son consoil en Bourgoingne et à ses despens;
he sent of his council into Burgundy and at his expense
et par son pourchas fu faite la paiz dou pere et dou fil.
and by his effort was made the peace of-the father and of-the son
Puis ot grant guerre entre le secont roy Tibaut de 681
Then there-was great war between the second king Thibaut of
Champaigne, et le conte Jehan de Chalon, et le conte
Champagne and the count John of Chalon and the count
de Bourgoingne son fil, pour l'abbaïe de Lizeu. Pour laquel
of Burgundy his son for the-abbey of Luxeuil For which
guerre appaisier, mes sires li roys y envoia mon signour
war to-calm my lord the king there sent my lord
Gervaise d'Ecrangnes, qui lors estoit maistres queus de
Gervase of-Escrennes who then was master cook of
France; et par son pourchas il les apaisa.
France and by his effort he them reconciled
Après ceste guerre que li roys appaisa, revint une autre 682
After this war that the king calmed came-again an other
grans guerre entre le conte Thybaut de Bar et le conte
great war between the count Thibaut of Bar and the count
Henri de Lucembourc, qui avoit sa serour à femme; et
Henry of Luxembourg who had his sister to wife and
avint ainsi, que il se combatirent li uns à l'autre
it-happened so that they themselves fought the one with the-other
desouz Priney, et prist li cuens Thybaus de Bar le conte
below Prény and took the count Thibaut of Bar the count
Henri de Lucembourc, et prist le chastel de Lynei, qui
Henry of Luxembourg and took the castle of Ligny which
estoit au conte de Lucembourc de par sa femme. Pour
was to-the count of Luxembourg by right-of his wife For
celle guerre appaisier, envoia li roys mon signour Perron le
that war to-calm sent the king my lord Peter the

chamberlain, l'ome dou monde que il créoit plus, et aus
chamberlain the-man of-the world whom he trusted most and at-the
despens le roy; et tant fist li roys que il furent apaisié.
expense (of-)the king and so-much did the king that they were reconciled
683 De ces gens estranges que li roys avoit appaisié, li disoient
Of these people strange whom the king had reconciled to-him said
aucun de son consoil que il ne fesoit pas bien quant il ne les
some of his council that he not did at-all well when he not them
lessoit guerroier; car se il les lessast bien apovrir, il ne li
let make-war for if he them let well impoverish they not him
courroient pas sus si tost comme se il estoient bien riche. Et
would-run at-all upon so soon as if they were well rich And
à ce respondoit li roys et disoit que il ne disoient pas bien.
to this answered the king and said that they not said at-all well
«Car se li prince voisin véoient que je les lessasse guerroier,
For if the princes neighbors saw that I them let make-war
il se pourroient avisier entre aus, et dire: — Li roys par
they themselves could bethink among them and say The king by
son malice nous laisse guerroier. — Si en avenroit ainsi que
his malice us lets make-war So thereof would-happen thus that
par la hainne que il averoient à moy, il me venroient courre
by the hatred that they would-have to me they me would-come to-run
sus, dont je pourroie bien perdre, sans la hainne de Dieu que
upon whereof I could well lose without the hatred of God which
je conquerroie, qui dist: — Benoit soient tuit li apaiseour.»
I would-win who said Blessed be all the peacemakers
684 Dont il avint ainsi, que li Bourgoignon et li Loorein que
Whence it happened so that the Burgundians and the Lorrainers whom
il avoit apaisiés, l'amoient tant et obéissoient, que je les vi
he had reconciled him-loved so-much and obeyed that I them saw

venir plaidier par devant le roy, des descors que il avoient
come to-plead by before the king of-the disputes that they had
entre aus, à la court le roy à Rains, à Paris et à Orliens.
between them at the court (of-)the king at Reims at Paris and at Orléans
Li roys ama tant Dieu et sa douce Mere, que touz ceus 685
The king loved so-much God and his sweet Mother that all those
que il pooit atteindre qui disoient de Dieu ne de sa Mere
whom he could reach who said of God or of his Mother
chose deshoneste ne vilein sairement, que il les fesoit punir
thing dishonest or churlish oath that he them had punished
griefment. Dont je vi que il fist mettre un orfevre en l'eschiele
grievously Whence I saw that he had put a goldsmith on the-ladder
à Cezaire, en braies et en chemise, les boiaus et la fressure
at Caesarea in breeches and in shirt the guts and the pluck
d'un porc entour le col, et à si grant foison que elles li
of-a pig around the neck and in so great plenty that they to-him
avenoient jeusques au nez. Je oy dire que puis que je reving
reached until to-the nose I heard say that since that I came-back
d'outre-mer, que il en fist cuire le nez et le balevre à un
from-over-sea that he thereof had burned the nose and the lip of a
bourjois de Paris; mais je ne le vi pas. Et dist li sains roys:
burgher of Paris but I not it saw at-all And said the holy king
«Je vourroie estre seigniez d'un fer chaut, par tel couvenant
I would-wish to-be marked with-an iron hot by such covenant
que tuit vilein sairement fussent ostei de mon royaume.»
that all churlish oaths were removed from my realm
Je fu bien vint-dous ans en sa compaignie, que onques 686
I was fully twenty-two years in his company so-that ever
Dieu ne li oy jurer, ne sa mere, ne ses sains; et
God not him I-heard swear nor his mother nor his saints and

quant il vouloit aucune chose affermer, il disoit: «Vraiement
when he wished any thing to-affirm he said Truly
il fu ainsi,» ou: «Vraiement il est ainsi.»
it was so or Truly it is so

687 Onques ne ly oy nommer le dyable, se ce ne fu en aucun
Ever not him I-heard name the devil if this not were in some
livre là où il l'afferoit à nommer, ou en la vie des sains
book there where it it-befitted to name or in the life of-the saints
de quoi li livres parloit. Et c'est grans honte au royaume de
of which the book spoke And this-is great shame to-the realm of
France et au roy quant il le seuffre, que à peinne puet l'on
France and to-the king when he it suffers that with pain can one
parler que on ne die: «Que dyables y ait part!» Et c'est
speak that one not may-say That devils there may-have part And this-is
grans faute de languaige, quant l'on approprie au dyable l'ome
great fault of language when one appropriates to-the devil the-man
ou la femme, qui sont donnei à Dieu dès que il furent baptizié.
or the woman who are given to God since that they were baptized
En l'ostel de Joinville, qui dit tel parole, il doit la bufe ou la
In the-household of Joinville who says such word he owes the slap or the
paumelle, et y est cis mauvais languaiges presque touz abatus.
cuff and there is this bad language almost all put-down

688 Il me demanda se je lavoie les piés aus povres le jeudi
He me asked if I washed the feet of-the poor the Thursday
absolu; et je li respondi que nanin, que il ne me sembloit
absolute and I to-him answered that no for it not me seemed
pas bien. Et il me dist que je ne le devoie pas avoir en despit,
at-all well And he me said that I not it ought at-all have in despite
car Diex l'avoit fait. «Car mout envis feriés ce que li
for God it-had done For very unwillingly you-would-do that which the
roys d'Angleterre fait, qui lave les piez aus mesiaus et baize.
king of-England does who washes the feet of-the lepers and kisses

Avant que il se couchast en son lit, il fesoit venir ses 689
Before that he himself lay-down in his bed he had come his
enfans devant li, et lour recordoit les faiz des bons roys
children before him and to-them recounted the deeds of-the good kings
et des bons empereours, et lour disoit que à tiex gens
and of-the good emperors and to-them said that from such people
devoient-il penre exemple. Et lour recordoit aussi les faiz
ought-they take example And to-them he-recounted also the deeds
des mauvais riches homes qui, par lour luxure et par lour
of-the wicked rich men who by their lust and by their
rapines et par lour avarice, avoient perdus lour royaumes.
rapines and by their avarice had lost their realms
«Et ces choses, fesoit-il, vous ramentoif-je, pour ce que vous
And these things said-he you recall-I for this that you
vous en gardez, par quoy Diex ne se courousse à
yourselves thereof may-guard by which God not himself may-anger at
vous.» Lour heures de Nostre Dame lour fesoit apenre, et
you Their hours of Our Lady them he-had learn and
lour fesoit dire devant li lour heures dou jour, pour aus
them had say before him their hours of-the day for them
acoustumer à oyr lour heures quant il tenroient lour terres.
to-accustom to hear their hours when they would-hold their lands
Li roys fu si larges aumosniers, que partout là où il 690
The king was so liberal almsgiver that everywhere there where he
aloit en son royaume, il fesoit donner aus povres esglises,
went in his realm he had given to-the poor churches
à maladeries, à maisons-Dieu, à hospitaus, et à povres
to leper-houses to houses-of-God to hospitals and to poor
gentis homes et gentis femmes. Touz les jours il donnoit à
gentle men and gentle women All the days he gave to
mangier à grant foison de povres, sans ceus qui mangoient
eat to great plenty of poor without those who ate

en sa chambre; et maintes foiz vi que il meismes lour
in his chamber and many times I-saw that he himself to-them
tailloit lour pain et donnoit à boivre.
cut their bread and gave to drink

691 De son tens furent edefiées plusours abbaïes; c'est à savoir
In his time were built several abbeys this-is to know
Royaumons, l'abbaïe de Saint-Antoinne delez Paris, l'abbaïe
Royaumont the-abbey of Saint-Antoine beside Paris the-abbey
dou Liz, l'abbaye de Malbisson, et plusours autres religions
of-the Lis the-abbey of Maubuisson and several other religious-houses
de Preescheours et de Cordeliers. Il fist la maison-Dieu
of Preachers and of Cordeliers He made the house-of-God
de Pontoise, la maison-Dieu de Vernon, la maison des
of Pontoise the house-of-God of Vernon the house of-the
Aveugles de Paris, l'abbaïe des Cordelieres de Saint-Clou,
Blind of Paris the-abbey of-the Cordelier-nuns of Saint-Cloud
que sa suer ma dame Ysabiaus fonda par son otroi.
which his sister my lady Isabel founded by his grant

692 Quant aucuns benefices de sainte Esglise eschéoit au roy,
When some benefices of holy Church fell to-the king
avant que il le donnast il se conseilloit à bones persones
before that he it gave he himself took-counsel with good persons
de religion et d'autres; et quant il s'estoit conseilliez, il lour
of religion and of-others and when he himself-had taken-counsel he them
donnoit les benefices de sainte Esglise en bone foy, loialment
gave the benefices of holy Church in good faith loyally
et selonc Dieu. Ne il ne vouloit nul benefice donner à nul
and according-to God Nor he not wished any benefice to-give to any
clerc, se il ne renonçoit aus autres benefices des esglises que
clerk if he not renounced the other benefices of-the churches that
il avoit. En toutes les villes de son roiaume là où il n'avoit
he had In all the towns of his realm there where he not-had

onques estei, il aloit aus Preescheours et aus Cordeliers,
ever been he went to-the Preachers and to-the Cordeliers
se il en y avoit nulz, pour requerre lour oroisons.
if it thereof there had any for to-ask their prayers

The Reform of the Realm

LXVII

Joinville copies the king's ordinance. Bailiffs, provosts, and sergeants are to swear to do justice, to take no gifts for themselves or their kin, and to give none to his council; to buy no land and marry no child in their bailiwicks without leave; to keep few sergeants, imprison no one for debt, and levy fines only in open court; not to sell their offices or forbid trade without need; and to remain forty days after leaving office to answer complaints.

Après ce que li roys Loys fu revenus d'outre mer en 693
After this that the king Louis was come-back from-over sea into
France, il se contint si devotement envers Nostre Signour,
France he himself conducted so devoutly toward Our Lord
et si droiturierement envers ses sougiez; si regarda et
and so righteously toward his subjects so looked and
apensa que mout estoit belle chose et bonne d'amender
bethought that much was fair thing and good of-amending
le royaume de France. Premierement, establi un general
the realm of France First he-established a general
establissement sus les sougiez par tout le royaume de
ordinance upon the subjects through all the realm of
France, en la maniere qui s'ensuit.
France in the manner which itself-follows

694 Nous Looys, par la grace de Dieu roys de France,
We Louis by the grace of God king of France
establissons que tuit nostre baillif, viconte, prevost, maieur
establish that all our bailiffs viscounts provosts mayors
et tuit autre, en quelque afaire que ce soit, ne en quelque
and all others in whatever affair that it be or in whatever
office que il soient, facent serement que tant comme il
office that they be may-make oath that as-long as they
soient en offices ou en baillies, il feront droit à chascun,
may-be in offices or in bailiwicks they will-do right to each
sanz excepcion de persones, aussi aus povres comme aus
without exception of persons as to-the poor as to-the
riches, et à l'estrange comme au privé; et garderont les
rich and to the-stranger as to-the familiar and will-keep the
us et les coutumes qui sont bones et esprouvées.
usages and the customs which are good and proved
695 Et se il avient chose que li baillif ou li viconte ou autre, si
And if it happens thing that the bailiffs or the viscounts or others so
comme serjant ou forestier, facent contre leur seremens, et il
as sergeants or foresters may-do against their oaths and they
en soient attaint, nous voulons que il en soient puni en
thereof be convicted we wish that they thereof be punished in
leur biens, et en leur persones se li mesfaiz le requiert; et
their goods and in their persons if the misdeed it requires and
seront li baillif puni par nous, et li autre par les bailliz.
will-be the bailiffs punished by us and the others by the bailiffs
696 Derechief, li autre prevost, li baillif et li serjant jureront
Further the other provosts the bailiffs and the sergeants will-swear
que il garderont loialment nos rentes et nos droiz, ne ne
that they will-keep loyally our rents and our rights nor not
souferront nos droiz que il soient soustrait, ne osté, ne
will-suffer our rights that they be withdrawn or removed or

amenuisié; et avec ce il jureront que il ne penront ne
diminished and with this they will-swear that they not will-take nor
ne recevront, par aus ne par autres, ne or ne argent
not will-receive by themselves nor by others neither gold nor silver
ne benefices par decoste, ne autres choses, se ce n'est fruit,
nor benefits by side nor other things if this not-is fruit
ou pain, ou vin, ou autre present jeusques à la somme de
or bread or wine or other present until to the sum of
dix sous, et que la dite somme ne soit pas seurmontée.
ten sous and that the said sum not be at-all exceeded
Et avec ce il jureront que il ne penront ne ne feront 697
And with this they will-swear that they not will-take nor not will-have
penre nul don, quex que il soit, à leur femmes, ne à leur
taken any gift whatever that it be to their wives nor to their
enfans, ne à leur freres, ne à leur sereurs, ne à autre persone,
children nor to their brothers nor to their sisters nor to other person
tant soit privée d'aus; et si tost comme il sauront que
however-much be-it familiar to-them and so soon as they will-know that
tel don seront receu, il les feront rendre au plus tost que
such gifts will-be received they them will-have rendered at-the most soon that
il pourront. Et avec ce il jureront que il ne recevront
they will-be-able And with this they will-swear that they not will-receive
don nul, quex que il soit, de home qui soit de leur baillie,
gift any whatever that it be from man who be of their bailiwick
ne d'autres qui cause ayent ne qui plaident par devant aus.
nor from-others who cause may-have nor who plead by before them
Derechief, il jureront que il ne donront ne n'envoieront nul 698
Further they will-swear that they not will-give nor not-will-send any
don à home qui soit de nostre conseil, ne aus femmes, ne aus
gift to man who be of our council nor to-the wives nor to-the
enfans, ne à ame qui leur apartieingne, ne à ceus qui leur
children nor to soul who to-them pertains nor to those who their

contes recevront de par nous, ne à nulz enquesteurs que nous
accounts will-receive on behalf-of us nor to any inquirers that we
envoions en leur baillies ne en leur prevostés, pour leur faiz
send into their bailiwicks nor into their provostships for their deeds
enquerre. Et avec ce il jureront que il ne partiront à vente
to-inquire And with this they will-swear that they not will-share in sale
nulle que l'on face de nos rentes, de nos bailliages, ou de
any that one may-make of our rents of our bailiwicks or of
nostre monnoie, ne à autres choses qui nous apartieingnent.
our coinage nor in other things which to-us pertain

699 Et jureront et promettront que se il saivent souz aus
And they-will-swear and will-promise that if they know under them
nul official, serjant ou prevost qui soient desloial, rapineur,
any official sergeant or provost who may-be disloyal plunderer
usurier, ou plein d'autres vices par quoy il doivent perdre
usurer or full of-other vices by which they ought lose
nostre service, que il ne les soustenront par don, ne par
our service that they not them will-uphold for gift nor for
promesse, ne par amour, ne par autres choses; ainçois les
promise nor for love nor for other things rather them
puniront et jugeront en bone foy.
will-punish and will-judge in good faith

700 Derechief, nostre prevost, nostre viconte, nostre maieur,
Further our provosts our viscounts our mayors
nostre forestier et nostre autre serjant à pié ou à cheval,
our foresters and our other sergeants on foot or on horse
jureront que il ne donront nulz dons à leur souverains,
will-swear that they not will-give any gifts to their sovereigns
ne à femmes, ne à enfans qui leur apartieingnent.
nor to wives nor to children who to-them pertain

Et pour ce que nous voulons que cist serement soient 701
And for this that we wish that these oaths be
fermement establi, nous voulons que il soient pris en pleinne
firmly established we wish that they be taken in full
assise, devant touz, et clers et lais, chevaliers et serjans, jà
assize before all both clerks and lay knights and sergeants already
soit ce que il aient juré devant nous; à ce que il doutent
be-it this that they may-have sworn before us to this that they may-fear
à encorre le vice de parjurer, non pas tant seulement pour
to incur the vice of perjuring not at-all so-much only for
la paour de Dieu et de nous, mais pour la honte dou monde.
the fear of God and of us but for the shame of-the world
Nous voulons et establissons que tuit nostre prevost et 702
We wish and establish that all our provosts and
nostre baillif se tieingnent de jurer parole qui tieingne
our bailiffs themselves may-keep from swearing word which may-hold
au despit de Dieu, ne de Nostre Dame et de touz sains, et
to-the despite of God nor of Our Lady and of all saints and
se gardent de geu de dez et de tavernes. Nous voulons
themselves may-guard from game of dice and from taverns We wish
que la forge de dez soit deffendue par tout nostre royaume,
that the forging of dice be forbidden through all our realm
et que les foles femmes soient boutées hors des maisons;
and that the foolish women be thrust out of-the houses
et quiconques louera maison à fole femme, il rendra au
and whoever will-rent house to foolish woman he will-render to-the
prevost ou au baillif le loier de la maison d'un an.
provost or to-the bailiff the rent of the house of-a year
Après, nous deffendons que nostre baillif outréement 703
After we forbid that our bailiffs utterly
n'achatent ne ne facent acheter, par aus ne par autres,
not-buy nor not may-make be-bought by themselves nor by others

possessions ne terres qui soient en lour baillies, ne en
possessions nor lands which may-be in their bailiwicks nor in
autre, tant comme il soient en nostre servise, sans nostre
other as-long as they may-be in our service without our
congié; et se tel achat se font, nous voulons qu'il
leave and if such purchase themselves make we wish that-they
soient et demourent en nostre main.
be and remain in our hand

704 Nous deffendons à nos bailliz que tant comme il seront en
We forbid to our bailiffs that as-long as they will-be in
nostre service, il ne marient fiz ne filles que il aient,
our service they not marry sons nor daughters that they may-have
ne autres personnes qui leur apartieingnent à nulle autre
nor other persons who to-them pertain to any other
personne de leur baillie, sanz nostre especial congié; et avec
person of their bailiwick without our special leave and with
ce, que il ne les mettent en religion de leur bailliage, ne que
this that they not them put in religion of their bailiwick nor that
il leur acquierent benefice de sainte Esglise, ne possession
they for-them acquire benefice of holy Church nor possession
nulle; et avec ce, que il ne preingnent vivre ne procuracions
any and with this that they not take living nor procurations
en maison de religion, ne près d'aus, aus despens des religieus.
in house of religion nor near to-them at-the expense of-the religious
Ceste deffense des mariages et des possessions aquerre, si
This prohibition of-the marriages and of-the possessions to-acquire so
comme nous avons dit, ne voulons-nous qu'elle se estende
as we have said not wish-we that-it itself extend
aus prevos, ne aus maieurs, ne aus autres de meneur office.
to-the provosts nor to-the mayors nor to-the others of lesser office

Nous commandons que baillif, ne prevost, ne autre, ne 705
We command that bailiff nor provost nor other not
tieingnent trop grant plenté de serjans et de bediaus, pour
keep too great plenty of sergeants and of beadles for
ce que li peuples ne soit grevez; et voulons que li bedel
this that the people not be burdened and we-wish that the beadles
soient nommé en pleinne assise, ou autrement ne soient
be named in full assize or otherwise not be
pas tenu pour bediaus. Où nostre serjant soient envoié
at-all held for beadles Where our sergeants may-be sent
en aucun lieu loing ou en estrange pays, nous voulons
into any place far or into strange country we wish
que il ne soient pas creu sanz lettres de leur souverains.
that they not be at-all believed without letters of their sovereigns
Nous commandons que baillis ne prevoz qui soit en nostre 706
We command that bailiff nor provost who may-be in our
office, ne greve les bones gens de leur justice outre droiture;
office not burden the good people of their jurisdiction beyond right
ne que nul de ceus qui soient desous nous, soient mis en prison
nor that any of those who may-be under us be put in prison
pour debde que il doivent, se ce n'est pour la nostre seulement.
for debt that they owe if this not-is for the ours only
Nous establissons que nulz de nos bailliz ne lieve amande 707
We establish that any of our bailiffs not may-levy fine
pour debde que nostre sougiet doivent, ne pour malefaçon,
for debt that our subjects owe nor for misdeed
se ce n'est en plein plait, où elle soit jugie et estimée,
if this not-is in full plea where it may-be judged and assessed
et par conseil de bones gens, jà soit ce que elle ait
and by counsel of good people already be-it this that it may-have
esté gagie par devant aus.
been pledged by before them

708 Et se il avient que cil qui sera d'aucun blasmez ne vueille pas
And if it happens that he who will-be by-someone blamed not may-wish at-all
atendre le jugement de la court qui offers li est, ainçois
to-await the judgment of the court which offered to-him is rather
offre certeinne somme de deniers pour l'amende, si comme l'on
offers certain sum of pence for the-fine so as one
a communement receu, nous voulons que la cours reçoive la
has commonly received we wish that the court may-receive the
somme des deniers se elle est raisonnable et couvenable; ou se
sum of-the pence if it is reasonable and fitting or if
ce non, nous voulons que l'amende soit jugie, selonc ce que
this not we wish that the-fine be judged according-to this that
il est desus dit, jà soit ce que li coupables se mette en la
it is above said already be-it this that the guilty himself may-put in the
volenté de la court. Nous deffendons que li baillif, ou li maieur,
will of the court We forbid that the bailiffs or the mayors
ou li prevost ne contreingnent, par menaces, ou par poour, ou
or the provosts not constrain by threats or by fear or
par aucune cavellacion, nos sougiez à paier amende en repost
by any chicanery our subjects to pay fine in secret
ou appert, et ne les accusent pas sans cause raisonnable.
or openly and not them accuse at-all without cause reasonable
709 Et establissons que cil qui tenront les prevostez, vicontés
And we-establish that those who will-hold the provostships viscounties
ou autres baillies, que il ne les puissent à autrui vendre
or other bailiwicks that they not them may to others sell
sanz nostre congié; et se pluseur achatent ensemble
without our leave and if several buy together
les offices desus nommez, nous voulons que li uns des
the offices above named we wish that the one of-the
acheteurs face l'office pour touz les autres, et use de
buyers may-do the-office for all the others and may-use of

la franchise qui appartient aus chevauchies, aus tailles et
the franchise which pertains to-the cavalcades to-the tallages and
aus communes charges, si comme il est acoustumé.
to-the common charges so as it is accustomed
Et deffendons que les diz offices il ne vendent à freres, à 710
And we-forbid that the said offices they not sell to brothers to
neveus et à cousins, puis que il les auront achetés de nous;
nephews and to cousins after that they them will-have bought from us
ne que il ne requierent debde que on leur doie par aus,
nor that they not demand debt that one to-them may-owe by themselves
se ce n'est des debdes qui appartieingnent à leur office;
if this not-is of-the debts which pertain to their office
mais leur propre debde requierent par l'auctorité dou baillif,
but their own debt let-them-demand by the-authority of-the bailiff
tout aussi comme se il ne fussent pas en nostre servise.
all just as if they not were at-all in our service
Nous deffendons que baillif ne prevost ne travaillent nos 711
We forbid that bailiff nor provost not harass our
sougiez en causes que il ont par devant aus menées, par
subjects in causes that they have by before them brought by
muement de lieu en autre; ainçois oyent les besoingnes
change of place to other rather let-them-hear the affairs
que il ont par devant aus, ou lieu là où il ont esté
that they have by before them in-the place there where they have been
acoustumé à oyr, si que il ne lessent pas à poursuivre
accustomed to hear so that they not leave-off at-all to pursue
leur droit pour travail ne pour despens.
their right for toil nor for expense
Derechief, nous commandons que il ne dessaisissent home 712
Further we command that they not dispossess man
de sesinne que il tieingne, sans congnoissance de cause, ou
of seisin that he may-hold without cognizance of cause or

sanz commandement especial de nous; ne que il ne grevent
without command special of us nor that they not burden
nostre gent de nouvelles exactions, de tailles et de coustumes
our people with new exactions of tallages and of customs
nouvelles; ne si ne semoingnent que l'on face chevauchie
new nor so not summon that one may-make cavalcade
pour avoir de leur argent; car nous voulons que nus qui doive
for to-have of their money for we wish that anyone who owes
chevauchie ne soit semons d'aler en ost sanz cause necessaire;
cavalcade not be summoned of-going into host without cause necessary
et cil qui voudront aler en ost en propres persones, ne
and those who will-wish to-go into host in own persons not
soient pas contraint à racheter leur voie par argent.
be at-all constrained to buy-off their going by money

713 Après, nous deffendons que baillif ne prevost ne facent
After we forbid that bailiff nor provost not may-make
deffendre de porter blé ne vin, ne autres marcheandises,
be-forbidden of carrying grain nor wine nor other merchandise
hors de nostre royaume, sanz cause necessaire; et quant il
out of our realm without cause necessary and when it
couvenra que deffense en soit faite, nous voulons qu'elle
will-behoove that prohibition thereof be made we wish that-it
soit faite communement en conseil de preudoumes, sanz
be made commonly in council of worthy-men without
souspeçon de fraude ne de boidie.
suspicion of fraud nor of guile

714 Item, nous voulons que tuit baillif vieil, viconte, prevost et
Likewise we wish that all bailiffs old viscounts provosts and
maieur soient, après ce que il seront hors de leur offices,
mayors be after this that they will-be out of their offices
par l'espace de quarante jours ou pays où il ont tenu
for the-space of forty days in-the country where they have held

leur offices, en leur propres persones ou par procureur, affin
their offices in their own persons or by proctor in-order
qu'il puissent respondre aus nouviaus bailliz, pour ce que
that-they may answer to-the new bailiffs for this that
il auroient mesfait contre ceus qui se vourroient pleindre
they would-have misdone against those who themselves would-wish to-complain
d'aus. Par cest establissement, amenda mout li royaumes.
of-them By this ordinance amended much the realm

The Provostship of Paris, and the King's Alms

LXVIII

The provostship of Paris had been sold, so that the rich went unpunished and the small people fled. The king pays a provost, Étienne Boileau, who hangs every malefactor, and the revenues double. The king feeds a hundred and twenty poor daily and serves them himself. He builds Royaumont, the Charterhouse of Vauvert, and the Filles-Dieu, saying he would rather spend too much on alms than on pomp, and provides for the Carmelites and other new orders of friars.

La prevostés de Paris estoit lors vendue aus bourjois de Paris, 715
The provostship of Paris was then sold to-the burghers of Paris
ou à aucuns; et quant il avenoit que aucun l'avoient achetée, si
or to some and when it happened that some it-had bought so
soustenoient lour enfans et lour neveus en lour outraiges; car
they-upheld their children and their nephews in their outrages for
li jouvencel avoient fiance en lour parens et en lour amis qui
the youths had trust in their kin and in their friends who
la prevostei tenoient. Pour ceste chose estoit trop li menus
the provostship held For this thing was very-much the small

peuples defoulez, ne ne pouoient avoir droit des riches homes,
people trampled nor not could have right of-the rich men
pour les grans presens et dons que il fesoient aus prevoz.
for the great presents and gifts that they made to-the provosts
716 Qui à ce temps disoit voir devant le prevost, ou qui vouloit
Who at this time said true before the provost or who wished
son sairement garder qu'il ne fust parjures, d'aucune debte
his oath to-keep so-that-he not were perjured of-any debt
ou d'aucune chose où l'on fust tenus de respondre, li prevoz
or of-any thing where one were held to answer the provost
en levoit amende, et estoit punis. Par les grans injures et par
thereof levied fine and he-was punished By the great injuries and by
les grans rapines qui estoient faites en la prevostei, li menus
the great rapines which were done in the provostship the small
peuples n'osoit demourer en la terre le roy, ains aloient
people not-dared dwell in the land (of-)the king rather went
demourer en autres prevostés et en autres signouries. Et estoit
to-dwell in other provostships and in other lordships And was
la terre le roy si vague, que quant li prevoz tenoit ses
the land (of-)the king so empty that when the provost held his
plaiz, il n'i venoit pas plus de dix personnes ou de douze.
pleas it not-there came at-all more than ten persons or than twelve
717 Avec ce il avoit tant de maufaitours et de larrons à Paris
With this it had so-many of malefactors and of thieves at Paris
et dehors, que touz li païs en estoit pleins. Li roys,
and outside that all the country thereof was full The king
qui metoit grant diligence comment li menus peuples fust
who put great diligence how the small people should-be
gardez, sot toute la veritei; si ne vout plus que la prevostés de
guarded knew all the truth so not wished more that the provostship of
Paris fust vendue, ains donna gaiges bons et grans à ceus
Paris should-be sold rather gave wages good and great to those

qui dès or en avant la garderoient. Et toutes les mauvaises
who from now on forward it would-keep And all the bad
coustumes dont li peuples pooit estre grevez, il abati; et
customs whereby the people could be burdened he put-down and
fist enquerre par tout le royaume et par tout le pays
had inquired through all the realm and through all the country
où l'on pourroit trouver home qui feist bone justise et
where one could find man who should-do good justice and
roide, et qui n'espargnast plus le riche home que le povre.
stiff and who not-should-spare more the rich man than the poor
Si li fu enditiez Estiennes Boilyaue, liquex maintint et garda 718
So to-him was pointed-out Étienne Boileau which maintained and kept
si la prevostei, que nus malfaiterres, ne liarres, ne murtriers
so the provostship that any malefactor nor thief nor murderer
n'osa demourer à Paris, qui tantost ne fust pendus ou destruiz:
not-dared dwell at Paris who at-once not were hanged or destroyed
ne parentés, ne lignaiges, ne ors, ne argens ne le pot garantir.
nor kinship nor lineage nor gold nor silver not him could protect
La terre le roy commença à amender, et li peuples y
The land (of-)the king began to amend and the people there
vint pour le bon droit que on y fesoit. Si mouteplia tant
came for the good right that one there did So it-multiplied so-much
et amenda, que les ventes, les saisinnes, li achat et les autres
and amended that the sales the seisins the purchases and the other
choses valoient à double que quant li roys y prenoit devant.
things were-worth at double than when the king there took before
En toutes ces choses que nous avons ordenées pour 719
In all these things that we have ordained for
le proufit de nos sougiez et de nostre royaume, nous
the profit of our subjects and of our realm we
retenons à nous pooir d'esclarcir, d'amender, d'ajouster et
retain to us power to-clarify to-amend to-add and

d'amenuisier, selonc ce que nous aurons conseil. Par cest
to-diminish according-to this that we will-have counsel By this
establissement, amenda mout li royaumes de France, si
ordinance amended much the realm of France so
comme plusour saige et ancien tesmoignent.
as several wise and ancient witness

720 Dès le tens de s'enfance, fu li roys piteus des povres et des
From the time of his-childhood was the king pitiful of-the poor and of-the
souffraiteus; et acoustumei estoit que li roys, partout où il
needy and accustomed it-was that the king everywhere where he
aloit, que six vins povre fussent tout adès repeu, en sa maison,
went that six score poor should-be all always fed in his house
de pain, de vin, de char ou de poisson, chascun jour. En
with bread with wine with meat or with fish each day In
quaresme et es auvens croissoit li nombres des povres; et
Lent and in-the Advents grew the number of-the poor and
plusours foiz avint que li roys les servoit, et lour metoit la
several times happened that the king them served and to-them put the
viande devant aus, et lour trenchoit la viande devant aus, et
food before them and to-them carved the food before them and
lour donnoit au departir, de sa propre main, des deniers.
to-them gave at-the departing with his own hand of-the pence

721 Meismement aus hautes vegiles des festes sollempniex,
Especially at-the high vigils of-the feasts solemn
il servoit ces povres de toutes ces choses desus dites,
he served these poor with all these things above said
avant que il mangast ne ne beust. Avec toutes ces choses,
before that he ate nor not drank With all these things
avoit-il chascun jour au disner et au souper près de
had-he each day at-the dinner and at-the supper near of
li anciens homes et debrisiés, et lour fesoit donner tel
him old men and broken and to-them had given such

viande comme il mangoit; et quant il avoient mangié,
food as he ate and when they had eaten
il enportoient certeinne somme d'argent.
they carried-off certain sum of-silver
Par desus toutes ces choses, li roys donnoit chascun jour 722
By over all these things the king gave each day
si grans et si larges aumosnes aus povres de religion,
so great and so liberal alms to-the poor of religion
aus povres hospitaus, aus povres malades, et aus autres
to-the poor hospitals to-the poor sick and to-the other
povres colleges, et aus povres gentis homes et fames et
poor colleges and to-the poor gentle men and women and
damoiselles, à femmes decheues, à povres femmes veuves
damsels to women fallen to poor women widows
et à celles qui gisoient d'enfant, et à povres menestriers
and to those who lay with-child and to poor minstrels
qui par vieillesce ou par maladie ne pooient labourer ne
who by old-age or by sickness not could labor nor
maintenir lour mestier, que à peinne porroit l'on raconter
maintain their craft that with pain could one recount
le nombre. Dont nous poons bien dire que il fu plus
the number Whence we can well say that he was more
bienaeureus que Titus li emperieres de Rome, dont les
blessed than Titus the emperor of Rome of-whom the
anciennes escriptures racontent que trop se dolut et
ancient scriptures recount that very-much himself grieved and
fu desconfortez d'un jour que il n'avoit donnei nul benefice.
was discomforted for-a day that he not-had given any benefit
Dès le commencement que il vint à son royaume tenir 723
From the beginning that he came to his realm to-hold
et il se sot apercevoir, il commença à edefier moustiers
and he himself knew perceive he began to build minsters

et plusours maisons de religion, entre lesquiex l'abbaye de
and several houses of religion among which the-abbey of
Royaumont porte l'onnour et la hautesce. Il fist edefier
Royaumont bears the-honor and the highness He had built
plusours maisons-Dieu: la maison-Dieu de Paris, celle de
several houses-of-God the house-of-God of Paris that of
Pontoise, celle de Compieingne et de Vernon, et lour donna
Pontoise that of Compiègne and of Vernon and to-them gave
grans rentes. Il fonda l'abbaye de Saint-Mathé de Roan, où
great rents He founded the-abbey of Saint-Matthew of Rouen where
il mist femmes de l'ordre des freres Preescheours; et fonda
he put women of the-order of-the friars Preachers and founded
celle de Lonc-champ, où il mist femmes de l'ordre des
that of Longchamp where he put women of the-order of-the
freres Menours, et lour donna grans rentes pour elles vivre.
friars Minor and to-them gave great rents for them to-live
724 Et otroia à sa mere à fonder l'abbaïe dou Liz delez
And he-granted to his mother to found the-abbey of-the Lis beside
Meleun-sur-Seinne, et celle delez Pontoise, que l'on nomme
Melun-sur-Seine and that beside Pontoise which one names
Malbisson, et puis lour donna grans rentes et possessions.
Maubuisson and then to-them gave great rents and possessions
Et fist faire la maison des Aveugles delès Paris, pour
And he-had made the house of-the Blind beside Paris for
mettre les povres aveugles de la citei de Paris; et lour
to-put the poor blind of the city of Paris and for-them
fist faire une chapelle pour oyr lour servise Dieu. Et fist
had made a chapel for to-hear their service (of-)God And had
faire li bons roys la maison des Chartreus, au dehors
made the good king the house of-the Carthusians at-the outside

de Paris, qui a nom Vauvert, et assigna rentes souffisanz
of Paris which has name Vauvert and assigned rents sufficient
aus moynes qui illec estoient, qui servoient Nostre Signour.
to-the monks who there were who served Our Lord
Assés tost après, il fist faire une autre maison au dehors 725
Quite soon after he had made an other house at-the outside
Paris, ou chemin de Saint-Denis, qui fu appelée la
(of-)Paris on-the road of Saint-Denis which was called the
maison aus Filles Dieu; et fist mettre grant multitude
house of-the Daughters (of-)God and had put great multitude
de femmes en l'ostel, qui par povretei s'estoient mises en
of women in the-house who by poverty themselves-were put in
pechié de luxure, et lour donna quatre cens livrées de
sin of lust and to-them gave four hundred librates of
rente pour elles soustenir. Et fist en plusours lieus de
rent for them to-sustain And he-made in several places of
son royaume maisons de beguines, et lour donna rentes
his realm houses of beguines and to-them gave rents
pour elles vivre, et commanda que on y receust celles
for them to-live and commanded that one there should-receive those
qui vourroient faire contenance à vivre chastement.
who would-wish to-make countenance to live chastely
Aucun de ses familiers groussoient de ce que il fesoit si 726
Some of his familiars grumbled at this that he made so
larges aumosnes, et que il y despendoit mout; et il disoit:
liberal alms and that he there spent much and he said
«Je aim miex que li outraiges de grans despens que je faiz,
I love better that the excess of great expenses that I make
soit fais en aumosne pour l'amour de Dieu, que en bobant
be made in alms for the-love of God than in pomp
ne en vainne gloire de ce monde.» Jà pour les grans despens
or in vain glory of this world Ever for the great expenses

que li roys fesoit en aumosne, ne lessoit-il pas à faire grans
that the king made in alms not left-he at-all to make great
despens en son hostel, chascun jour. Largement et liberalment
expenses in his household each day Generously and liberally
se contenoit li roys aus parlemens et aus assemblées des
himself conducted the king at-the parliaments and at-the assemblies of-the
barons et des chevaliers; et fesoit servir si courtoisement à
barons and of-the knights and had served so courteously at
sa court, et largement et habandonnéement, et plus que il
his court and generously and unrestrainedly and more than it
n'i avoit eu lonc temps passei à la court de ses devanciers.
not-there had had long time past at the court of his predecessors
727 Li roys amoit toutes gens qui se metoient à Dieu
The king loved all people who themselves put to God
servir et qui portoient habit de religion; ne nulz ne venoit
to-serve and who wore habit of religion nor anyone not came
à li qui faillist à avoir chevance de vivre. Il pourveut
to him who failed to have provision of living He provided
les freres dou Carmé et lour acheta une place sus Seinne
the brothers of-the Carmel and for-them bought a place on Seine
devers Charenton, et fist faire une lour maison, et lour
toward Charenton and had made a their house and for-them
acheta vestemens, calices et tiex choses comme il apartient
bought vestments chalices and such things as it pertains
à faire le servise Nostre Signour. Et après il pourveut les
to do the service (of-)Our Lord And after he provided the
freres de Saint-Augustin, et lour acheta la granche à un
brothers of Saint-Augustine and for-them bought the barn of a
bourjois de Paris et toutes les apartenances, et lour fist
burgher of Paris and all the appurtenances and for-them had
faire un moustier dehors la porte de Monmartre.
made a minster outside the gate of Montmartre

Les freres des Saz, il les pourveut et lour donna place 728
The brothers of-the Sacks he them provided and to-them gave place
sur Seinne par devers Saint-Germein-des-Prez, où il se
on Seine by toward Saint-Germain-des-Prés where they themselves
herbergierent; mais il n'i demourerent gueres, car il
lodged but they not-there remained much for they
furent abatu assez tost. Après ce que li frere des Saz
were put-down quite soon After this that the brothers of-the Sacks
furent herbergié, revint une autre maniere de freres que
were lodged came an other manner of brothers which
l'on appele l'ordre des Blans-Mantiaus; et requistrent au
one calls the-order of-the White-Mantles and they-asked of-the
roy que il lour aidast que il peussent demourer à Paris.
king that he them should-help that they might remain at Paris
Li roys lour acheta une maison et vieilles places entour
The king for-them bought a house and old places around
pour aus herbergier, delez la vieille porte dou Temple à
for them to-lodge beside the old gate of-the Temple at
Paris, assés près des Tissarans. Icil Blanc furent abatu
Paris quite near the Weavers These White were put-down
au concile de Lyon, que Gregoires li disiesmes tint.
at-the council of Lyon which Gregory the tenth held
Après revint une autre maniere de freres, qui se fesoient 729
After came an other manner of brothers who themselves had
appeler freres de Sainte-Croiz, et portent la croiz devant lour
called brothers of Holy-Cross and bear the cross before their
piz; et requistrent au roy que il lour aidast. Li roys le fist
breast and they-asked of-the king that he them should-help The king it did
volentiers, et les herberga en une rue qui estoit appelée le
willingly and them lodged in a street which was called the

Quarrefour dou Temple, qui ore est appelée la rue Sainte-Croiz.
Crossroads of-the Temple which now is called the street Holy-Cross
Einsi avironna li bons roys de gens de religion la ville de Paris.
Thus surrounded the good king with people of religion the town of Paris

The Second Crusade

LXIX

Summoned in Lent, Joinville dreams that prelates vest the king in a red chasuble; his priest says the king will take the cross and the crusade will have little success. In the chapel a knight says that if the king takes the cross it will be one of the saddest days in France. The king and three sons take the cross. Pressed by the kings of France and Navarre, whose sergeants ruined his people, Joinville refuses, holding that the voyage's counselors sinned mortally.

730 Après ces choses desus dites, avint que li roys manda
After these things above said it-happened that the king summoned
touz ses barons à Paris en un quaresme. Je me escusai
all his barons to Paris in a Lent I myself excused
vers li pour une quartaine que j'avoie lors, et li priai
toward him for a quartan that I-had then and him begged
que il me vousist souffrir; et il me manda que il
that he me should-wish to-spare and he me sent-word that he
vouloit outréement que je y alasse, car il avoit illec bons
wished utterly that I there should-go for he had there good
phisiciens qui bien savoient guerir de la quarteinne.
physicians who well knew cure of the quartan
731 A Paris m'en alai. Quant je ving le soir de la vegile Nostre
To Paris me-thence went When I came the evening of the vigil (of-)Our
Dame en mars, je ne trouvai nulli, ne la royne n'autre, qui
Lady in March I not found anyone neither the queen nor-other who

me seust à dire pourquoy li roys m'avoit mandei. Or avint,
me could to tell why the king me-had summoned Now it-happened
ainsi comme Diex vout, que je me dormi à matines; et me
thus as God willed that I myself slept at matins and to-me
fu avis, en dormant, que je véoie le roy devant un autel
was opinion in sleeping that I saw the king before an altar
à genoillons; et m'estoit avis que plusour prelat revestu
on knees and to-me-was opinion that several prelates vested
le vestoient d'une chesuble vermeille de sarge de Reins.
him were-dressing in-a chasuble vermilion of serge of Reims
Je apelai après ceste vision mon signour Guillaume, mon 732
I called after this vision my lord William my
prestre, qui mout estoit saiges, et li contai la vision. Et
priest who very was wise and him told the vision And
il me dist ainsi: «Sire, vous verrés que li roys se croisera
he me said thus Lord you will-see that the king himself will-cross
demain.» Je li demandai pourquoy il le cuidoit; et il me
tomorrow I him asked why he it believed and he me
dist que il le cuidoit, par le songe que j'avoie songié; car
said that he it believed by the dream that I-had dreamed for
la chasuble de sarge vermeille senefioit la croiz, laquex fu
the chasuble of serge vermilion signified the cross which was
vermeille dou sanc que Diex y espandi de son costei, et
vermilion with-the blood that God there shed from his side and
de ses mains, et de ses piez. «Ce que la chasuble estoit
from his hands and from his feet This that the chasuble was
de sarge de Reins, senefie que la croiserie sera de petit
of serge of Reims signifies that the crusade will-be of little
esploit, aussi comme vous verrés se Diex vous donne vie.»
success just as you will-see if God you gives life

733 Quant je oi oye la messe à la Magdeleinne à Paris, je alai
When I had heard the mass at the Madeleine at Paris I went
en la chapelle le roy, et trouvai le roy qui estoit montez
into the chapel (of-)the king and found the king who was mounted
en l'eschaufaut aus reliques, et fesoit aporter la vraie Croiz
on the-scaffold at-the relics and had brought the true Cross
aval. Endementres que li roys venoit aval, dui chevalier qui
down Meanwhile that the king was-coming down two knights who
estoient de son consoil, commencierent à parler li uns à
were of his council began to speak the one to
l'autre, et dist li uns: «Jamais ne me créez, se li roys ne
the-other and said the one Ever not me believe if the king not
se croise illec.» Et li autres respondi que «se li roys se
himself crosses there And the other answered that if the king himself
croise, ce yert une des douloureuses journées qui onques fust
crosses this will-be one of-the sorrowful days that ever was
en France. Car se nous ne nous croisons, nous perderons le
in France For if we not ourselves cross we will-lose the
roy; et se nous nous croisons, nous perderons Dieu, que nous
king and if we ourselves cross we will-lose God for we
ne nous croiserons pas pour li, mais pour paour dou roy.»
not ourselves will-cross at-all for him but for fear of-the king

734 Or avint ainsi, que li roys se croisa l'endemain, et sui
Now it-happened thus that the king himself crossed the-next-day and his
troi fil avec li; et puis est avenu que la croiserie fu de petit
three sons with him and since is happened that the crusade was of little
esploit, selonc la prophecie mon prestre. Je fu mout pressez
success according-to the prophecy (of-)my priest I was much pressed
dou roy de France et dou roy de Navarre de moy croisier.
by-the king of France and by-the king of Navarre of me to-cross

A ce respondi-je que, tandis comme je avoie estei ou 735
To this answered-I that while as I had been in-the
servise Dieu et le roy outre-mer, et puis que je en
service (of-)God and (of-)the king overseas and since that I thence
reving, li serjant au roy de France et le roy de Navarre
came-back the sergeants of-the king of France and (of-)the king of Navarre
m'avoient destruite ma gent et apovroiez; si que il ne seroit
me-had destroyed my people and impoverished so that it not would-be
jamais heure que je et il n'en vausissent piz. Et lour
ever hour that I and they not-thereof would-be-worth worse And to-them
disoie ainsi, que se je en vouloie ouvrer au grei Dieu,
was-telling thus that if I thereof wished to-work to-the pleasure (of-)God
que je demourroie ci pour mon peuple aidier et deffendre;
that I would-stay here for my people to-help and defend
car se je metoie mon cors en l'aventure dou pelerinaige de
for if I put my body in the-hazard of-the pilgrimage of
la croiz, là où je véoie tout cler que ce seroit au mal
the cross there where I saw all clear that it would-be to-the harm
et au doumaige de ma gent, j'en courrouceroie Dieu,
and to-the damage of my people I-thereby would-anger God
qui mist son cors pour son peuple sauver.
who put his body for his people to-save
Je entendi que tuit cil firent pechié mortel qui li loerent 736
I understood that all those did sin mortal who him counseled
l'alée, pour ce que ou point que il estoit en France,
the-going for this that at-the point that he was in France
touz li royaumes estoit en bone paiz en li meismes et
all the kingdom was in good peace in itself same and
à touz ses voisins; ne onques puis que il en parti,
with all its neighbors nor ever since that he thence departed
li estaz dou royaume ne fist que empirier.
the state of-the kingdom not did but to-worsen

737 Grant pechié firent cil qui li loerent l'alée, à la grant
Great sin did those who him counseled the-going at the great
flebesce là où ses cors estoit; car il ne pooit souffrir
weakness there where his body was for he not could endure
ne le charier, ne le chevauchier. La flebesce de li estoit
neither the carting nor the riding The weakness of him was
si grans, que il souffri que je le portasse dès l'ostel au
so great that he suffered that I him should-carry from the-house of-the
conte d'Ausserre, là où je pris congié de li, jeusques
count of-Auxerre there where I took leave of him as-far-as
aus Cordeliers, entre mes bras. Et si, febles comme il
to-the Cordeliers in my arms And so feeble as he
estoit, se il fust demourez en France, peust-il encore avoir
was if he had stayed in France could-he yet have
vescu assez, et fait mout de biens et de bonnes œuvres.
lived much and done many of goods and of good works

The Teachings to His Son

LXX

Joinville will tell nothing of Tunis. Sick of the flux before Carthage, the king leaves his son Philip his teachings, written, it is said, in his own hand: love God and rather suffer torment than sin mortally; bear adversity with patience; pity the poor; tax only in need; do justice even against himself; restore what is not his; honor the Church, as the king's grandfather Philip bore its wrongs; make war only on counsel; and have masses said for his father's soul.

738 De la voie que il fist à Thunes ne vueil-je riens conter ne
Of the journey that he made to Tunis not wish-I anything to-recount nor
dire, pour ce que je n'i fu pas, la merci Dieu! ne je ne
to-tell for this that I not-there was at-all the mercy (of-)God nor I not

vueil chose dire ne mettre en mon livre de quoy je ne soie
wish thing to-say nor to-put in my book of which I not may-be
certeins. Si parlerons de nostre saint roy sanz plus, et dirons
certain So we-will-speak of our holy king without more and will-say
ainsi, que après ce que il fu arrivez à Thunes devant le chastel
thus that after this that he was arrived at Tunis before the castle
de Carthage, une maladie le prist dou flux dou ventre (et
of Carthage a sickness him took of-the flux of-the belly and
Philippes, ses fiz aisnez, fu malades de fievre carte, avec le flux
Philip his son eldest was sick with fever quartan with the flux
dou ventre que li roys avoit), dont il acoucha au lit, et senti
of-the belly that the king had whereof he took to-the bed and felt
bien que il devoit par tens trespasser de cest siecle à l'autre.
well that he must by time pass from this world to the-other
Lors appela mon signour Phelippe son fil, et li commanda 739
Then he-called my lord Philip his son and him commanded
à garder, aussi comme par testament, touz les enseignemens
to keep just as by testament all the teachings
que il li lessa, qui sont ci-après escrit en françois, lesquiex
that he him left which are here-after written in French which
enseignemens li roys escrist de sa sainte main, si comme
teachings the king wrote with his holy hand so as
l'on dist.
one says
Biaus fiz, la premiere chose que je t'enseing, si est que tu 740
Fair son the first thing that I thee-teach so is that thou
mettes ton cuer en amer Dieu; car sans ce nulz ne puet
put thy heart in loving God for without this anyone not can
estre sauvez. Garde-toy de faire chose qui à Dieu desplaise,
be saved Keep-thee from doing thing that to God may-displease

c'est à savoir pechié mortel; ainçois devroies soufrir toutes
it-is to know sin mortal rather shouldst suffer all
manieres de tormens, que faire mortel pechié.
manners of torments than do mortal sin
741 Se Diex t'envoie adversité, si le reçoif en patience et en
If God thee-sends adversity so it receive in patience and thereof
rent graces à Nostre Seigneur, et pense que tu l'as deservi,
render thanks to Our Lord and think that thou it-hast deserved
et que il te tournera tout à preu. Se il te donne prosperité,
and that he thee will-turn all to profit If he thee gives prosperity
si l'en merci humblement, si que tu ne soies pas pires
so him-thereof thank humbly so that thou not be at-all worse
ou par orgueil ou par autres manieres, dont tu doies miex
either by pride or by other manners whereby thou shouldst better
valoir; car l'on ne doit pas Dieu de ses dons guerroier.
be-worth for one not must at-all God with his gifts war-against
742 Confesse-toy souvent, et esli confesseur preudome, qui te
Confess-thee often and choose confessor worthy-man who thee
sache enseignier que tu doies faire et de quoy tu te doies
can teach what thou shouldst do and from what thou thee shouldst
garder; et te doiz avoir et porter en tel maniere, que tes
keep and thee must have and bear in such manner that thy
confesserres et ti ami te osient reprenre de tes mesfaiz. Le
confessor and thy friends thee may-dare reprove for thy misdeeds The
servise de sainte Esglise escoute devotement et sans truffer;
service of holy Church hear devoutly and without jesting
mais pri Dieu et de cuer et de bouche, especialment
but pray God both with heart and with mouth especially
en la messe, que la consecracions est faite. Le cuer aie
in the mass when the consecration is made The heart have

douz et piteus aus povres, aus chietis et aus mesaisiés,
sweet and pitying to-the poor to-the wretched and to-the distressed
et les conforte et aide selonc ce que tu pourras.
and them comfort and aid according-to this that thou wilt-be-able
Maintien les bones coustumes de ton royaume, et les mauvaises 743
Maintain the good customs of thy kingdom and the bad
abaisse. Ne couvoite pas sus ton peuple, ne ne le charge pas
put-down Not covet at-all upon thy people nor not it burden at-all
de toute ne de taille, se ce n'est pour ta grant necessité.
with exaction nor with tallage if it not-is for thy great necessity
Se tu as aucune mesaise de cuer, di-le tantost à ton 744
If thou hast any distress of heart tell-it at-once to thy
confesseur, ou à aucun preudome qui ne soit pas pleins
confessor or to some worthy-man who not be at-all full
de vainnes paroles; si la porteras plus legierement.
of vain words so it wilt-bear more lightly
Garde que tu aies en ta compaignie preudomes et loiaus qui 745
Take-care that thou have in thy company worthy-men and loyal who
ne soient pas plein de couvoitise, soient religieus, soient seculier,
not be at-all full of covetousness be-they religious be-they secular
et souvent parle à aus; et fui et eschieve la compaignie des
and often speak to them and flee and shun the company of-the
mauvais. Escoute volontiers la parole Dieu et la retien en
wicked Hear willingly the word (of-)God and it retain in
ton cuer; et pourchace volentiers proieres et pardons. Aime
thy heart and seek-out willingly prayers and pardons Love
ton preu et ton bien, et hai touz maus où que il soient.
thy profit and thy good and hate all evils where that they may-be
Nulz ne soit si hardis devant toy que il die parole qui atraie 746
Anyone not be so bold before thee that he say word that may-draw
et esmeuve à pechié, ne qu'i mesdie d'autrui par derieres en
and may-move to sin nor that-he speak-ill of-another by behind in

detractions; ne ne seuffre que nulle vileinnie de Dieu ne de ses
detractions nor not suffer that any villainy of God nor of his
sains soit dite devant toy. Rent graces à Dieu souvent de touz
saints be said before thee Render thanks to God often for all
les biens que il t'a faiz, si que tu soies dignes de plus avoir.
the goods that he thee-has done so that thou be worthy of more to-have
747 A justices tenir et à droitures soies loiaus et roides à
At justices to-hold and at rights be loyal and stiff to
tes sougiez, sans tourner à destre ne à senestre, mais
thy subjects without turning to right nor to left but
adès à droit, et soustien la querelle dou povre jeusques
always to right and uphold the quarrel of-the poor until
à tant que la verités soit desclairie. Et se aucuns a
to so-much that the truth be made-clear And if anyone has
action encontre toy, ne le croi pas jeusques à tant que
action against thee not it believe at-all until to so-much that
tu en saches la verité; car ainsi le jugeront ti conseillier
thou thereof know the truth for thus it will-judge thy counselors
plus hardiement selon verité, pour toy ou contre toy.
more boldly according-to truth for thee or against thee
748 Se tu tiens riens de l'autrui, ou par toy ou par tes
If thou holdest anything of the-other's either by thee or by thy
devanciers, se c'est chose certeinne, rent-le sanz demourer;
forebears if it-is thing certain render-it without delaying
et se c'est chose douteuse, fai-le enquerre, par saiges gens,
and if it-is thing doubtful make-it be-inquired by wise people
isnellement et diligenment.
quickly and diligently
749 A ce dois mettre t'entente comment tes gens et ti sougiet
To this must put thy-attention how thy people and thy subjects
vivent en paiz et en droiture desouz toi. Meismement les
live in peace and in right under thee Likewise the

bones villes et les communes de ton royaume garde en l'estat
good towns and the communes of thy kingdom keep in the-state
et en la franchise où ti devancier les ont gardées; et se il
and in the freedom where thy forebears them have kept and if it
y a aucune chose à amender, si l'amende et adresce, et
there has any thing to amend so it-amend and redress and
les tien en faveur et en amour; car par la force et par les
them hold in favor and in love for by the strength and by the
richesses des grosses villes, douteront li privé et li estrange
riches of-the great towns will-fear the intimates and the strangers
de mespenre vers toy, especialement ti per et ti baron.
of misdoing toward thee especially thy peers and thy barons
Honneure et aime toutes les personnes de sainte Esglise, et 750
Honor and love all the persons of holy Church and
garde que on ne leur soustraie ne apetise leur dons et leur
take-care that one not them withdraw nor lessen their gifts and their
aumosnes que ti devancier leur auront donné. L'on raconte
alms that thy forebears them will-have given One tells
dou roi Phelippe, mon aïeul, que une foiz li dist uns de
of-the king Philip my grandfather that one time him said one of
ses conseilliers que mout de tors et de forfaiz li fesoient
his counselors that many of wrongs and of trespasses him did
cil de sainte Esglise, en ce que il li tolloient ses droitures
those of holy Church in this that they him took-away his rights
et apetissoient ses justices; et estoit mout grans merveille
and lessened his justices and it-was very great wonder
comment il le souffroit. Et li bons roys respondi que il
how he it suffered And the good king answered that he
le créoit bien; mais il regardoit les bontés et les courtoisies
it believed well but he regarded the bounties and the courtesies

que Diex li avoit faites: si vouloit miex lessier aler de
that God him had done so wished better to-let go of
son droit, que avoir contens à la gent de sainte Esglise.
his right than to-have contention with the people of holy Church
751 A ton pere et à ta mere porte honneur et reverence, et
To thy father and to thy mother bear honor and reverence and
garde leur commandemens. Les benefices de sainte Esglise
keep their commandments The benefices of holy Church
donne à bones personnes et de nette vie, et si le fai
give to good persons and of clean life and so it do
par conseil de preudomes et de nettes gens.
by counsel of worthy-men and of clean people
752 Garde-toy de esmouvoir guerre, sans grant conseil, contre
Keep-thee from stirring-up war without great counsel against
home crestien; et se il le te couvient faire, si garde sainte
man Christian and if it it thee behooves to-do so guard holy
Esglise et ceus qui riens n'i ont mesfait. Se guerres
Church and those who anything not-there have misdone If wars
et contens meuvent entre tes sousgis, apaise-les au plus
and contentions arise between thy subjects appease-them at-the most
tost que tu pourras.
soon that thou wilt-be-able
753 Soies diligens d'avoir bons prevos et bons baillis, et enquier
Be diligent of-having good provosts and good bailiffs and inquire
souvent d'aus et de ceus de ton hostel, comme il se
often of-them and of those of thy household how they themselves
maintiennent, et se il a en aus aucun vice de trop grant
maintain and if it has in them any vice of too great
couvoitise, ou de fausseté, ou de tricherie. Travaille toi que
covetousness or of falseness or of trickery Labor thee that
tuit vilain pechié soient osté de ta terre; especialment
all villainous sins be removed from thy land especially

vileins seremens et heresie fai abatre à ton pooir. Pren-te
villainous oaths and heresy make be-cast-down to thy power Take-thee
garde que li despens de ton hostel soient raisonnable.
heed that the expenses of thy household be reasonable
Et en la fin, très-douz fiz, que tu faces messes chanter pour 754
And in the end very-sweet son that thou make masses be-sung for
m'ame et oroisons dire par tout ton royaume; et que tu
my-soul and prayers be-said through all thy kingdom and that thou
m'otroies especial part et planiere en touz les biens que tu
me-grant special part and full in all the goods that thou
feras. Biaus chiers fiz, je te doing toutes les benéissons que
wilt-do Fair dear son I thee give all the blessings that
bons peres puet donner à fil. Et la benoite Trinités et tuit
good father can give to son And the blessed Trinity and all
li saint te gardent et deffendent de touz maus; et Diex te
the saints thee guard and defend from all evils and God thee
doint grace de faire sa volenté touzjours, si que il soit honorez
give grace of doing his will always so that he be honored
par toy, et que tu et nous puissiens, après ceste mortel
by thee and that thou and we may after this mortal
vie, estre ensemble avec li, et li loer sans fin. Amen.
life be together with him and him praise without end Amen

Death, Canonization, and Joinville's Dream

LXXI

The king takes the sacraments; the count of Alençon told Joinville the king called on Saints James, Denis, and Genevieve. Laid on a bed of ashes, he dies at the hour the Son of God died in 1270. After an inquiry in which Joinville testifies, the pope sets him among the confessors; at the elevation a sermon recalls Joinville's witness of his good faith. Joinville dreams the king is glad at Joinville, founds an altar there, and ends in October 1309.

755 Quant li bons roys ot enseignié son fil mon signour
When the good king had taught his son my lord
Phelippe l'enfermetés que il avoit commença à croistre
Philip the-infirmity that he had began to grow
forment; et demanda les sacremens de sainte Esglise, et
strongly and he-asked the sacraments of holy Church and
les ot en sainne pensée et en droit entendement, ainsi
them had in sound mind and in right understanding just
comme il apparut: car quant l'on l'enhuiloit et on disoit
as it appeared for when one him-anointed and one said
les sept pseaumes, il disoit les vers d'une part.
the seven psalms he said the verses of-one part
756 Et oy conter mon signour le conte d'Alençon, son fil,
And I-heard tell my lord the count of-Alençon his son
que quant il aprochoit de la mort, il appela les sains pour
that when he approached of the death he called the saints for
li aidier et secourre, et meismement mon signour saint
him to-help and to-succor and especially my lord saint
Jaque, en disant s'oroison, qui commence: Esto, Domine;
James in saying his-prayer which begins Be Lord
c'est-à-dire, «Diex, soyez saintefierres et garde de vostre
that-is-to-say God be sanctifier and guard of your

peuple.» Mon signour saint Denis de France appela lors en
people My lord saint Denis of France he-called then to
s'aide, en disant s'oroison qui vaut autant à dire: «Sire
his-aid in saying his-prayer which is-worth as-much as to-say Lord
Diex, donne-nous que nous puissons despire la prosperitei
God grant-us that we may despise the prosperity
de ce monde, si que nous ne doutiens nulle adversitei.»
of this world so that we not may-fear any adversity
Et oy dire lors à mon signour d'Alençon (que Diex absoille!) 757
And I-heard say then to my lord of-Alençon whom God absolve
que ses peres reclamoit lors ma dame sainte Genevieve. Après,
that his father invoked then my lady saint Genevieve After
se fist li sains roys couchier en un lit couvert de cendre, et
himself had the holy king laid in a bed covered with ash and
mist ses mains sus sa poitrine, et en regardant vers le ciel
put his hands upon his breast and in looking toward the heaven
rendi à nostre Creatour son esperit, en celle hore meismes
rendered to our Creator his spirit in that hour same
que li Fiz Dieu morut pour le salut dou monde en la croiz.
that the Son (of-)God died for the salvation of-the world on the cross
Piteuse chose et digne est de plorer le trespassement de 758
Piteous thing and worthy is of weeping the passing of
ce saint prince, qui si saintement et loialment garda son
this holy prince who so holily and loyally kept his
royaume, et qui tant de beles aumosnes y fist, et qui
kingdom and who so-many of fair alms there made and who
tant de biaus establissemens y mist. Et ainsi comme
so-many of fair establishments there put And just as
li escrivains qui a fait son livre, qui l'enlumine d'or et
the writer who has made his book who it-illuminates with-gold and
d'azur, enlumina li diz roys son royaume de belles abbaïes
with-azure illuminated the said king his kingdom with fair abbeys

que il y fist, et de la grant quantitei de maisons Dieu
that he there made and with the great quantity of houses (of-)God
et de maisons des Preescheours, des Cordeliers et des
and of houses of-the Preachers of-the Cordeliers and of-the
autres religions qui sont ci-devant nommées.
other orders which are heretofore named
759 L'endemain de feste saint Berthemi l'apostre, trespassa de
The-day-after of feast (of-)saint Bartholomew the-apostle passed from
cest siecle li bons roys Loys, en l'an de l'incarnacion
this world the good king Louis in the-year of the-incarnation
Nostre Signour, l'an de grace mil CC. LXX, et
(of-)Our Lord the-year of grace thousand two-hundred seventy and
furent sui os gardei en un escrin et aportei et enfoui à
were his bones kept in a casket and brought and buried at
Saint-Denis en France, là où il avoit eslue sa sepulture,
Saint-Denis in France there where he had chosen his burial
ouquel lieu il fu enterrez, là où Diex a puis fait maint
in-which place he was interred there where God has since done many
biau miracle pour li, par ses desertes.
fair miracle for him by his merits
760 Après ce, par le pourchas dou roy de France et par le
After this by the procurement of-the king of France and by the
commandement l'apostelle, vint li ercevesques de Roan et
command (of-)the-pope came the archbishop of Rouen and
freres Jehans de Samoys, qui puis fu evesques: vindrent à
brother John of Samois who since was bishop came to
Saint-Denis en France, et là demourerent lonc-temps pour
Saint-Denis in France and there remained long-time for
enquerre de la vie, des œuvres et des miracles dou saint
to-inquire of the life of-the works and of-the miracles of-the holy
roy; et on me manda que je alasse à aus, et me tindrent
king and one me sent-word that I should-go to them and me held

dous jours. Et après ce que il orent enquis à moy et
two days And after this that they had inquired of me and
à autrui, ce que il orent trouvei fu portei à la court de
of others this that they had found was carried to the court of
Rome; et diligenment virent li apostelles et li cardonal
Rome and diligently saw the pope and the cardinals
ce que on lour porta; et selonc ce que il virent, il li
this that one them brought and according-to this that they saw they him
firent droit et le mistrent ou nombre des confessours.
did right and him put in-the number of-the confessors
Dont grans joie fu et doit estre à tout le royaume de 761
Whereof great joy was and must be to all the kingdom of
France, et grans honours à toute sa lignie qui à li vourront
France and great honor to all his lineage who to him will-wish
retraire de bien faire, et grans deshonours à touz ceus de
to-take-after of well doing and great dishonor to all those of
son lignaige qui par bones œvres ne le vourront ensuivre;
his lineage who by good works not him will-wish to-follow
grans deshonours, di-je, à son lignaige qui mal voudront faire;
great dishonor say-I to his lineage who ill will-wish to-do
car on les mousterra au doi, et dira l'on que li sains roys
for one them will-show at-the finger and will-say one that the holy king
dont il sont estrait, feist envis une tel mauvestié.
whence they are descended would-have-done unwillingly a such wickedness
Après ce que ces bones nouvelles furent venues de Rome, 762
After this that these good tidings were come from Rome
li roys donna journée l'endemain de la saint-Berthelemi, à
the king gave day the-day-after of the Saint-Bartholomew at
laquel journée li sains cors fu levez. Quant li sains cors
which day the holy body was raised When the holy body
fu levez, li arcevesques de Reins qui lors estoit (que Diex
was raised the archbishop of Reims who then was whom God

absoille!), et mes sires Henris de Villers, mes niez, qui
absolve and my lord Henry of Villers my nephew who
lors estoit archevesques de Lyon, le porterent devant, et
then was archbishop of Lyon it carried in-front and
plusour autre, que arcevesque que evesque, après, que je ne
several others both archbishops and bishops after whom I not
sai nommer: ou chafaut que l'on ot establi fu portez.
know name on-the scaffold that one had set-up was carried
763 Illec sermona freres Jehans de Samois; et entre les autres
There preached brother John of Samois and among the other
grans faiz que nostre sains roys avoit faiz, ramenteut l'un
great deeds that our holy king had done recalled the-one
des grans fais que je lour avoie tesmoingniez par mon
of-the great deeds that I them had witnessed by my
sairement, et que j'avoie veus; et dist ainsi:
oath and that I-had seen and said thus
764 «Pour ce que vous puissiez veoir que c'estoit li plus loiaus
For this that you may see that it-was the most loyal
hom qui onques fust en son temps, vous vueil-je dire que il fu
man who ever was in his time you wish-I to-tell that he was
si loiaus, car envers les Sarrazins vot-il tenir couvenant aus
so loyal for toward the Saracens wished-he to-keep covenant to-the
Sarrazins de ce que il lour avoit promis par sa simple parole;
Saracens of this that he them had promised by his simple word
et se il fust ainsi que il ne lour eust tenu, il eust gaignié
and if it were thus that he not them had kept he would-have gained
dix mille livres et plus.» Et lour recorda tout le fait si comme
ten thousand pounds and more And them recounted all the deed so as
il est ci-devant escriz. Et quant il lour ot le fait recordei, si
it is heretofore written And when he them had the deed recounted so

dist ainsi: «Ne cuidiés pas que je vous mente; que je voi tel
said thus Not believe at-all that I you lie for I see such
home ci qui ceste chose m'a tesmoignie par son sairement.»
man here who this thing me-has witnessed by his oath
Après ce que li sermons fu faillis, li roys et sui frere en 765
After this that the sermon was ended the king and his brothers thence
reporterent le saint cors en l'esglise par l'aide de lour lignaige,
carried-back the holy body into the-church by the-aid of their lineage
que il durent faire honnour; car grans honnours lour est faite,
that they ought do honor for great honor them is done
se en aus ne demeure, ainsi comme je vous ai dit devant.
if in them not remains just as I you have said before
Prions à li que il vueille prier à Dieu que il nous doint
Let-us-pray to him that he may-wish to-pray to God that he us may-give
ce que besoing nous yert, aus ames et aus cors. Amen!
this that need us will-be to-the souls and to-the bodies Amen
Encore vueil-je ci-après dire de nostre saint roy aucunes choses 766
Yet wish-I hereafter to-tell of our holy king some things
qui seront à l'onnour de li, que je veis de li en mon dormant:
which will-be to the-honor of him that I saw of him in my sleeping
c'est à savoir que il me sembloit en mon songe que je le
it-is to know that it me seemed in my dream that I him
véoie devant ma chapelle à Joinville; et estoit, si comme il me
saw before my chapel at Joinville and he-was so as it me
sembloit, merveillousement liez et aises de cuer; et je-meismes
seemed marvelously glad and at-ease of heart and I-myself
estoie mout aises pour ce que je le véoie en mon chastel, et
was very at-ease for this that I him saw in my castle and
li disoie: «Sire, quant vous partirés de ci, je vous herbergerai
him was-telling Lord when you will-depart from here I you will-lodge
à une moie maison qui siet en une moie ville qui a non
at a mine house which sits in a mine town which has name

Chevillon.» Et il me respondi en riant, et me dist: «Sire de
Chevillon And he me answered in laughing and me said Lord of
Joinville, foi que doi vous, je ne bé mie si tost à partir de ci.»
Joinville faith that I-owe you I not aim at-all so soon to depart from here
767 Quant je me esveillai, si m'apensai; et me sembloit que il
When I myself awoke so myself-bethought and me seemed that it
plaisoit à Dieu et à li que je le herberjasse en ma chapelle,
pleased to God and to him that I him should-lodge in my chapel
et je si ai fait; car je li ai establi un autel à l'onnour de
and I so have done for I him have established an altar to the-honor of
Dieu et de li, là où l'on chantera à tous jours mais en
God and of him there where one will-sing to all days more in
l'honnour de li; et y a rente perpetuelment establie pour
the-honor of him and there has rent perpetually established for
ce faire. Et ces choses ai-je ramentues à mon signour le roy
this to-do And these things have-I recalled to my lord the king
Looys, qui est heritiers de son non; et me semble que il
Louis who is heir of his name and me seems that he
fera le grei Dieu et le grei nostre saint roy Looys, s'i
will-do the pleasure (of-)God and the pleasure (of-)our holy king Louis if-there
pourchassoit des reliques le vrai cors saint, et les envoioit
procured of-the relics (of-)the true body holy and them sent
à la dite chapelle de Saint-Lorans à Joinville, par quoy cil qui
to the said chapel of Saint-Laurent at Joinville by which those who
venront à son autel que il y eussent plus grant devocion.
will-come to his altar that they there might-have more great devotion
768 Je faiz savoir à touz que j'ai céans mis grant partie des faiz
I make know to all that I-have herein put great part of-the deeds
nostre saint roy devant dit, que je ai veu et oy, et grant
(of-)our holy king before said that I have seen and heard and great
partie de ses faiz que j'ai trouvez, qui sont en un romant,
part of his deeds that I-have found which are in a romance

lesquiex j'ai fait escrire en cest livre. Et ces choses vous
which I-have had written in this book And these things you
ramentoif je, pour ce que cil qui orront ce livre croient
recall I for this that those who will-hear this book may-believe
fermement en ce que li livres dit que j'ai vraiement veu et oy;
firmly in this that the book says that I-have truly seen and heard
et les autres choses qui y sont escriptes, ne vous tesmoing
and the other things which there are written not you I-witness
que soient vrayes, parce que je ne les ay veues ne oyes.
that they-be true because that I not them have seen nor heard
Ce fu escrit en l'an de grace mil CCC et IX, 769
This was written in the-year of grace thousand three-hundred and nine
ou moys d'octovre.
in-the month of-October